EPSON

# SC-F20000 Series
# SC-F11000H Series
# SC-F11000 Series
# SC-F10000H Series
# SC-F10000 Series

# User's Guide

CMP0443-02 EN

# Copyrights and Trademarks

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Seiko Epson Corporation. The information contained herein is designed only for use with this Epson printer. Epson is not responsible for any use of this information as applied to other printers.

Neither Seiko Epson Corporation nor its affiliates shall be liable to the purchaser of this product or third parties for damages, losses, costs, or expenses incurred by the purchaser or third parties as a result of accident, misuse, or abuse of this product or unauthorized modifications, repairs, or alterations to this product, or (excluding the U.S.) failure to strictly comply with Seiko Epson Corporation's operating and maintenance instructions.

Seiko Epson Corporation shall not be liable for any damages or problems arising from the use of any options or any consumable products other than those designated as Original Epson Products or Epson Approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

Seiko Epson Corporation shall not be held liable for any damage resulting from electromagnetic interference that occurs from the use of any interface cables other than those designated as Epson Approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

Apple, Mac, OS X, and Bonjour are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel® and Intel Core® are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

Adobe, Illustrator, and Acrobat Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United States and/or other countries.
Copyright © 2021 Adobe Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Chrome, YouTube and the YouTube logo are trademarks of Google LLC.

Firefox is a trademark of the Mozilla Foundation in the U.S. and other countries.

*General Notice: Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective owners. Epson disclaims any and all rights in those marks.*

©2023-2026 Seiko Epson Corporation

# Note for North American and Latin American Users

IMPORTANT: Before using this product, make sure you read the safety instructions in the online *Notices*.

# Contents

## Copyrights and Trademarks

Note for North American and Latin American Users 3

## Notes on Manuals

Meaning of Symbols. . . . . 6
Model Names and Target Models. . . . . 6
Screenshots in This Manual. . . . . 6
Illustrations. . . . . 6
Manual Organization. . . . . 6
Viewing Video Manuals. . . . . 7
Viewing PDF Manuals. . . . . 8

## Introduction

Printer Parts. . . . . 9
Front Section. . . . . 9
Ink supply unit. . . . . 12
Right view. . . . . 14
Inside. . . . . 16
Back. . . . . 18
Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type). . . . . 20
Auto Take-up Reel Unit (Large Capacity Type). . 22
Control panel. . . . . 24
Understanding and Operating the Display. . . . . 27
Home screen. . . . . 27
Menu screen. . . . . 37
Instructions screen. . . . . 38
Types of Buttons. . . . . 38
Notes on Usage and Storage. . . . . 40
Installation space. . . . . 40
Notes when using the printer. . . . . 40
Notes when not using the printer. . . . . 41
Notes on handling ink cartridges. . . . . 41
Handling media. . . . . 42
Introducing the Supplied Software. . . . . 44
Using Epson Edge Dashboard. . . . . 47
Launching the application. . . . . 47
Registering the printer. . . . . 47
Checking and managing the printer's status. . . . 48
Downloading and copying media settings for EMX files. . . . . 50
Editing media settings. . . . . 54
Exiting procedure. . . . . 55
Using Epson Edge Print (Windows Only). . . . . 56
Launching the Application. . . . . 56
Acquiring and Registering EMX Files. . . . . 56
Exiting Procedure. . . . . 56
Using LFP Accounting Tool (Windows Only). . . . . 56
Basic Settings. . . . . 56
Screen Layout. . . . . 61
Using EPSON Software Updater. . . . . 64
Checking software update availability. . . . . 64
Receiving update notifications. . . . . 65
Using Web Config. . . . . 65
Instructions for starting. . . . . 65
Exiting procedure. . . . . 65
Uninstalling Software. . . . . 65

## Basic Operations

Workflow for Optimal Printing. . . . . 67
Registering Media Settings to the Printer. . . . . 68
Precautions When Handling Media. . . . . 68
Notes on Loading and Removing Media. . . . . 69
Precautions When Handling Spindles. . . . . 71
Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models. . . . . 71
When working from the back side. . . . . 71
When working from the front side. . . . . 72
Media Loading Procedure. . . . . 74
Points To Check In Advance. . . . . 74
Media Loading Procedure by Model. . . . . 77
Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit. . . . . 81
Loading the standard type Media Feeding Unit. . 81
Loading the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit. . . . . 87
Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit. . . 99
Important points for correct take-up. . . . . 99
Loading Media Into the Standard Type Auto Take-Up Reel Unit. . . . . 100
Loading Media Into the Large Capacity Type Auto Take-Up Reel Unit. . . . . 110
Removing the Take-up Roll. . . . . 130
Setting Information Printing at Media Cut. . . . 130
Cutting Media. . . . . 130
Removing the Media. . . . . 132
Removing the Loaded Media. . . . . 134
Removing from the standard type Media Feeding Unit. . . . . 134

**Contents**


Removing from the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit. . . . . 136
When the Remaining Media Runs Out. . . . . 139
Before Printing. . . . . 140
Print Adjustments. . . . . 140
Automatic Adjustment. . . . . 140
Print Head Alignment. . . . . 141
Media Feed Adjustment. . . . . 142
Printable Area. . . . . 145
Width Detection and Media Edge Position. . . . 145
Printable area and image print area. . . . . 146

## Maintenance

When to Perform Various Maintenance Operations. . . . . 150
Cleaning. . . . . 150
Replacing consumables. . . . . 152
Other maintenance. . . . . 152
Necessary Items. . . . . 154
Precautions Regarding Maintenance. . . . . 154
Cleaning. . . . . 155
Daily cleaning. . . . . 155
Using Cleaning liquid. . . . . 159
Cleaning the media cleaners. . . . . 159
Cleaning anti-drying caps. . . . . 160
Cleaning the suction caps. . . . . 163
Cleaning around the print head. . . . . 164
Cleaning the inside light. . . . . 166
Cleaning the front cover. . . . . 167
Replacing Consumables. . . . . 168
Replacing ink cartridges. . . . . 168
Replacing the wiper roll. . . . . 173
Disposing of waste ink. . . . . 175
Replacing the media holder. . . . . 177
Other Maintenance. . . . . 181
Periodic shaking of ink cartridges. . . . . 181
Checking for clogged nozzles. . . . . 185
Print Head Cleaning. . . . . 186
Checking the circuit breaker's performance. . . . 187
Disposing of Used Consumables. . . . . 189
Disposal. . . . . 189

## Control Panel Menu

Menu List. . . . . 190
Details of the Menu. . . . . 201
General Settings menu. . . . . 201
Media Settings menu. . . . . 209
Maintenance menu. . . . . 219
Supply Status menu. . . . . 220
Replacement Part Information menu. . . . . 220
Printer Status menu. . . . . 221

## Problem Solver

When a Message is Displayed. . . . . 222
When an Error Message is Displayed. . . . . 224
Troubleshooting. . . . . 225
You cannot print (because the printer does not work). . . . . 225
The printer sounds like it is printing, but nothing prints. . . . . 226
The prints are not what you expected. . . . . 226
Media. . . . . 228
Others. . . . . 230

## Appendix

Options and Consumable Products. . . . . 231
Ink cartridges. . . . . 231
Others. . . . . 235
Supported Media. . . . . 237
Moving and Transporting the Printer. . . . . 237
Moving the printer. . . . . 237
Transport. . . . . 253
Using Pressure Roller Spacers. . . . . 253
How to install spacers. . . . . 253
How to remove spacers. . . . . 254
Parallel Adjustments for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit. . . . . 255
Preparing for parallel adjustments. . . . . 255
How to adjust. . . . . 256
Recovering from an Emergency Stop. . . . . 269
Media Settings List for Each Media Type. . . . . 271
SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series. . . . . 272
SC-F20000 Series. . . . . 280
Reading the Signal Lamps. . . . . 285
System Requirements. . . . . 287
Epson Edge Dashboard. . . . . 287
Epson Edge Print. . . . . 288
Web Config. . . . . 289
Specifications Table. . . . . 290

# Notes on Manuals

## Meaning of Symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| ⚠ ***Warning:*** | Warnings must be followed to avoid serious bodily injury. |
| ⚠ ***Caution:*** | Cautions must be followed to avoid bodily injury. |
| ***Important:*** | Important must be followed to avoid damage to this product. |
| ***Note:*** | Notes contain useful or additional information on the operation of this product. |
| ☞ | Indicates related reference content. |

## Model Names and Target Models

❏ This printer has models with different combinations of media feeding units and Auto Take-up Reel Units.
This manual names each model as follows, based on the combination of media feeding unit and Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

- ❏ Standard roll/reel models
  Media feeding unit: Standard type
  Auto Take-up Reel Unit: Standard type
- ❏ Large capacity roll models
  Media feeding unit: Large capacity type
  Auto Take-up Reel Unit: Standard type
- ❏ Large capacity reel models
  Media feeding unit: Large capacity type
  Auto Take-up Reel Unit: Large capacity type

See the following for details on the media feeding unit and Auto Take-up Reel Unit.
☞ "Printer Parts" on page 9

❏ The explanations for the SC-F11000H Series and SC-F11000 Series in this manual are also suitable for models upgraded from SC-F10000H Series or SC-F10000 Series.

## Screenshots in This Manual

❏ The screenshots in this manual may differ slightly from the real screens.

❏ The screenshots of the control panel in this manual are set to have **Black** backgrounds.

## Illustrations

❏ The illustrations in this manual are of the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000 Series, and SC-F10000 Series, unless otherwise specified.

❏ The illustrations in this manual may differ slightly from the model you are using.

## Manual Organization

**North America**

To view user manuals, visit:

SC-F20070:

❏ support.epson.com/f20070

SC-F11070H:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f11070h (U.S.)
❏ www.epson.ca/support/f11070h (Canada)

SC-F11070:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f11070 (U.S.)
❏ www.epson.ca/support/f11070 (Canada)

SC-F10070H:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f10070h (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f10070h (Canada)

SC-F10070:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f10070 (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f10070 (Canada)

**Latin America**

To view user manuals, visit:

SC-F20070:

❏ support.epson.com/f20070

SC-F11070H:

❏ www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070h (Caribbean)

❏ www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070h (Brazil)

❏ www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070h (other regions)

SC-F11070:

❏ www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070 (Caribbean)

❏ www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070 (Brazil)

❏ www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070 (other regions)

SC-F10070H:

❏ www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070h (Caribbean)

❏ www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070h (Brazil)

❏ www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070h (other regions)

SC-F10070:

❏ www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070 (Caribbean)

❏ www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070 (Brazil)

❏ www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070 (other regions)

**Other Regions**

The manuals for the product are organized as shown below.

You can view the PDF manuals using Adobe Acrobat Reader or Preview (Mac).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Start-Up Guide (booklet) | | This manual explains the safety precautions and the work involved with connecting the printer and the computer and installing software. Make sure you read this manual to perform operations safely. |
| Epson Support (PDF) | | Provides information about Epson Support for each region. |
| Online Manuals | | |
| | User's Guide (this manual) | This manual explains how to use the printer. |
| | Troubleshooting & Tips | This manual provides frequently asked questions and tips on using the printer. |
| | Epson Video Manuals | These videos show you how to load media and perform maintenance. |
| | Network Guide (PDF) | This manual provides information on using the printer over a network. |

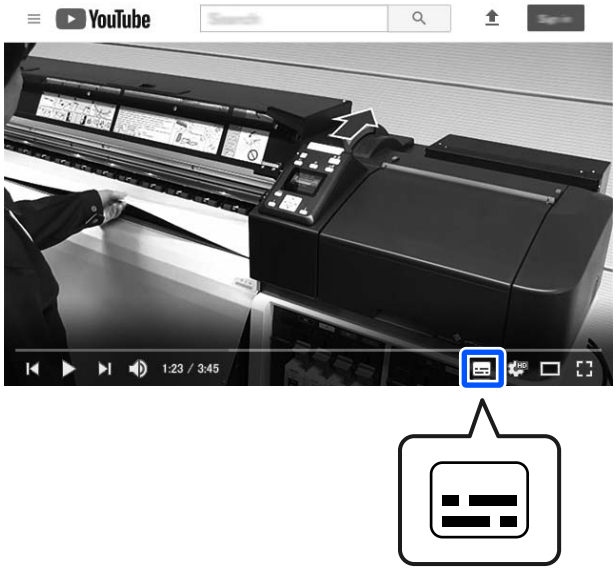
# Viewing Video Manuals

The video manuals have been uploaded to YouTube.

Click [Epson Video Manuals (video)] on the top page of the *Online Manual*, or click the following blue text to view the manuals.

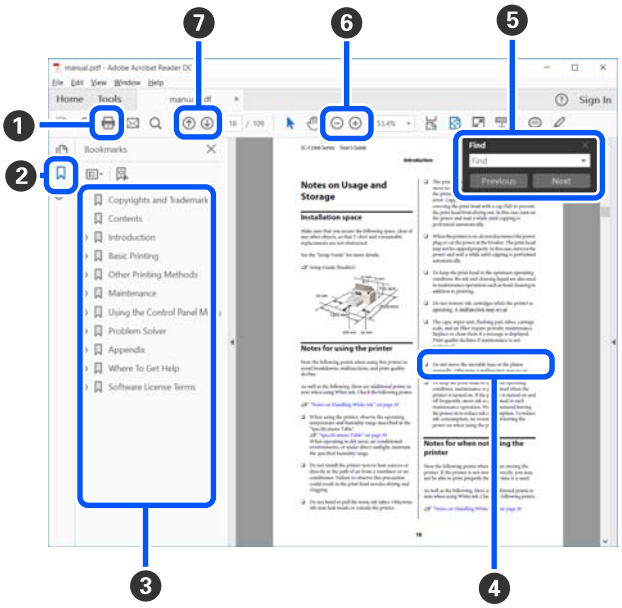
Epson Video Manuals

If the subtitles are not displayed when you play the video, click the subtitles icon shown in the image below.




# Viewing PDF Manuals

This section uses the Adobe Acrobat Reader DC as an example to explain the basic operations for viewing the PDF in Adobe Acrobat Reader.




1. Click to print the PDF manual.

2. Each time it is clicked the bookmarks are hidden or shown.

3. Click the title to open the relevant page.

   Click [+] to open the titles lower in the hierarchy.

4. If the reference is in blue text, click the blue text to open the relevant page.

   To return to the original page, do the following.

   **For Windows**

   While pressing the Alt key, press the ← key.

   **For Mac**

   While pressing the command key, press the ← key.

5. You can input and search for keywords, such as the names of items you want to confirm.

   **For Windows**

   Right click on a page in the PDF manual and select **Find** in the menu that is displayed to open the search toolbar.

   **For Mac**

   Select **Find** in the **Edit** menu to open the search toolbar.

6. To enlarge the text in the display that is too small to see well, click ⊕. Click ⊖ to reduce the size. To specify a part of an illustration or screenshot to enlarge, do the following.

   **For Windows**

   Right click on the page in the PDF manual and select **Marquee Zoom** in the menu that is displayed. The pointer changes to a magnifying glass, use it to specify the range of the place you want to enlarge.

   **For Mac**

   Click **View** menu - **Zoom** - **Marquee Zoom** in this order to change the pointer to a magnifying glass. Use the pointer as a magnifying glass to specify the range of the place you want to enlarge.

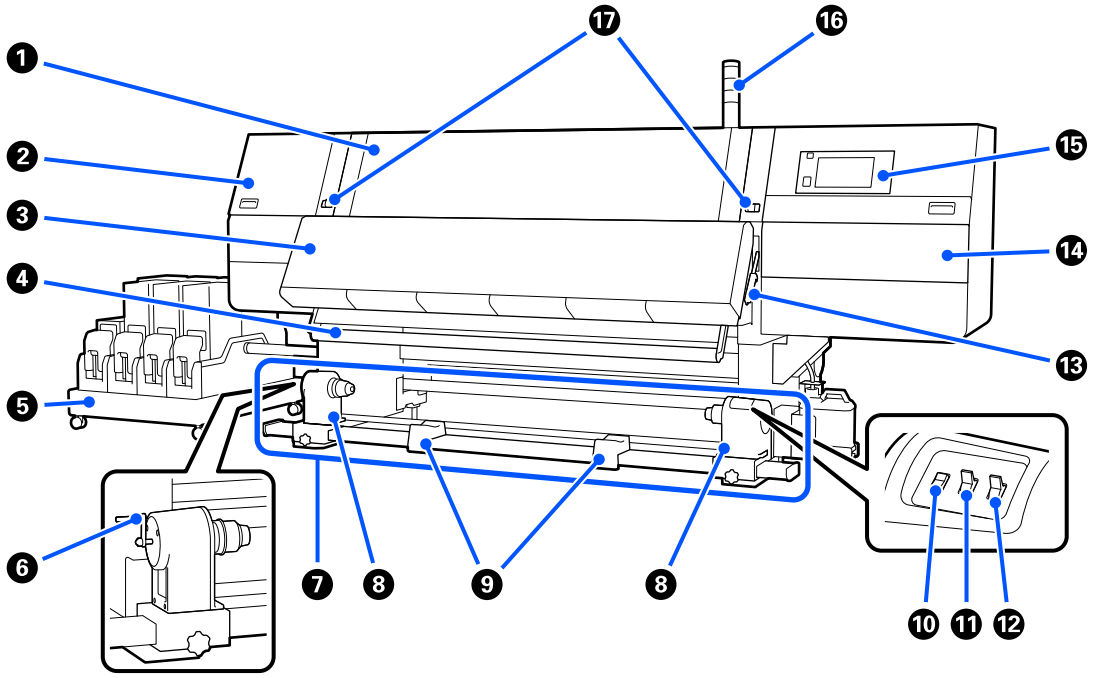
7. Opens the previous page or next page.

# Introduction

## Printer Parts

Illustrations of the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000 Series, and SC-F10000 Series are used for these explanations.

### Front Section




**1 Front cover**

Open when loading media, cleaning the inside of the printer, or removing jammed media. This is normally closed and locked when using the printer.

**2 Maintenance cover (left)**

Open this cover to clean the area around the caps. This is normally closed when using the printer.

"Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160

**3 Dryer**

The built-in heater and fan quickly dry the ink after printing while circulating the air and maintaining the set temperature.

It is also possible to turn off the heater and operate only the fan. (Fan)

"Media Settings screen" on page 33

### ❹ Media guide bar

The bar maintains tension to prevent the media sagging as it is taken up.

### ❺ Ink supply unit

Supplies the printer with ink from the ink cartridges. Holds two ink cartridges for each color.

### ❻ Handle

After placing the roll core on the left media holder, rotate the handle and press the media holder into the roll core.

### ❼ Auto Take-up Reel Unit

Automatically takes up printed media.

### ❽ Media holder

Place the roll core for media take-up on these holders. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

### ❾ Roll support

Rest media temporarily on these supports when removing the take-up roll. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides.

### ❿ Media feed switch

Feeds/rewinds the media. Because the media feed switch has the same function as the media feed button in the control panel, you can operate whichever is the easiest to use in your situation. See the explanation for the media feed button for details about functions.

### ⓫ Auto switch

Use this switch to select the auto take-up direction. Off is the middle position. Select Off to disable auto take-up.

### ⓬ Manual switch

Use this switch for manual take up. The selected option takes effect when the Auto switch is in the Off position.

### ⓭ Media loading lever

After loading media, lower the media loading lever to keep the media in place. Raise the lever to release the media prior to removal.

Since there is also a media loading lever on the back, you can operate whichever is the easiest to use in your situation.

### ⓮ Maintenance cover (right)

Open this cover to clean the area around the print head and the replacement for the wiper roll. This is normally closed when using the printer.

☞ "Replacing the wiper roll" on page 173

☞ "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

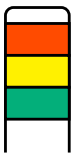
### ⓯ Control panel

☞ "Control panel" on page 24

### ⓰ Signal lamps

Lamps light or flash in 3 colors to notify you of the status of the printer. Basically, the meaning of the lamps' colors are as follows.

The color of the lamps, in order from top to bottom, are red, yellow, and green.



Red : Printing is not possible due to an error.

Yellow : Printer is operating, such as when there is a notification message or the printer is paused or doing maintenance.

Green : Printing is possible and the printer is either printing or ready to print.

The printer notifies you about its status in detail with a combination of the lamps' colors and lighting/flashing.

See the following for an explanation of the signal lamp.

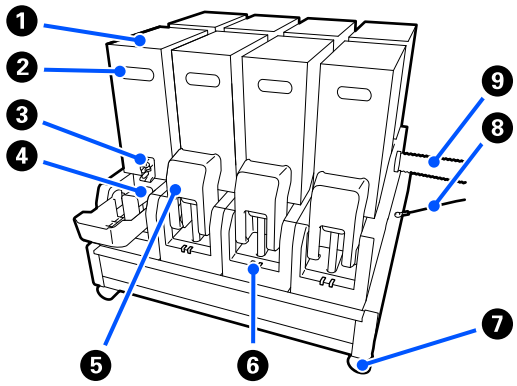
☞ "Reading the Signal Lamps" on page 285

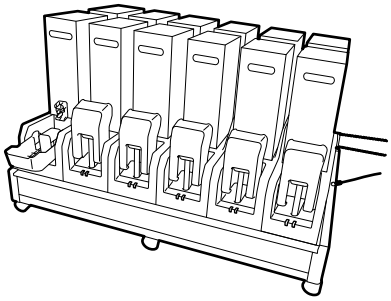
### ⓱ Lock levers

The same parts are on both the left and the right sides. When the front cover is open, the left and right levers move outwards to release the lock. After the front cover is closed, the levers move inward to lock the front cover.

# Ink supply unit

The SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series holds a total of 12 ink cartridges.



### ❶ Ink cartridges

Two ink cartridges for each color are inserted. Normally, one ink cartridge continues to be used. Once the ink cartridge is expended, the printer automatically switches to the other ink cartridge. As a result, even if ink is expended during printing, the ink cartridge can be replaced without interrupting printing. You can also manually switch ink cartridges when you want to switch and use them depending on the intended use. The switching operation is done from the Home screen.

“Home screen” on page 27

Colors of ink are available in 2 types of ink cartridges, which hold 10 L or 3 L, so use them according to your intended use. You can also mix different volumes and install them.

“Ink cartridges” on page 231

### ❷ Handle

Grasp this with your hand to hold the ink cartridge. With new products, the holes are shut, so open the holes by pressing them with your hand. There are 4 places on the sides of 10 L ink cartridges, and 2 places on the top of 3 L ink cartridges.

### ❸ Ink supply outlet

Ink from the ink cartridge comes out of here. Pull this out from inside the new ink cartridge, and then insert the ink cartridge.

### ❹ Connector

Attach this to the ink supply outlet, and then connect the ink supply unit and the ink cartridge.

### ❺ Cartridge cover

Prevents accidental contact with the ink cartridge's connector. Normally, this is raised when using the printer.

### ❻ Cartridge check lamp

Lights or flashes in 2 colors to notify you of the status of the ink cartridge that is inserted. The color of the lamp on the left side is blue and the color of the lamp on the right side is orange.



Left side (blue) is lit

Ink is being supplied to the printer. Do not remove the ink cartridges.



Left side (blue) is flashing

It is time to shake the ink cartridges. Remove the ink cartridges and shake them.

☞ "Periodic shaking of ink cartridges" on page 181



Right side (orange) is lit

An error or warning occurred. Check the details of the error or warning on the control panel's screen.



Entire right side (orange) is flashing

An error that cannot be cleared has occurred. Check the details of the error on the control panel's screen. Turn the power for the printer off, and then turn it back on.

If the error persists even after turning the power off and on, call for service.



Off

No error. The ink cartridge can be removed, if necessary.

### ❼ Casters

There are 6 (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series) or 4 (SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series) casters on the legs. Always lock these when using the printer.

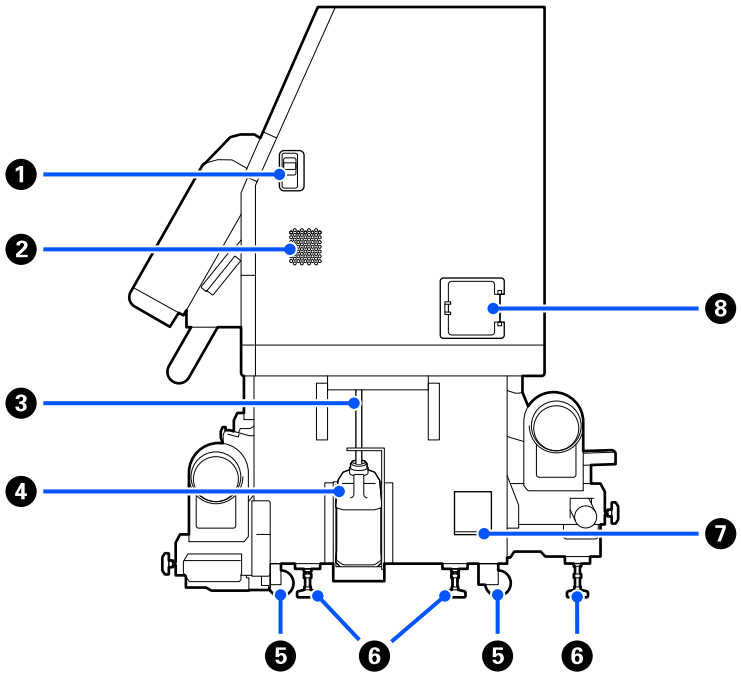
### ❽ Ink supply unit wire

Use with the wire as connected. If you move the ink supply unit while connected to the printer, without connecting them with the wire, the ink supply tube may be damaged.

### ❾ Ink supply tube

Supplies the printer with ink from the ink cartridges.

# Right view




### ❶ Lock release levers

Releases the maintenance cover's locks. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides. When opening the maintenance cover, open it while lowering the levers. The maintenance cover will automatically lock when shut.

### ❷ Airflow vents

Allows air to flow into the printer. There are multiple airflow vents. Do not obstruct any of the airflow vents.

### ❸ Waste ink tube

Tubes for ejecting waste ink. Be sure the end of this tube is in the Waste Ink Bottle while the printer is in use.

### ❹ Waste Ink Bottle

Waste ink collects in this bottle.

Replace it with a new Waste Ink Bottle when a message is displayed on the control panel prompting you to do so.

"Disposing of waste ink" on page 175

### ❺ Casters

There are two casters on each leg.

### ❻ Levelers

When installing, check the level gauge, use the levelers to adjust the printer to be level, and then fix the printer in place. Install metallic plates on the bottom to distribute the load.

Keep the printer level after moving it.

☞ "Moving and Transporting the Printer" on page 237

### ❼ Level gauge

Check the horizontal level of the printer.

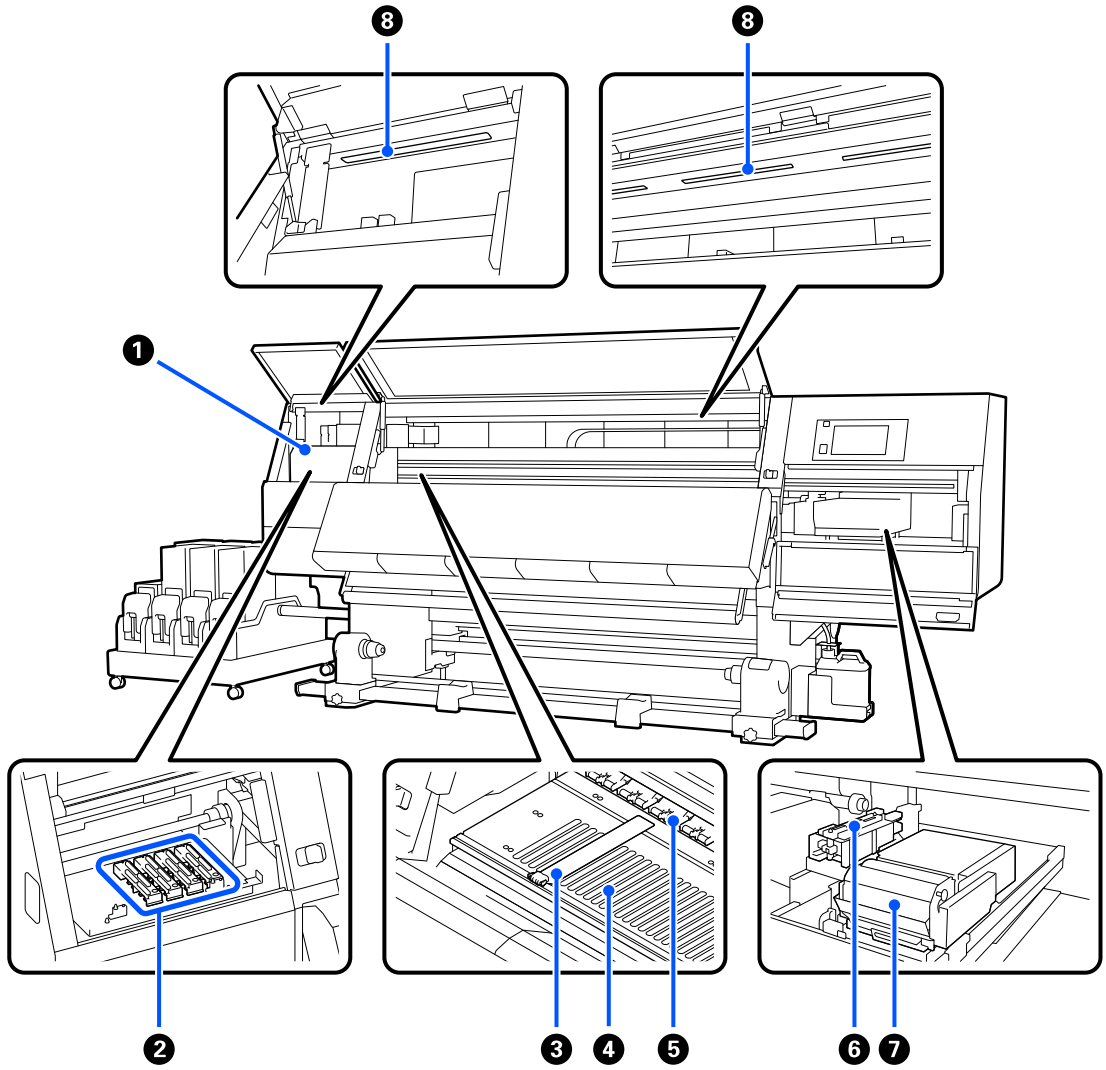
### ❽ Circuit breaker

If an electric current caused by a short circuit is detected, the circuit is automatically cut off to prevent electric shock. Always keep the breaker switch ON while using the printer. Check the circuit breaker's performance about once a month.

☞ "Checking the circuit breaker's performance" on page 187

# Inside

When the following parts become dirty, they may cause problems with the print results. Regularly clean or exchange these parts as described in the chapters listed in the reference sections below or by following the messages on the screen.




### ❶ Print head

The print head prints by moving left and right while emitting ink. When print results are dirty, check for dirt stuck to the print head and clean it, if necessary.

"Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

### ❷ Anti-drying caps

There is a row of 8 on the SC-F20000 Series, 6 on the SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series and 4 on the SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series.

Except during printing, these caps cover the print head nozzles to prevent them drying out. Depending on the dirtiness, a message about cleaning appears on the control panel's screen. Clean according to the message.

☞ "Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160

### ❸ Media edge plates

The media edge plates prevent the media riding up and keeps fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Position the plates at either side of the media before printing.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

### ❹ Platen

This suctions and fixes the media for smooth printing and media feeding.

☞ "Daily cleaning" on page 155

### ❺ Pressure rollers

These rollers press down on the media during printing.

### ❻ Suction cap

Ink is drawn out from the print head's nozzle with this cap.

Clean the suction caps before doing Print Head Refresh.

☞ "Cleaning the suction caps" on page 163

### ❼ Wiper unit

The wiper removes ink from the surface of the print head nozzles. The wiper roll that is loaded on the wiper unit is a consumable item. Replace when a message is displayed on the control panel prompting you to do so.

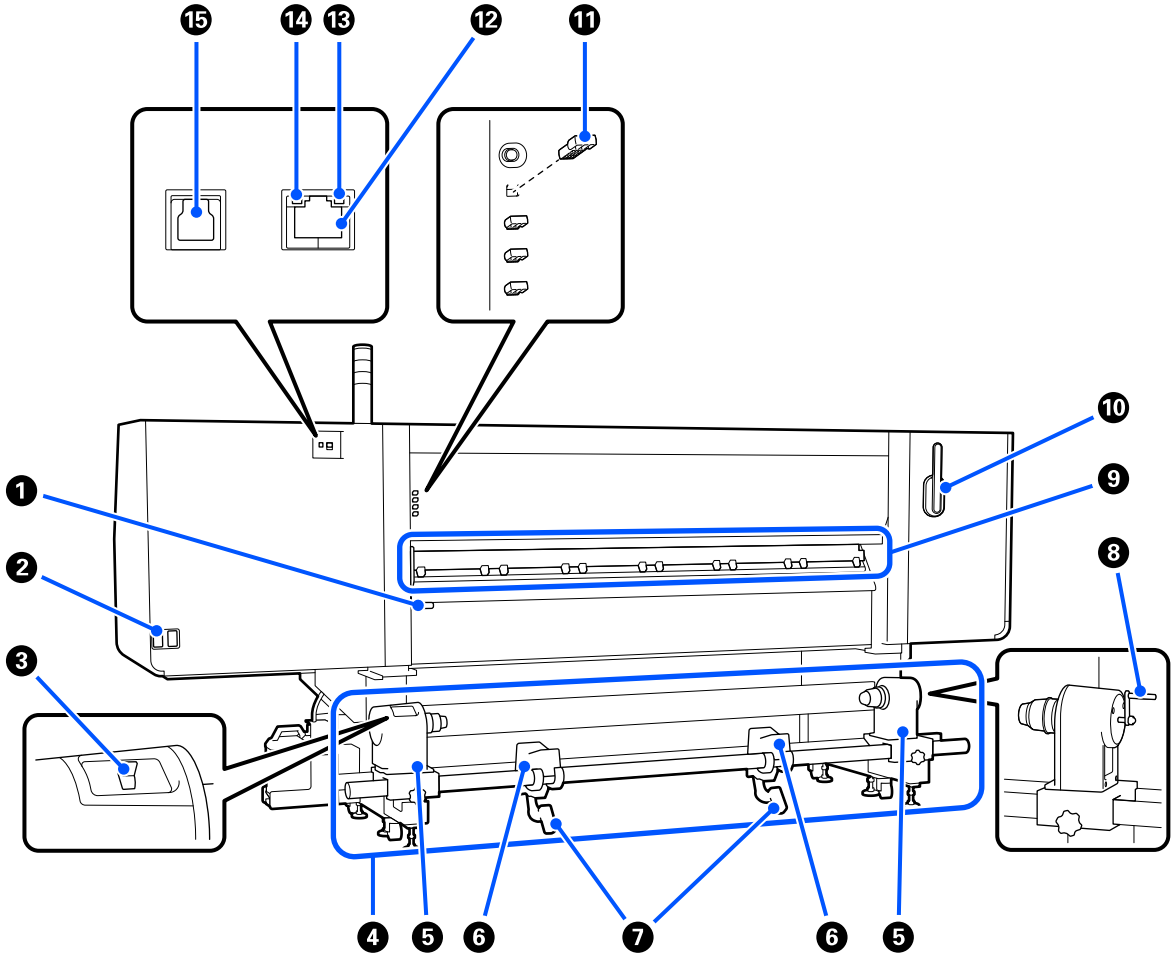
☞ "Replacing the wiper roll" on page 173

### ❽ Internal lamp

Illuminates the inside of the printer to make it easy to check print results and areas for maintenance. If the surface becomes dirty due to ink mist, clean it.

☞ "Cleaning the inside light" on page 166

# Back




### ❶ Media loading lever

After loading media, lower the media loading lever to keep the media in place. Raise the lever to release the media prior to removal.

Because this media loading lever has the same function as the media loading lever on the front of the printer, you can operate whichever is the easiest to use in your situation.

### ❷ AC inlet #1/AC inlet #2

Connects the power cable. Be sure to connect both cables.

### ❸ Drive switch

The drive switch can be used to slacken media while loading it and to take up cut media while replacing it.

### ❹ Media Feeding Unit

Loads media to be used for printing.

See the following for supported media.

“Supported Media” on page 237

### ❺ Media holder

Place media on these holders. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides.

### ❻ Roll support

Rest media on these supports before placing it on the media holders. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides.

### ❼ Lift lever

If the media to be mounted on the media holders seems heavy, use these levers to raise the media easily to the level of the media holders. The same parts are on both the left and the right sides.

### ❽ Handle

After placing media on the right media holder, rotate the handle and press the media holder into the roll core.

### ❾ Media cleaner

Wipes off any lint or dust on the media when the media is being fed. If a message appears on the control panel's screen, use the supplied media cleaner brush for cleaning.

☞ "Cleaning the media cleaners" on page 159

### ❿ Media cleaner brush

Dusts off the dirt on the surface of the media cleaner.

Since the brush's surface has a direction in which to wipe, move it in the direction that wipes off the dirt. You can switch the direction in which to wipe. If you are not using the media cleaner brush, store it by hanging it on the hooks on the back of the printer.

### ⓫ Presser roller spacer

This part fixes the pressure rollers in the open position. Pressure rollers that have spacers inserted do not apply pressure to the media, even when the media loading lever is lowered. If you use the presser roller spacer when wrinkles occur on the media end, the wrinkles may be improved.

If you are not using the presser roller spacer, store it by inserting it into its original place.

☞ "Using Pressure Roller Spacers" on page 253

### ⓬ LAN port

Connects the LAN cable. Use a shielded twisted pair cable (category 5e or higher).

### ⓭ Data lamp

The data lamp lights or flashes to indicate the network connection status and whether the printer is receiving data.

On : Connected.

Flashing : Connected. Receiving data.

### ⓮ Status lamp

The color indicates the network's communication speed.

Green : 1000Base-T

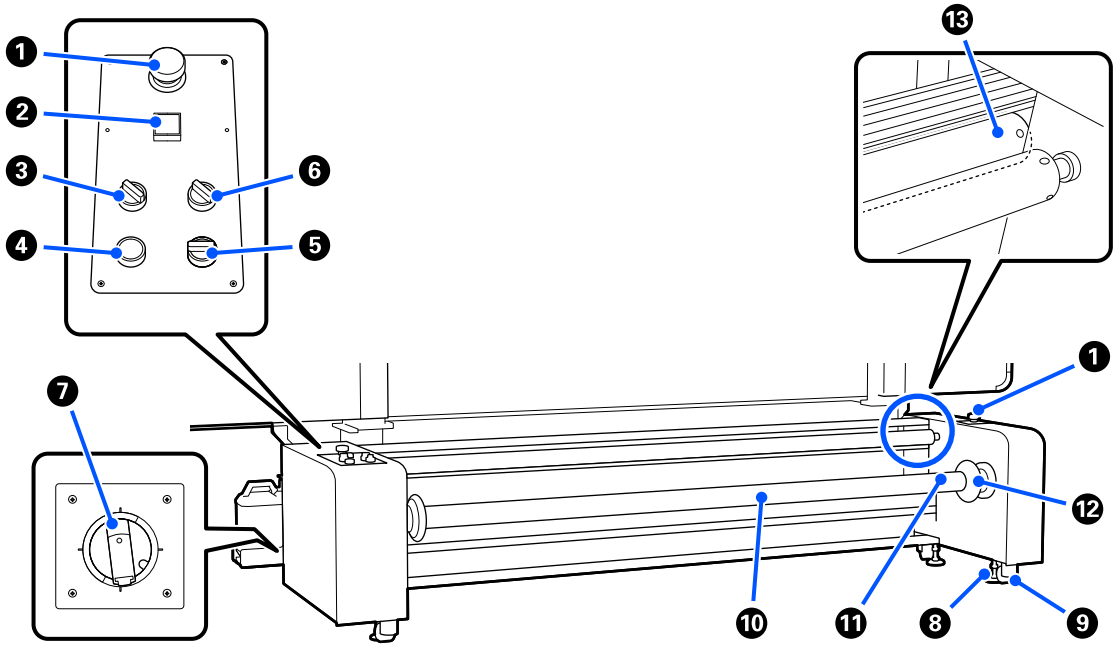
### ⓯ USB port

Connects the USB cable.

## Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type)

The large capacity type of Media Feeding Unit is only compatible with the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000H Series, and SC-F11000 Series.

The large capacity type of media feeding unit can be loaded with large capacity media with an outer diameter of up to 500 mm (19.68 in.) and a weight of up to 300 kg (661.38 lb) so that the machine can be used for long periods of time without having to replace the media.




### ❶ Emergency stop button

There are 2, on the left and right. Press them in an emergency to quickly stop operations.

☞ "Recovering from an Emergency Stop" on page 269

### ❷ ⏻ button (power button)

Turns the power to the Media Feeding Unit on and off. If you are using a large capacity type media feeding unit, before you turn on the power to the printer, first turn on the power to the media feeding unit, and then turn on the power to the printer.

When turning off the power, turn off the printer first, and then turn off the media feeding unit.

### ❸ Load switch

Adjust the tension applied when media is feeding by switching the force of the tension bar pressing on the media.

For normal usage, set Mid; use Lo to lower the tension and Hi to raise it.

### ❹ Release Button

Lift the tension bar and release the tension of the media. Raise the tension bar while loading media.

When the tension bar is raised, pressing this button lowers the tension bar.

### ❺ Manual switch

The drive switch can be used to slacken media while loading it and to take up cut media while replacing it.

This functions regardless of the Auto switch setting, so there is no need to turn the Auto switch Off to operate the Manual switch.

### ❻ Auto switch

This switch sets the specifications (whether the printed surface is rolled facing out or in) for taking up the media that is loaded. Set to load media with printable side out, and set for printable side in. When set to Off, it does not operate.

### ❼ Circuit breaker (Main Power Switch)

If an overcurrent is detected, the circuit is automatically cut off. Always keep the switch ON while using the printer.

### ❽ Levelers

Extend to the ground to brace the Media Feeding Unit.

After moving the printer, do the needed adjustments and then brace it.

“Moving and Transporting the Printer” on page 237

### ❾ Casters

There are 4, on the legs.

### ❿ Spindle

To load media or roll cores on the printer, insert the spindle into the media then load it.

The spindle can be used facing either left or right, but the valve is only on one side, so put the valve where it is easy to use.

### ⓫ Valve

Supply air from a commercially available air compressor here to secure media or roll cores to the spindle.

### ⓬ Handle

Move to lock and release the spindle that is loaded. Also, hold the handle to rotate the spindle manually.

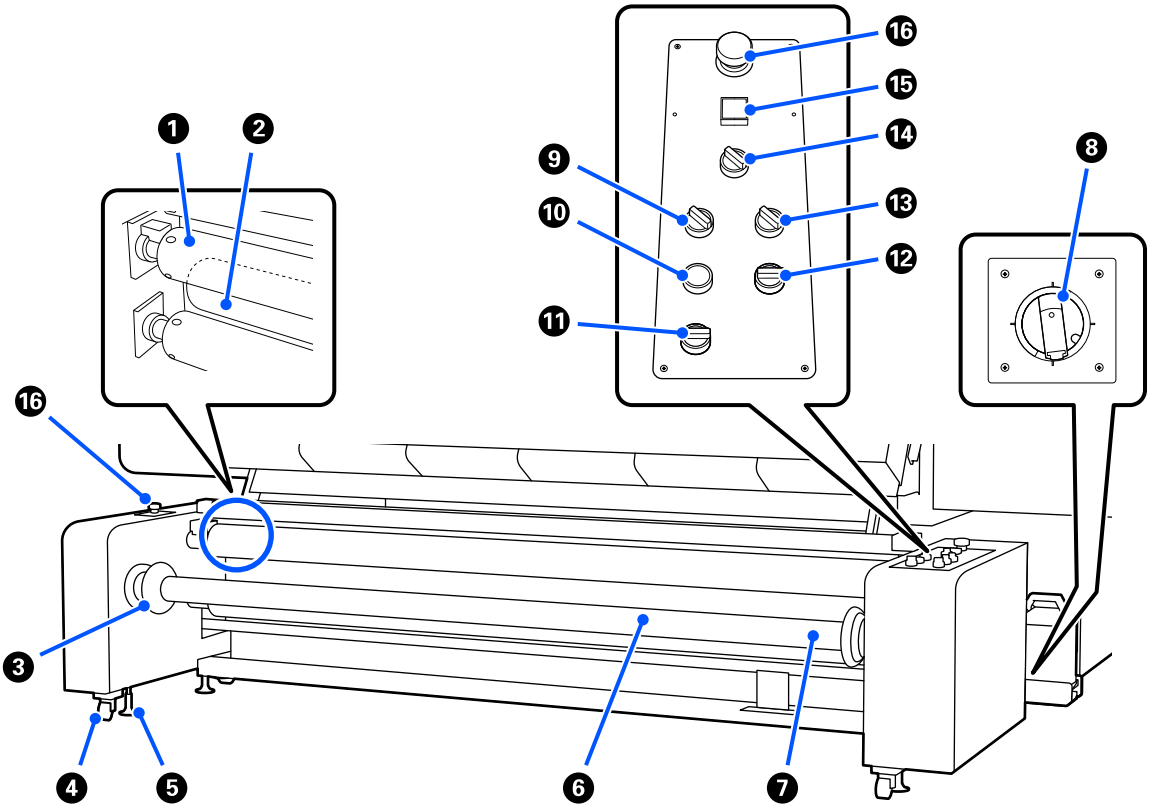
**⓭ Tension bar**

Move this bar up or down to press on the media and apply tension.

## Auto Take-up Reel Unit (Large Capacity Type)

The large capacity type of Auto Take-up Reel Unit is only compatible with the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000H Series, and SC-F11000 Series.

The large capacity type of Auto Take-up Reel Unit can take up media with an outer diameter of up to 500 mm (19.68 in.) and a weight of up to 300 kg (661.38 lb) so that the machine can be used for long periods of time without having to replace the media.




**❶ Heating roller**

This roller heats the media after printing using a built-in heater. It adjusts the media to an appropriate temperature so that it can be taken up correctly.

**❷ Tension bar**

Move this bar up or down to press on the media and apply tension.

**❸ Handle**

Move to lock and release the spindle that is loaded. Also, hold the handle to rotate the spindle manually.

### ❹ Casters

There are 4, on the legs.

### ❺ Levelers

Extend to the ground to brace the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

### ❻ Spindle

To load media or roll cores on the printer, insert the spindle into the media then load it.

The spindle can be used facing either left or right, but the valve is only on one side, so put the valve where it is easy to use.

Also, the spindle for the large capacity type of Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit is a standard part that can be used for either unit.

### ❼ Valve

Supply air from a commercially available air compressor here to secure media or roll cores to the spindle.

### ❽ Circuit breaker (Main Power Switch)

If an overcurrent is detected, the circuit is automatically cut off. Always keep the switch ON while using the printer.

### ❾ Load switch

Adjust the tension applied when taking up the media by switching the force of the tension bar pressing on the media.

The tension increases in intensity in the order of Hi, Mid, Lo. Therefore, see the following and adjust according to the media you are using.

☞ "Media Settings List for Each Media Type" on page 271

### ❿ Release Button

Lift the tension bar and release the tension of the media. Raise the tension bar while loading media.

When the tension bar is raised, pressing this button lowers the tension bar.

### ⓫ Media feed switch

Feeds/rewinds the media. Because the media feed switch has the same function as the media feed button in the control panel, you can operate whichever is the easiest to use in your situation. See the explanation for the media feed button for details about functions.

### ⓬ Manual switch

Use this switch for manual media take up.

This functions regardless of the Auto switch setting, so there is no need to turn the Auto switch Off to operate the Manual switch.

### ⓭ Auto switch

Use this switch to select the auto take-up direction. Select Off to disable auto take-up.

### ⓮ Heater switch

Turns the heater for the heat roller on and off.

### ⓯ ⏻ button (power button)

Turns the power to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit on and off.

If you are using a large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit, before you turn on the power to the printer, first turn on the power to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the media feeding unit.

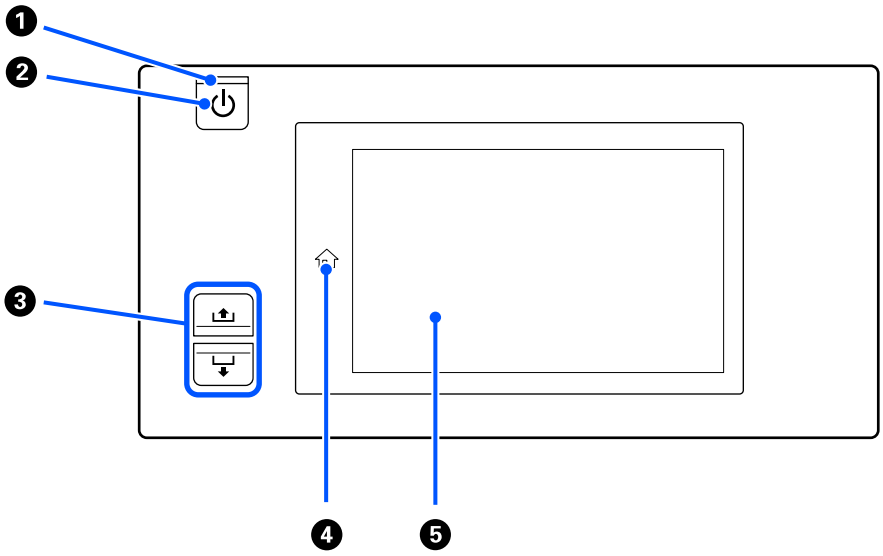
When turning off the power, turn off the printer first, and then turn off the auto take-up reel unit and the media feeding unit.

### ⓰ Emergency stop button

There are 2, on the left and right. Press them in an emergency to quickly stop operations.

“Recovering from an Emergency Stop” on page 269

## Control panel




### ❶ ⏻ light (power light)

The printer's operational status is indicated by a lit or flashing light.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| On | : | The power is on. |
| Flashing | : | The printer is receiving data or performing head cleaning or other operations during shut-down. |
| Off | : | The power is off. |

**❷ ⏻ button (power button)**
Turns the power on and off.

If you are using a large capacity roll model or large capacity reel model, turn on the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit before turning on the printer.

When turning off the power, turn off the printer first, then turn off the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit.

**❸ Media feed button**
The operations when the button is pressed differ depending on the media loading lever's status.

- Lever is lowered

  The following operations are done, regardless of the loaded media's winding specifications.

  button: Rewinds the media.

  button: Feeds the media.

  When the button is used to rewind, the media stops when its leading edge reaches the print start position.

  Rewind can be resumed by releasing the button and then pressing it again.

- Lever is raised

  The loaded media is rotated in the following directions.

  button: For printable side out, the rewind direction; for printable side in, the feed direction

  button: For printable side out, the feed direction; for printable side in, the rewind direction

  If you take up media with the lever raised, it may rotate in the feed direction.

  “Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit” on page 81

  “Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit” on page 99

You can also do the same operation with the Auto Take-up Reel Unit's media feed switch. Operate whichever is the easiest to use in your situation.

**❹ ⌂ button (Home button)**
Press this while it is lit when the settings menu, or other such screens, is displayed to return to the Home screen.

If the Home button cannot be used during operation, the lamp turns off.

**❺ Display**

This is a touch panel that displays the printer's status, menus, and error messages. You can use your fingers to lightly press and select menu items and options shown on the screen, or to move your finger while still touching the screen to scroll the screen.

☞ “Understanding and Operating the Display” on page 27

# Understanding and Operating the Display

Screenshots for the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000 Series, and SC-F10000 Series are used for these explanations.

This chapter describes how to understand and operate the screen layout, using the Home screen, Menu screen, and the display for operating procedures screen as an example.

> ***Note:***
> *If the screens for the SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series and the SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series are different, then updating the firmware for SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series will update the screens for SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series.*

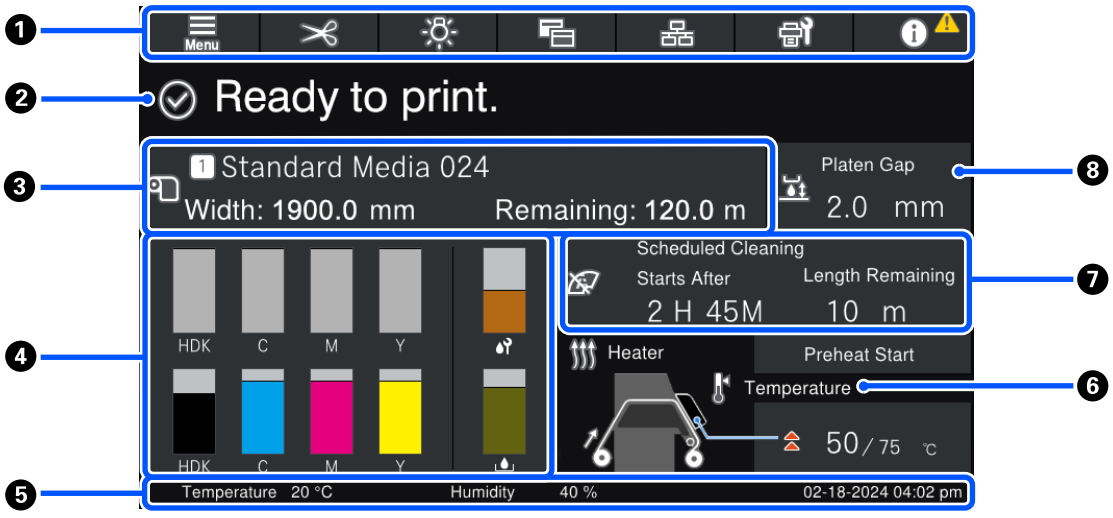
## Home screen

On the Home screen, you can switch between the Status Display screen and the Media Settings screen by pressing the display switching button.

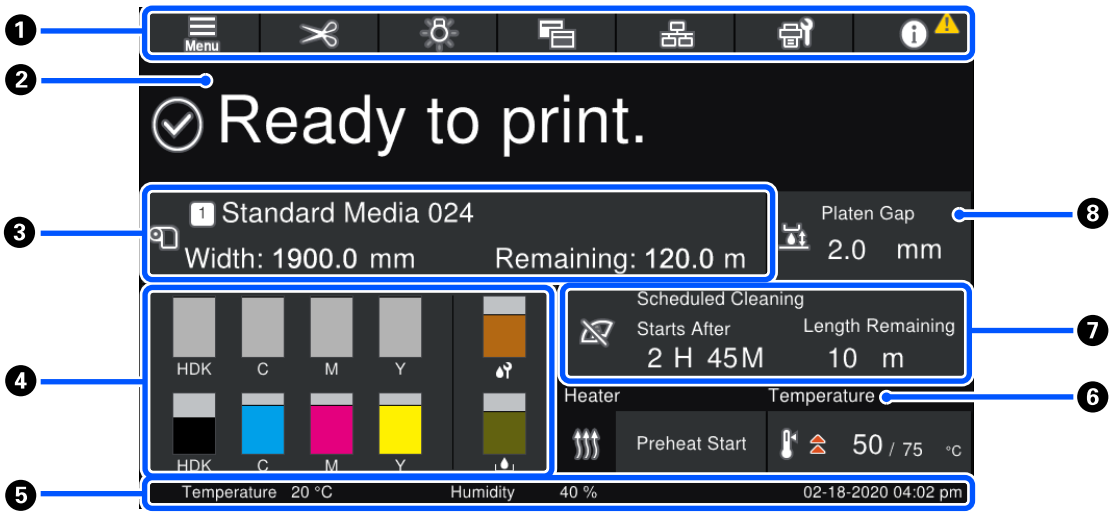
### Status Indicator screen

The printer's status can be listed.

#### SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series



### SC-F10000 Series




## ❶ Header

Displays the buttons for frequently-used functions. The functions of the buttons are shown below. The header also appears similarly on other screens.

### Menu

Displays the Settings menu.

"Control Panel Menu" on page 190

### Cutting Media

Feeds the media to the cut position when printing is complete and when media has been replaced.

"Cutting Media" on page 130

### Internal lamp

Switches the internal lamp on or off. The display changes as follows, depending on the status.

On

Off

Setting **Auto** for **Inside Light** in the Printer Settings, turns the light on automatically when operations that need light are done, such as while printing, and turns it off when the operation is complete.

However, it may not come on, depending on the condition of the printer. In these cases, the button changes to gray.

"General Settings menu" on page 201

**Switch View**

Switches the Status Indicator screen and Media Settings screen.

**Switch Connection Status**

Changes the Online/Offline state of the computer connected to the printer. Change this when necessary, such as changing it to Offline so print jobs are not received while doing printer maintenance.

**Maintenance**

The Maintenance menu appears on this screen and you can do such maintenance as print head maintenance and replacement of consumables.

"Maintenance menu" on page 219

**Information**

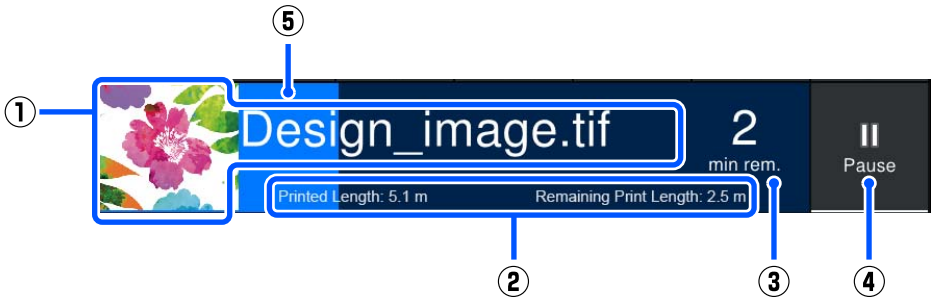
Displays the Printer Status. If there are any notifications, such as about running low on consumables, the ⚠ icon appears at the top right of the screen. The display that appears when you press the button displays a **Message List** for matters not yet handled. Instructions appear if you press the items, so follow the directions to resolve any issues. Once everything is resolved, the ⚠ icon disappears.

### ❷ Messages

Displays the printer's status and messages that give instructions.

"When a Message is Displayed" on page 222

During printing, the display switches, as seen in the illustration, and shows the following information and buttons.




(1) File name and thumbnail of image being printed

A thumbnail image may not be shown, depending on the type of RIP being used.

(2) The media's Printed Length, the media's Remaining Print Length, Time until media replacement, and Pass Mode

Pressing the display area while printing displays the screen to set the display details for (2). Select up to 2 items that you want to display.

The Time until media replacement shows an estimated time.

(3) Estimate of remaining printing time

(4) Pause (Suspend) button

Appears as the Start button while warming up, until the heater reaches the set temperature. Pressing this button starts printing, even if the heater temperature is low.

(5) Progress bar

#### Pausing printing and canceling print jobs

Pressing the Pause button while printing displays a screen for selecting the timing to suspend, press one to select it.

- **Immediate pause**: Stops printing immediately. When printing is stopped during a print job, printing may be disturbed when printing is resumed.
- **Pause between pages**: Stops at the end of the page currently printing.

Pressing **Resume** in the screen during a pause cancels the pause status. Pressing **Cancel** cancels the print job in progress and stops printing.

### ❸ Media info

Displays information about the media that is loaded. The number indicates the media setting number. When the remaining amount of media goes below the value set in the **Remaining Alert** in the Media Settings menu, ⚠ appears. Press the display area to show the Media Settings menu.

☞ "Media Settings menu" on page 209

### ❹ Supply Status

Information regarding consumables, such as ink cartridges, are displayed using the following icons and bar lengths.




#### Ink cartridge status

Displays the approximate level of remaining ink and the current status. If the amount of ink runs low, the bar becomes shorter.

The code at the bottom of the bar display indicates the ink color. The bar at the bottom indicates the front ink cartridge, while the bar at the top indicates the back ink cartridge.

SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series

FP : Fluorescent Pink

FY : Fluorescent Yellow

LC : Light Cyan

LM : Light Magenta

OR : Orange

V : Violet

HDK : High Density Black

C : Cyan

M : Magenta

Y : Yellow

OR and V are compatible with SC-F11000H Series only.

SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series

HDK : High Density Black

C : Cyan

M : Magenta

Y : Yellow

The display changes, as shown below, if a warning or error occurs.



The amount of ink is estimated to be low. Once the ink cartridge is expended, the printer automatically switches to the other ink cartridge.
Confirm that a new ink cartridge is installed on the other side.



- ❏ Ink is expended. Replace the old ink cartridge with a new one.
- ❏ More than 30 minutes has elapsed since the ink cartridge connector was disconnected. Immediately connect the connector, if it is left the way it is, the ink will dry out and the printer may not function normally.



It is time to shake the ink cartridges. Remove the ink cartridges and shake them.



An ink cartridge's connector is disconnected. Insert the ink cartridge and connect the connector correctly.



Confirm that all of the cartridge covers are upright, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



**Waste Ink Bottle status**

Displays the approximate amount of space available in the Waste Ink Bottle. If the amount of space decreases, the bar becomes shorter.

The display changes, as shown below, if a warning occurs.



The Waste Ink Bottle is almost full. Ready a new Waste Ink Bottle.



**Wiper Roll status**

Displays the guideline for replacement of the wiper roll. As the time for replacement gets closer, the bar becomes shorter.

The display changes, as shown below, if a warning occurs.



The wiper roll will need to be replaced soon. A new wiper roll needs to be prepared.

Pressing the display area shows the Supply Status screen and you can check the part numbers for consumables. You can also switch the ink cartridges to be used. (Changing the active slot)

To change the ink cartridge, press the bar display of the one you are not using, confirm the on-screen message, and then press **Start**.

### ❺ Footer

Displays the current date and time and the temperature and humidity around the printer. If the temperature and humidity are out of range for the printer's operating environment, ⚠ appears. For high-quality printing, use the printer within the range of the printer's operating environment. The footer also appears similarly on other screens.

### ❻ Dryer/Heating roller information

Heating roller information is displayed only for large capacity reel models.

Dryer information displays the Preheat Start button and temperature. Press the Preheat Start button when you want to start preheating before receiving a print job after the printer returns from sleep mode. Pressing the display area for temperature displays the Settings screen.

Heating roller information displays the temperature. Turn the heater for the heating roller on and off using the heater switch on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

The value on the right indicates Set, and the value on the left indicates Current. If the current temperature does not reach the set value, the following icons are displayed depending on the situation.



Heating



Cooling

The illustrations that show screens of the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000H Series, and SC-F11000 Series vary according to the models of the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit you are using.



Standard roll/reel models



Large capacity roll models



Large capacity reel models

### ❼ Notice on when to do maintenance or periodic cleaning

Displays a notice, in the following situations, about when to do Maintenance Cleaning* on the left and when to do Periodic Cleaning on the right. For Periodic Cleaning, either Print Duration, Print Page, or Print Length appears, according to the settings.

- ❏ Maintenance Cleaning: 24 hours in advance
- ❏ Periodic Cleaning (Print Duration): 1 hour in advance
- ❏ Periodic Cleaning (Print Length): 20 m in advance
- ❏ Periodic Cleaning (Print Page): 20 pages in advance

The times these are done change greatly depending on the ambient temperature of the print heads. In addition, Maintenance Cleaning may be done regardless of the notice display when the power is turned back on.

Pressing the display area shows the screen for cleaning in advance. If you want to print when it is almost time to implement cleaning, implementing cleaning in advance is effective at preventing printing from being interrupted midway.

* Maintenance Cleaning is head cleaning that the printer automatically performs after a set period to keep the print heads in good condition. Set Maintenance Cleaning from the Maintenance Setting menu.

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

### ❽ Platen Gap

Displays the setting value for the platen gap. Pressing the display area shows the Settings screen.

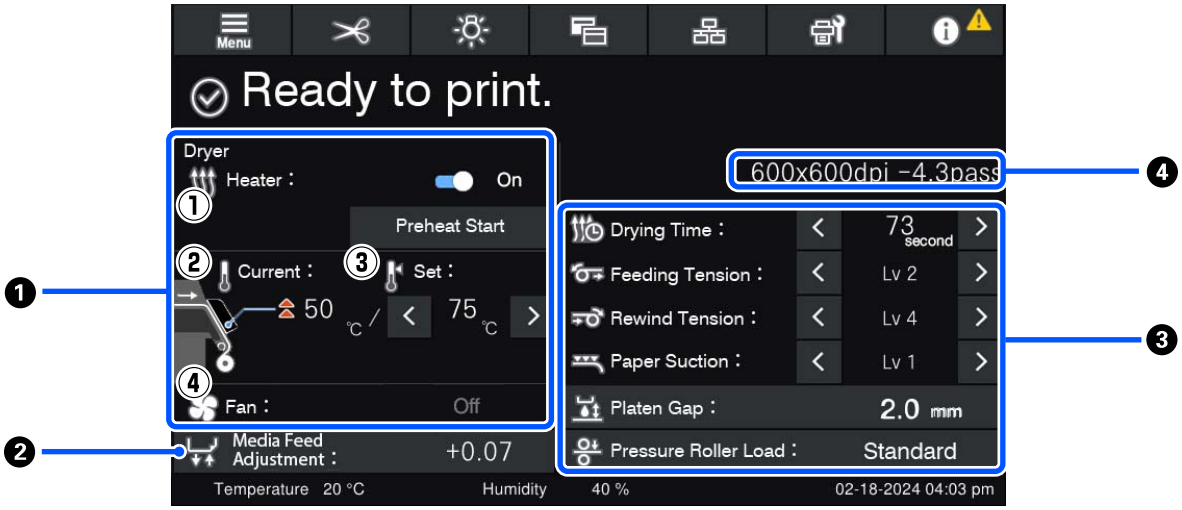
## Media Settings screen

List of main media settings that you can operate.

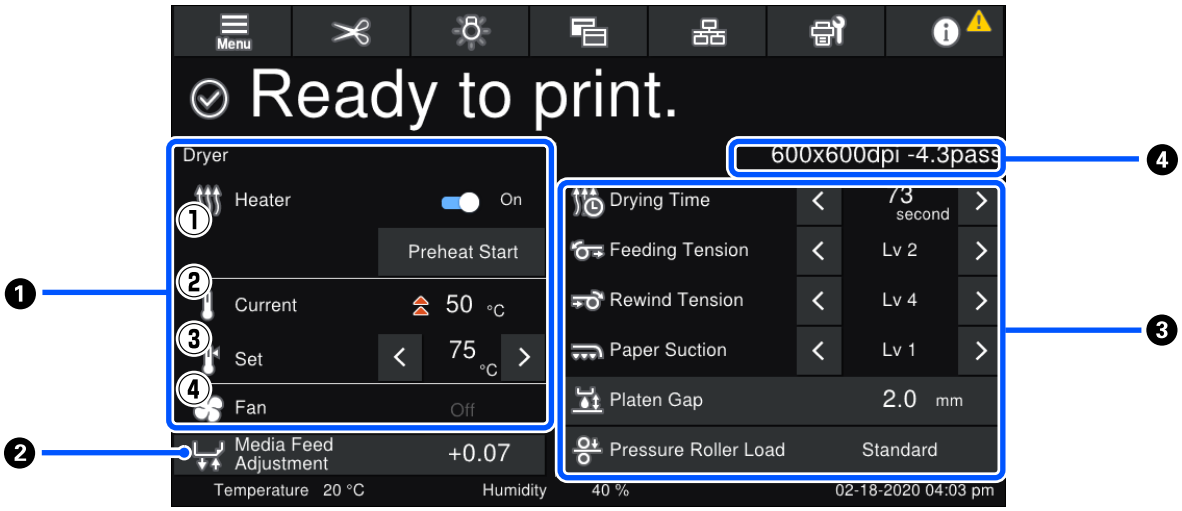
The Media Settings can also be changed from the Settings menu. Change to whichever is the easiest to use in your situation.

☞ "Control Panel Menu" on page 190

### SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series




### SC-F10000 Series




#### ❶ Dryer/Heating roller information

Heating roller information is displayed only for large capacity reel models.

Turn the heater for the heating roller on and off using the heater switch on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

(1) Heater operations

Switching to On/Off starts and stops preheating.

Turn the heater for the heating roller on and off using the heater switch on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

(2) Current

Displays icons and the Status Indicator screen at the same time, depending on the situation.

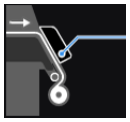
(3) Set

Pressing ‹/› allows you to change the values.

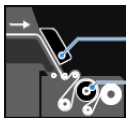
(4) Strength of the Fan mode

The Fan mode is enabled when the heater is Off. Pressing ‹/› allows you to change the fan's strength.

The illustrations that show screens of the SC-F20000 Series, SC-F11000H Series, and SC-F11000 Series vary according to the model of the auto take-up reel unit you are using.



Standard roll/reel models, Large capacity roll models



Large capacity reel models

**❷ Media Feed Adjustment information during printing**

If you do Media Feed Adjustment while printing, the adjusted values appear. Pressing the display area while printing displays the Settings screen.

☞ "Changing settings while printing" on page 35

**❸ Media Settings information**

The setting items vary according to the media feeding unit and the Auto Take-up Reel Unit you are using.

Displays the currently set values for each setting item. You can change the values for items other than Platen Gap and Pressure Roller Load by pressing ‹/›. Doing so changes the setting values for each item of the settings for the currently selected media settings. Pressing the buttons for the Platen Gap and Pressure Roller Load displays the Settings screen.

**❹ Pass Mode**

Displays the current Pass Mode.

☞ "Media Settings menu" on page 209

## Changing settings while printing

During printing, you can change the settings in the Media Settings displayed in the Home screen. If a problem, such as banding or wrinkles, occurs, change the Media Settings to fix it. During printing, you can easily solve problems because you can check the results you see as you make changes. In addition, you can make quick fixes, without stopping printing, when problems occur shortly after printing starts.

Changing the settings in the Home screen changes the content of the current Media Settings.

For methods to fix problems in print results, see the "Problem Solver" in this manual and "Troubleshooting & Tips" in the *Online Manual*.

“Problem Solver” on page 222

This section explains an example of how to do Media Feed Adjustment to compensate for banding.

1. Press to access the Media Settings screen.
2. Press the Media Feed Adjustment information area.

   The settings screen is displayed.
3. Press / to change the values.

   If the feed amount is too small, black bands (dark stripes) will appear; adjust the feed amount upwards.

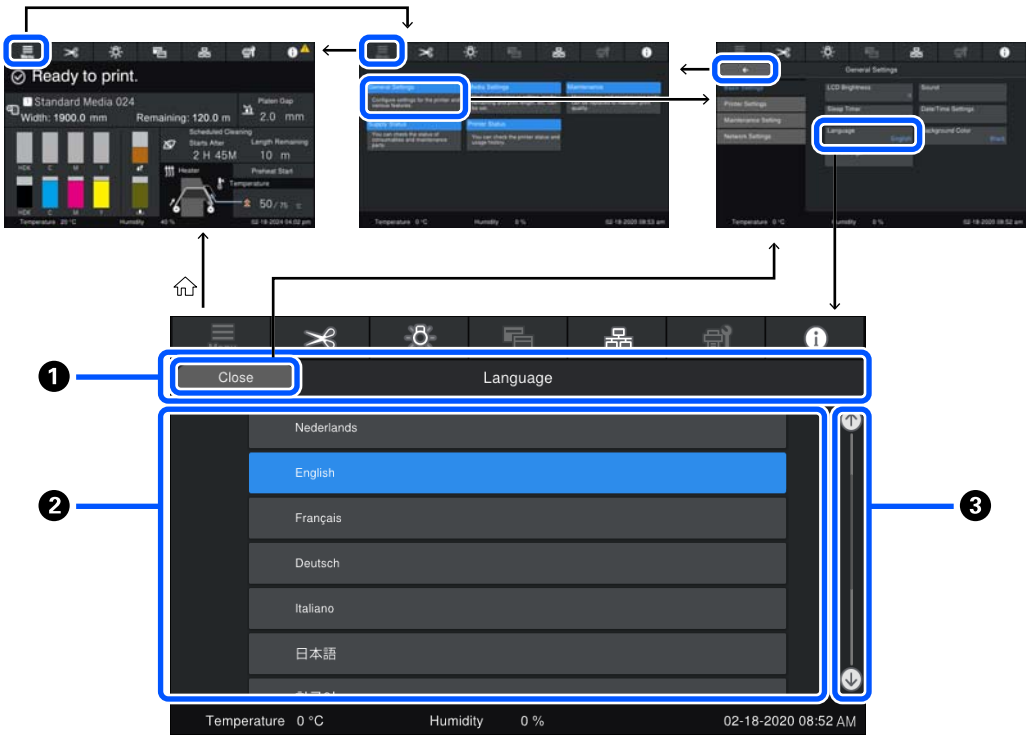
   If, in contrast, the feed amount is too large, white bands (pale stripes) will appear; adjust the feed amount downwards.

   > ***Note:***
   > *When the settings screen for Media Feed Adjustment is displayed, you can change the values by pressing the / buttons on the left side of the screen.*
4. Change the values as you check the printing results until the problem is completely fixed.

   This updates the setting value of Media Feed Adjustment in the currently selected media settings.
5. When adjustments are complete, press to return to the Home screen.

# Menu screen

Pressing Menu on the Home screen displays the Menu screen.




### ❶ Screen name display area

Displays the screen's name. Pressing **Close** or ← returns you to the previous screen.

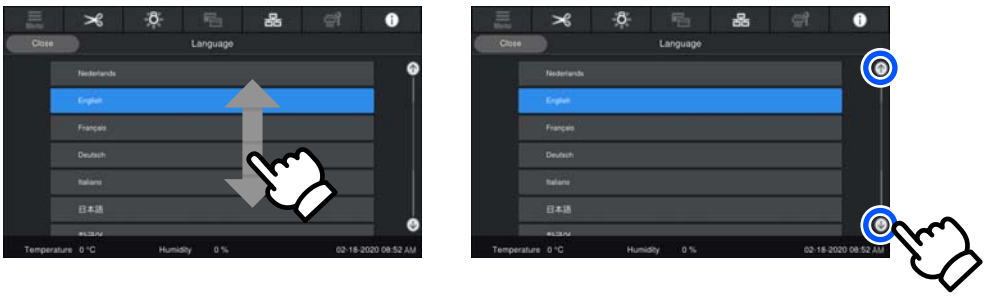
### ❷ Operation area

Displays buttons and other items. The displayed contents vary according to the screen.

### ❸ Scroll bar

Appears when all of the buttons, etc., do not fit in the operation area. If the scroll bar is shown, check the buttons, etc., by scrolling up and down.

You can scroll by pressing and holding the item you want to scroll and moving it up and down (slide), or by pressing ▲/▼ to scroll, as shown in the illustrations below.

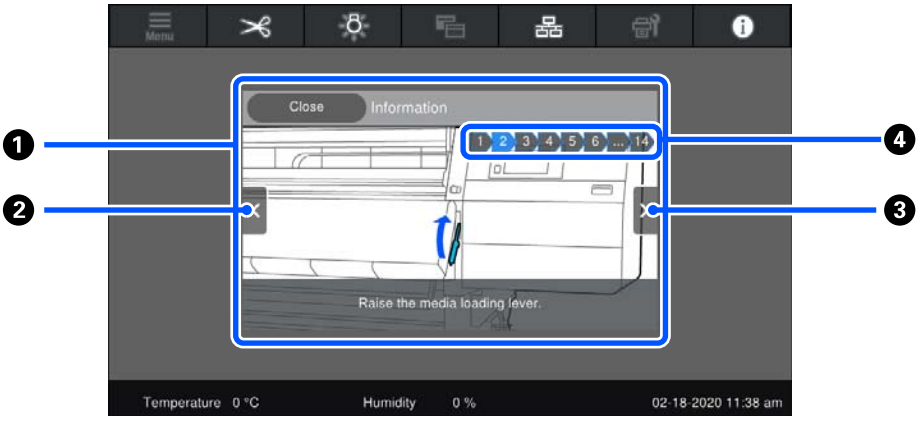


# Instructions screen

The following buttons may appear on screens on which a series of operations starts.




The instructions are explained using illustrations for each step to make them easy to understand. Even if you do not remember the instructions, you can work while looking at the screen.




**❶ Instructions display area**

Displays the instructions. Depending on the step, the Instructions screen may display and cycle through multiple illustrations.

**❷ Previous step button**

Displays the previous step.

**❸ Next step button**

Displays the next step.

**❹ Step number**

Displays the total number of steps. The color of the step that is currently shown changes to blue.

# Types of Buttons

Depending on the screen, the following types of buttons appear. Even if they are the same buttons, how they look may change, depending on the situation.

### Standard buttons

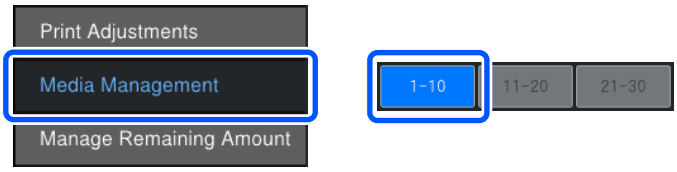
These buttons appear the most.

Example:



In a list of buttons of selectable items, when a button's text and background colors turn blue, it indicates that it is selected.

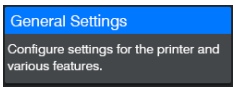
Example:




### Buttons that show descriptions

These are buttons that display an item name on top and an explanation of the item on bottom.

Example:




### Buttons that show setting values

These are buttons for setting items. The current setting value appears at the bottom-right in blue text.

Example:




### Select/change combination button

Pressing the button anywhere except the right end selects an item as normal, but pressing the right end changes the screen to that items settings.

Example:




### Buttons that can be switched on/off

These are buttons for switching settings on and off. Pressing the button switches the setting.

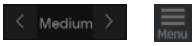
Example:




### Buttons that turn gray (gray-out)

This indicates that the button cannot be used. These buttons turn gray only when they cannot be operated for reasons, such as items not being selectable because of unmet conditions. The conditions for being operable change depending on the button.

Example:

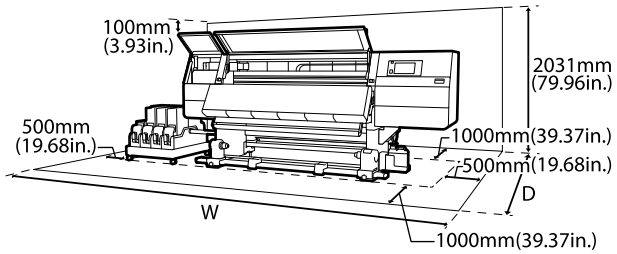


# Notes on Usage and Storage

## Installation space

North American and Latin American users: Contact your dealer for product installation. The product must be installed by an authorized dealer. Damage to the product from unauthorized installation will not be covered by your Epson warranty.

❏ Make sure that you secure the following space, clear of any other objects, so that paper ejection and consumable replacement are not obstructed. See the "Specifications Table" for the external dimensions of the printer.
☞ "Specifications Table" on page 290




W
SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series: 6008 mm (236.54 in.)
SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series: 5607 mm (199.48 in.)
D
Standard roll/reel models: 3303 mm (130.03 in.)
Large capacity roll models: 3839 mm (151.14 in.)
Large capacity reel models: 4494 mm (176.92 in.)

❏ This printer is a precision instrument. Install it in a dust-free environment. Do not install in rooms where cutting, sewing, or similar work is performed.

❏ Place this product on a flat, stable surface that is larger than this product. This product will not operate properly if it is tilted or at an angle.

## Notes when using the printer

Note the following points when using this printer to avoid breakdowns, malfunctions, and print quality decline.

❏ When using the printer, observe the operating temperature and humidity range described in the "Specifications Table".
☞ "Specifications Table" on page 290
Note, however, that the desired results may not be achieved if the temperature and humidity are within the limits for the printer but not within those for the media. Be sure the operating conditions suit the media. For more information, see the documentation supplied with the media. Also, when operating in dry areas, air conditioned environment, or under direct sunlight, maintain the appropriate humidity.

❏ Avoid using the printer in locations with heat sources or that are exposed to direct draughts from ventilators or air conditioners. The print head nozzles could dry out and clog.

❏ Do not bend or tug the waste ink tube. Ink could spill inside or around the printer.

❏ Maintenance such as cleaning and replacement must be performed according to usage frequency or at recommended intervals. Failure to perform regular maintenance could result in loss of print quality. In the absence of the appropriate maintenance, continued use could damage the print head.
☞ "Cleaning" on page 150

❏ The print head may not be capped (the print head may not return to the left side) if the printer is turned off when the media is jammed or an error has occurred. Capping is a function for automatically covering the print head with a cap (lid) to prevent the print head from drying out. In this case, turn on the power and wait a while until capping is performed automatically.

❏ When the power is on, do not remove the power plug or cut the power at the breaker. The print head may not be capped properly. In this case, turn on the power and wait a while until capping is performed automatically.

❏ When **Maintenance Cleaning** is **On**, the print head is automatically cleaned at a fixed interval after printing to keep the nozzles from clogging. Be sure that the Waste Ink Bottle is placed whenever the printer is on.

❏ As well as being expended during printing, ink is used during head cleaning and other maintenance required to keep the print head in working order.

- ❏ To ensure the colors you want to print, maintain a constant room temperature of 18 to 28 ˚C (64.4 to 82.4 ˚F).
- ❏ Do not put your hand inside this product or touch the printer head during printing.
- ❏ Do not put your hand inside this product or touch the white flat cable during printing.

## Notes when not using the printer

If you are not using it, note the following points when storing the printer. If it is not stored correctly, you may not be able to print properly the next time it is used.

- ❏ A service engineer must do pre- and post-maintenance when the printer is not used for over 6 weeks. Depending on your region, pre- and post-maintenance may require a fee.
  During pre-maintenance, the ink in the ink tubes is removed, and the inside of the tubes is washed using the cleaning fluid in the cleaning cartridge, to prepare for long-term storage. When restarting use of the printer, recharge the printer with ink. Moreover, depending on the environment and length of time stored, repairs may be required during post-maintenance even if pre-maintenance is done. If repairs are necessary, they may require a fee depending on your region.
  Contact your dealer or Epson Support.
- ❏ If you have not used the printer for a long time, check the print heads for clogging before you start printing. Clean the heads if the print heads are clogged.
  ☞ "Checking for clogged nozzles" on page 185
- ❏ The pressure rollers may crease media left in the printer. The media may also become wavy or curled, causing jams or resulting in the media coming into contact with the print head. Remove the media before putting the printer in storage.
- ❏ Store the printer after confirming that the print head has been capped (the print head is positioned at the far left). If the print head is left uncapped for a long time, the print quality may decline.

> ***Note:***
> *If the print head is not capped, turn the printer on, and then turn it off.*

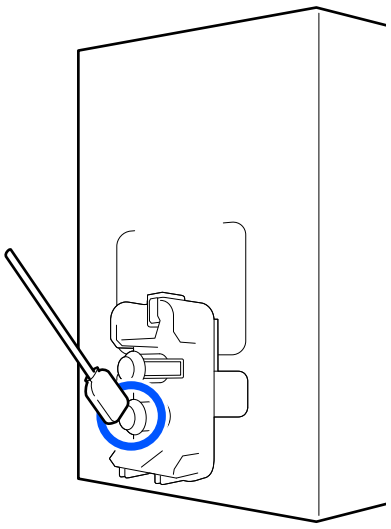
- ❏ Close all covers before placing the printer in storage. If you are not using the printer for a long time, put an anti-static cloth or cover on the printer to prevent dust. The print head nozzles are very small, and they can become clogged easily if fine dust gets on the print head, and you may not be able to print properly.
- ❏ When storing the printer, be sure that it is level: do not store it on an angle, on end, or upside down.

## Notes on handling ink cartridges

Note the following points when handling ink cartridges to maintain good print quality.

- ❏ Extra ink is required to fully charge the print head nozzles the first time the printer is used; replacement cartridges will be needed earlier than usual.
- ❏ Store ink cartridges at room temperature in a location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.
- ❏ To ensure print quality, use all the ink in the cartridge before the earlier of the following dates:
  - ❏ The expiry date shown on the ink cartridge packaging
  - ❏ Six months after opening the package of ink cartridge
- ❏ If you move ink cartridges from a cold place to a warm place, leave them at room temperature for more than 18 hours before using them so the temperature of the ink can reach room temperature.
- ❏ Do not touch the ink cartridge IC chip. You may not be able to print properly.

- ❏ Do not leave the printer without ink cartridges installed. The ink in the printer will dry out and the printer will not function as expected. Leave ink cartridges installed even when the printer is not in use.
- ❏ Because the green IC chip contains the cartridge's own information such as the remaining ink level, you can still reinstall and use the ink cartridge after removing it from the printer.
- ❏ Use a cleaning stick from the supplied Cleaning Kit to absorb all the ink on the ink supply ports of cartridges that have been removed from the printer before all the ink is used. Dried ink on the supply port may cause ink leaks when the cartridge is reinserted and used.
  Also, replace the cleaning sticks with a new one for each color.



- ❏ Store the cartridges that have been removed so as to keep the ink supply ports free of dust. The ink supply port has a valve in it so it does not need to be capped.
- ❏ Removed ink cartridges may have ink around the ink supply port, so be careful not to get any ink on the surrounding area when removing the cartridges.
- ❏ To maintain the quality of the print head, this printer stops printing before ink cartridges are completely expended.
- ❏ Although the ink cartridges may contain recycled materials, this does not effect printer function or performance.
- ❏ Do not dismantle or remodel ink cartridges. You may not be able to print properly.
- ❏ Do not drop or knock it against hard objects; otherwise, the ink may leak from the cartridge.
- ❏ Ink cartridges installed in the printer must be removed and thoroughly shaken once every week for HDK, and once every three weeks for other colors.
  Shaking ink cartridges “Periodic shaking of ink cartridges” on page 181

# Handling media

Note the following when handling or storing media. Media that are in poor condition will not produce good quality prints.

Be sure to read the documentation provided with each type of media.

## Notes on Handling

- ❏ Do not fold the media or damage the printable surface.
- ❏ Do not touch the printable surface. Moisture and oils from your hands can affect print quality.
- ❏ When handling media, hold it by both edges. We recommend wearing cotton gloves.
- ❏ Keep the media dry.
- ❏ Packaging materials can be used to store media and should not be thrown away.
- ❏ Avoid locations that are subject to direct sunlight, excessive heat, or humidity.
- ❏ When not in use, media should be removed from the printer, rewound, and inserted in its original packaging for storage. Leaving media in the printer for extended periods may cause it to deteriorate.

## Handling Media After Printing

To maintain long lasting, high quality print results, note the following points.

- ❏ Do not rub or scratch the printed surface. If they are rubbed or scratched, the ink may peel off.
- ❏ Do not touch the printed surface, as this may remove the ink.
- ❏ Make sure printouts are completely dry before folding or stacking, If the printouts are stacked or taken up without being dried sufficiently, the print surface may be damaged.
- ❏ Avoid direct sunlight.
- ❏ To prevent discoloration, display and store prints as instructed in the documentation supplied with the media.

# Introducing the Supplied Software

### North America

An Epson Edge Print CD is included with this printer. Epson Edge Print is a software RIP that can be effortlessly used with easy-to-understand operations. See the online help for details about functions.

To view and download additional software, visit:

SC-F20070:

❏ support.epson.com/f20070

SC-F11070H:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f11070h (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f11070h (Canada)

SC-F11070:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f11070 (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f11070 (Canada)

SC-F10070H:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f10070h (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f10070h (Canada)

SC-F10070:

❏ www.epson.com/support/f10070 (U.S.)

❏ www.epson.ca/support/f10070 (Canada)

### Latin America

An Epson Edge Print CD is included with this printer. Epson Edge Print is a software RIP that can be effortlessly used with easy-to-understand operations. See the online help for details about functions.

To view and download additional software, visit:

SC-F20070:

❏ support.epson.com/f20070

SC-F11070H:

- www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070h (Caribbean)
- www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070h (Brazil)
- www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070h (other regions)

SC-F11070:

- www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070 (Caribbean)
- www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070 (Brazil)
- www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070 (other regions)

SC-F10070H:

- www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070h (Caribbean)
- www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070h (Brazil)
- www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070h (other regions)

SC-F10070:

- www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070 (Caribbean)
- www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070 (Brazil)
- www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070 (other regions)

### Other Regions

The following 2 types of CDs are included with this printer.

- Software disc (not included with some models)
  See the following section for descriptions of the software that has been supplied.
- Epson Edge Print disc
  Epson Edge Print is a software RIP that can be effortlessly used with easy-to-understand operations.
  See the *Start-Up Guide* (booklet) for how to install the software.
  See the online help for details about functions.

The following applications are available for Windows on the software disc. If your model does not include a software disc or you are using a Windows PC without a disc drive, you can install the software from https://epson.sn. If you are using a Mac, you can install Epson Edge Dashboard from Epson's website. Install as required.

For information about these applications, see the *Network Guide* (Online Manual) or the on-line help for the application in question.

> ***Note:***
> *Printer drivers are not provided. A software RIP is required for printing. The Epson Software RIP, "Epson Edge Print", is included with this printer on a separate CD.*
>
> *The Epson website provides plug-ins for the printer.*

| Software Name | Summary |
|---|---|
| Epson Edge Dashboard | When you install Epson Edge Print, it is installed with it.<br>❏ You can easily acquire the following information provided by Epson on the Internet.<br>❏ Print settings (EMX) files*<br>❏ Update information for the printer firmware (you can update the firmware easily from Epson Edge Dashboard)<br>❏ Update information (when update information is available, start EPSON Software Updater to perform the update) for software and manuals installed from the supplied software disc and setup navigator.<br>❏ Information from Epson<br>❏ With Epson Edge Dashboard installed, you can monitor the status of the printer connected to a computer over a network or USB connection.<br>❏ You can easily make and change media settings from a computer and write to the printer.<br>☞ "Launching the application" on page 47<br>☞ "Exiting procedure" on page 55 |
| EPSON Software Updater | (Windows only)<br>The software checks if new software or update information is available on the Internet and installs it if it is available. You can also update the manuals, Epson Edge Dashboard, and Epson Edge Print for this printer. |
| Epson communications drivers | (Windows only)<br>Epson communications drivers are required when using Epson Edge Dashboard, Epson Edge Print, and when connecting a computer to the printer by USB. Make sure these are installed. |
| Install Navi | (Windows only)<br>This is the installer. During installation, you can easily use a wizard to set the address settings for connecting to a network. |
| EpsonNet Config SE | (Windows only)<br>With this software, you can configure various network settings for the printer from your computer. This is useful as it allows you to enter addresses and names using the keyboard. |
| LFP Accounting Tool | (Windows only)<br>Compatible with SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series only.<br>The LFP Accounting Tool is not installed automatically. Download it from Epson's website and install it, if necessary.<br>This is software that can calculate costs for printed material printed by this printer (cost of paper, cost of ink, etc.) and can display, total, and output information (in CSV format) about print jobs. It is useful for cost calculations when you are selling printed material and for understanding the amount of paper and ink being used. |
| Web Config | This software comes preinstalled in the printer. Start and use it from a Web browser via the network.<br>Make network security settings from Web Config. This software also has an email notification function for notifying you about printer errors and other problems. |

*The provided files differ according to the country and region in which you live.

# Using Epson Edge Dashboard

## Launching the application

Epson Edge Dashboard is a web application.

1 You can launch the application using the following methods.

**Windows**

Click the **Epson Edge Dashboard** icon on the desktop toolbar, and select **Show Epson Edge Dashboard**.



**Mac**

Click the **Epson Edge Dashboard** icon displayed on the menu bar of the desktop, and select **Show Epson Edge Dashboard**.



**Linux**

Click **Applications** - **Other** - **Epson Edge Dashboard**.

2 Epson Edge Dashboard starts.

For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.

## Registering the printer

The Epson Edge Dashboard can monitor, manage, and copy media settings to registered printers.

On Windows computers, printers are registered automatically. This allows you to monitor and manage them immediately after launching the Epson Edge Dashboard. If your printer is not automatically registered, check that you are using it under the following conditions.

- ❏ A communication driver provided with the printer has been installed on a computer
- ❏ The computer and printer are connected
- ❏ The printer is on standby

Printers are not automatically registered to Mac or Linux machines. Register your printer manually from the Printer Registration screen. This screen is displayed upon launching the Epson Edge Dashboard for the first time. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.

# Checking and managing the printer's status

Follow the next steps on the Printer Operation screen to check and manage the printer's status.

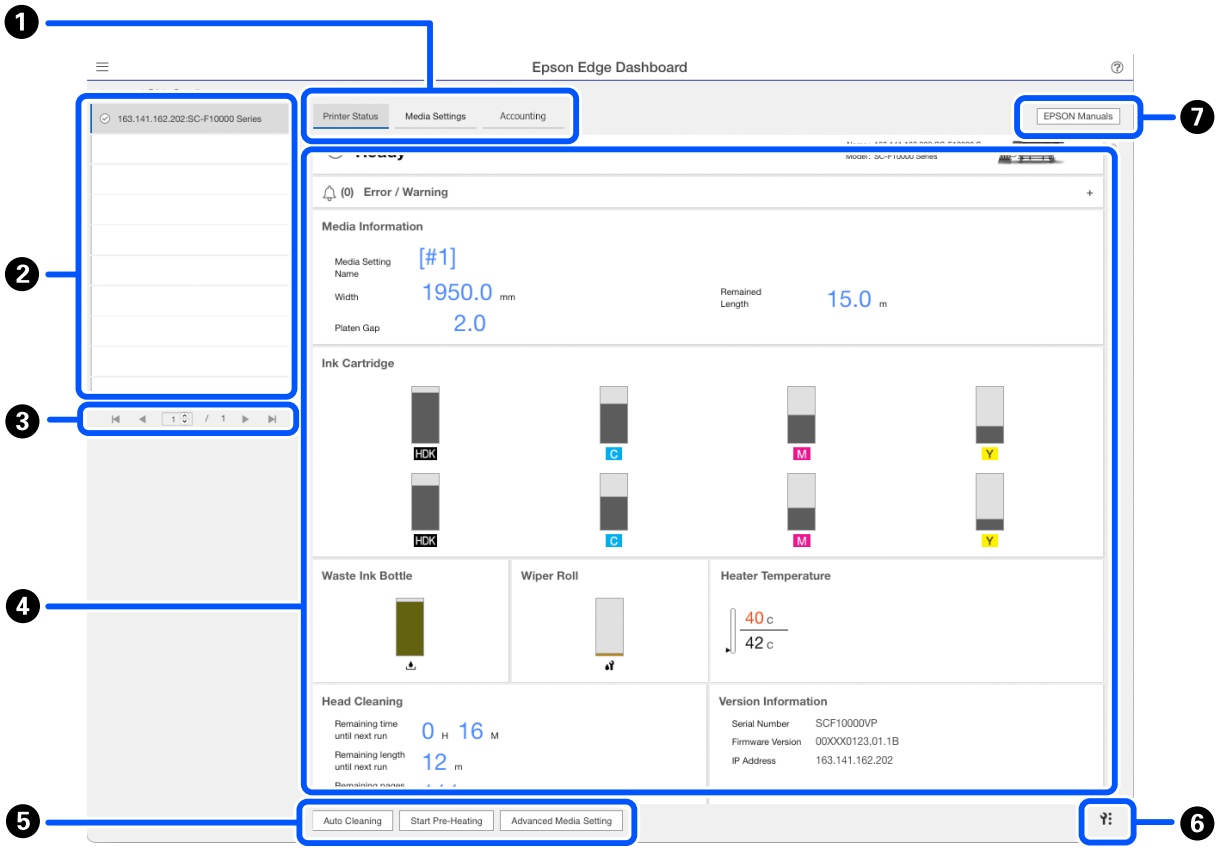
The Printer Operation screen provides a view of the same status information as the printer's control panel screen. It also allows you to perform standard maintenance operations.

1 Select **Printer Operation** from the menu. Alternatively, on the Home screen, click the area surrounding the text describing the status of the relevant printer.

The Printer Operation screen is displayed.

2 Make sure that the **Printer Status** tab is selected.

## Screen Layout




| | Name | Functions |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Tabs for Switching Views | Allows you to switch between Printer Status and Media Settings views. Click tab to switch views. Upon initial screen display, the Printer Status view is shown.<br>"Downloading and copying media settings for EMX files" on page 50<br>The **Accounting** tab is displayed if the LFP Accounting Tool is installed.<br>Click the **Accounting** tab to display the **Accounting Tool** button. Click the button to start the LFP Accounting Tool, which allows you to calculate costs for printed material, and so on.<br>"Using LFP Accounting Tool (Windows Only)" on page 56 |

| | Name | Functions |
|---|---|---|
| ❷ | List of registered printers | Register the printer to view it on this list.<br>❏ Select the printer to view its status in the printer status display area (❹).<br>❏ Click ◀ on the upper right corner of the list to collapse the list. Click ▶ to expand the list. |
| ❸ | Page controls | If the list of registered printers covers multiple pages, you can specify a page number to go to, and go to the first page, previous page, next page, or last page by clicking the icons. |
| ❹ | Printer status display area | Select the printer to view the following information on the list of registered printers (❷).<br>❏ Printer's current status<br>❏ Errors/Warnings<br>Notifies you of errors and warnings that are occurring with the printer. Click the item you want to check to display more details.<br>Click + to expand the display area. Click - to collapse the display area.<br>❏ Status<br>The status is displayed here, described below, and is the same as that displayed on the printer's control panel screen.<br>❏ Paper information<br>Feed adjustment information for media being printed is not displayed.<br>❏ Information on ink and consumables<br>❏ Information on heaters<br>❏ Notice on when to clean the print head<br>❏ Version Information |
| ❺ | Function buttons | Allow you to perform standard maintenance operations.<br>❏ Click each button to be able to run the function according to the same procedure as when using the printer's control panel.<br>❏ If the printer is not available for maintenance operations, this button is grayed out. You can perform maintenance when the button is available.<br>❏ If data is not printed according to its actual length, you can click **Advanced Media Setting** to perform detailed feed adjustments. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard. |
| ❻ | Maintenance menu button | Click to display the menu.<br>The following items are available on the menu.<br>❏ **Firmware Update**[*1, *2]<br>Updates printer firmware to the latest version. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.<br>❏ **Acquire Status Sheet Information**<br>Acquires information from the printer and stores it as a file on the computer. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.<br>❏ **Export Printer Status Data**[*1]<br>Do this only when directed by the person in charge of Epson's support. |
| ❼ | EPSON Manuals Button | Click to view your printer's "Online Manual". |

*1 This button is not displayed when accessing and using Epson Edge Dashboard on another computer on the network. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.

*2 This button is not displayed when using this software on a Linux machine.

# Downloading and copying media settings for EMX files

See the following for more information about EMX files.

“Registering Media Settings to the Printer” on page 68

Download an EMX file and copy the media setting values in the downloaded EMX file to the printer from the Media Settings screen of Printer Operation on the Epson Edge Dashboard.

Use the following procedure to view the Media Settings screen of Printer Operation.

1 Select **Printer Operation** from the menu. Alternatively, on the Home screen, click the area surrounding the text describing the status of the relevant printer.

The Printer Operation screen is displayed.

2 Click the **Media Settings** tab.

The Media Settings screen of Printer Operation is displayed.

## Screen Layout




| | Name | Functions |
|---|---|---|
| ❶ | Source | Select the source used to add or change the media settings for the printer selected in the list of registered printers. |
| ❷ | Source media settings list | Displays a list of the media settings loaded in ❶. |
| ❸ | Parameters list (Source) | Displays the settings for the media settings clicked in ❷. |
| ❹ | **Apply** Button | Click to update media settings for the target printer using the content of the current ❻ list. |

| | Name | Functions |
|---|---|---|
| ❺ | Parameters list (Target) | Displays the settings for the media settings clicked in ❻. |
| ❻ | Target media settings list | Displays the media settings registered to the printer selected in the list of registered printers.<br>**Calibration** field indicates the status of color calibration of media settings with the following icons.<br>: includes color calibration information.<br>: does not include color calibration information.<br>No icon: Media settings you registered for the printer.<br>Click the icon to display the screen where you can see the list of color calibration history. You can click **EMX File Export** within the screen to save an EMX file that contains information required for color calibration. |
| ❼ | Clear Button | Click to return any changes you made to media settings selected from the list in ❻ to their previous state. However, you cannot reset the changed items after you click the **Apply** button. |
| ❽ | Write to File Button *1 | Click to collect the media settings displayed in the current list and save them to a single file on your computer. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard. |
| ❾ | Check registered media settings button | Click to save the list of information for all the media settings currently registered to the printer selected in the list of registered printers. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard. |
| ❿ | Target media settings list update button | Click to reflect the settings for the media currently registered to the printer in the target media settings list. |
| ⓫ | Target | Displays the name of the printer selected in the list of registered printers. |

*1 This button is not displayed when accessing and using this software from another computer on the network. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.

## Copy operation flow

To copy media settings to the printer, you can copy the media settings for another printer instead of copying the media settings contained in a downloaded EMX file.

You can copy the media settings for another printer to share the same settings between multiple printers. For details on how to copy the media settings of other printers, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.

The following explains the workflow for copying settings from a downloaded EMX file.

**Downloading an EMX file**

"Downloading an EMX file" on page 52

↓

**Copy the media settings to the printer**

"Copying media settings to the printer " on page 53

↓

**Do print adjustments on the printer**

To optimize the media setting values for your printer's status, make sure to do print adjustments after copying the file.

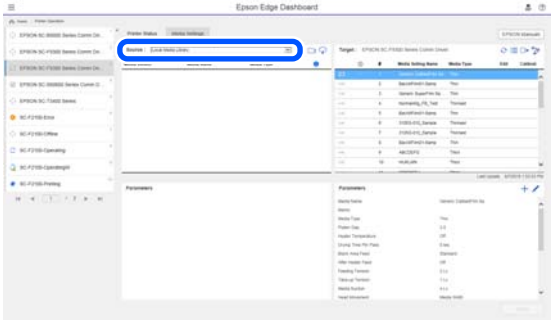
"Print Adjustments" on page 140

## Copying the Media Settings in the EMX File to the Printer

### *Downloading an EMX file*

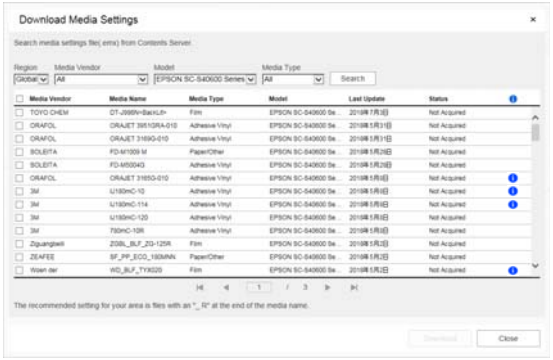
You can download only the EMX files corresponding to the printers you registered on the Epson Edge Dashboard. In addition, regardless of the printers selected in the list of registered printers, you can download all the files corresponding to the registered printers.

1 Click ▼ in the source, and select **Local Media Library**.



2 Click ☁↓ .

A list of EMX files for each commercially available media is displayed in the following download screen.




At first, the EMX file corresponding to the printer selected in the list of registered printers is displayed. If you want to view the file corresponding to a different printer, select the desired printer in **Model** and click **Search**.

You can narrow the content of the list to only the necessary EMX files by selecting region, media vendor, media type, and then clicking **Search**.

3 Select the EMX files to download.

Select EMX files by checking the checkbox on the left of each file. Check the checkbox on the left of **Media Vendor** to select all EMX files displayed on the current page.

You cannot download EMX files with **Acquisition Complete** as their **Status**, for they have already been downloaded.

EMX files with **Update Available** as their **Status** have been updated since they were acquired. Downloading such EMX files will overwrite the Acquisition Complete files.

is displayed for EMX files with information. Click to display the information.

> **Important:**
> *If media setting values already registered to the printer are overwritten by an EMX file for the same media displayed with **Update Available**, the print adjustment setting values are initialized. If media settings are overwritten, click the **Apply** button to register the media settings to the printer, and then do print adjustments.*

4 Click **Download**.

The EMX files are saved.
EMX files are downloaded one at a time.
When selecting multiple EMX files, wait until all files are of **Acquisition Complete** status.

Click **Cancel** to cancel EMX file download.
EMX files that are of **Acquisition Complete** status at the time of cancellation are stored.

> ***Note:***
> *You cannot change where EMX files are stored. To copy downloaded EMX files to other computers, go to the Preferences screen and select **Copy Folder Path** to copy the path. For details, see the help for Epson Edge Dashboard.*

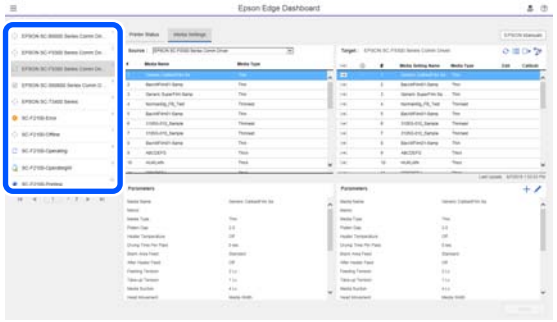
5 Click **Close** to close the Download screen.

Media settings in the EMX files are loaded and displayed to the source media settings list on the Media Settings screen.

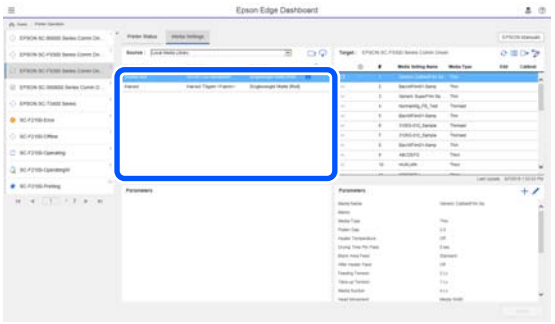
Only the media settings available to the model selected on the list of registered printers are displayed in the source media settings list. To view the loaded media settings, select the printer you selected in Step 2 on the list of registered printers.

## *Copying media settings to the printer*

1 Select the printer on the list of registered printers.



2 From the source media settings list, select the media settings that you want to add to or change on the printer.



If printers of multiple different models are registered to this software, only the media settings available to the printer you selected in Step 1 will be displayed. Media Names are displayed in English. You can confirm the display name in the download screen by putting the mouse pointer over the English name.

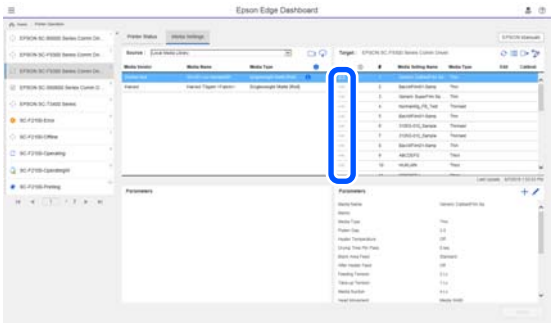
You cannot select multiple sources simultaneously. Copy them one at a time.

3 Check the target media settings list to see which media settings are registered to the printer.

You can see the name of the settings registered to the printer in **Media Setting Name** field.

✓ indicates the currently specified media settings for printing in the printer.

4 Click the → of the target media setting number.



The media settings you selected in the source media settings list are copied.

✎ indicates media settings copied from the source media settings list or were changed on the Edit screen. When ✎ is displayed, ↻ is grayed out and the list cannot be updated until you click the **Apply** button.

You can check the Media Name on the download screen by referring to Media Name displayed in **Memo** of the parameters list (target).

5 Click the **Apply** button.

Media settings are copied to the printer.

Before clicking the **Apply** button, check the list of registered printers and make sure that ✓ is displayed as the status icon. If the icon is anything except for ✓, you cannot update the printer's media settings.

If the printer is connected via USB, make sure it is not printing before you click **Apply**.

### *Loading EMX files stored to another computer into the source media settings list*

By clicking 📁, you can load EMX files to your source media settings list, no matter where they have been copied. When you are using Epson Edge Dashboard on a computer that cannot download EMX files, you can load EMX files that were downloaded on a different computer.

Click the icon to display the file selection screen, select the EMX files you want to use, and load them.

A maximum of 300 EMX files can be loaded at a time. The media settings of the files that are loaded are added to the source media settings list.

Once the files are loaded, going forward, you can simply select **Local Media Library** to see them listed.

### *Editing the source media settings list*

Click 🗑 to delete the EMX files that have been downloaded. In the source media settings list, select the EMX files that you no longer need or that you downloaded by accident, and then click 🗑.

## Editing media settings

You can make changes to media settings selected on the target media settings list. You can also add new settings. The steps to do this are described below.

1 On the target media settings list, select the media settings you want to edit. Click ✎ (to change settings) or + (to create a new setting).

The Edit Parameters screen is displayed.

2 Change the settings.




The setting items vary according to the model being used.

You can enter a note in **Memo** to describe the content of the media settings. For media settings copied from EMX files, the media name is entered in the field.

You can change a setting's **Media Type** only when creating a new setting. When you newly create a media setting, it is populated with reference values for the media type you selected. These values are determined based on the standard specifications for this media type. Do edits as needed for the optimum setting values of your media.

3 When you have finished editing, click **OK**.

The changes are applied, and the previous screen is displayed.

To discard the changes and return to the previous page, click the **Cancel** button.

## Exiting procedure

Close the Web browser.

# Using Epson Edge Print (Windows Only)

## Launching the Application

You can launch the application using one of the following methods.

- ❏ Double-click the shortcut icon created on the desktop.
- ❏ Click the Windows Start button, and then **All Programs** - **Epson Software** - **Epson Edge Print**.

For more information, see the Epson Edge Print help.

## Acquiring and Registering EMX Files

To print properly on your media, you need to register media settings and print information appropriate for the media you are using to both the printer and Epson Edge Print.

By using print settings files (EMX files) provided by Epson, you can easily achieve optimal print quality for commercially available media (the provided files differ according to the country and region in which you live.).
See the following for more information about EMX files.
☞ "Registering Media Settings to the Printer" on page 68

Epson Edge Print allows you to easily perform the following tasks using a wizard.

- ❏ Download EMX files
- ❏ Automatically register print information in Epson Edge Print
- ❏ Register media settings to a specified registered media number on the printer

For details on how to acquire and register EMX files, see the Epson Edge Print help.

## Exiting Procedure

Select **Done** from **File** at the top left of the screen.

# Using LFP Accounting Tool (Windows Only)

## Basic Settings

You must perform the basic settings in advance for the LFP Accounting Tool to obtain job information from the printer for the calculation of costs and so on. Perform setting in the following order. Follow the steps described in the following section to perform the setting.

**1. Select the printer**

↓

**2. Set the unit prices**

↓

**3. Set the display conditions for job information**

↓

**4. Set the units you want to summarize**

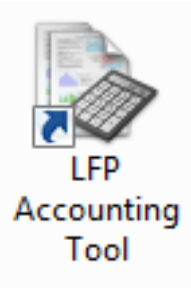
Before doing the settings, check if the computer with the LFP Accounting Tool is able to print from the printer.
For details of each setting screen, see the LFP Accounting Tool help.

### Select the printer

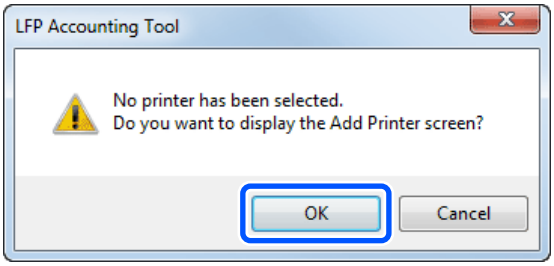
Select the printer for which you want to summarize cost calculations and job information.

This section explains how to select the printer straight after installing the LFP Accounting Tool.

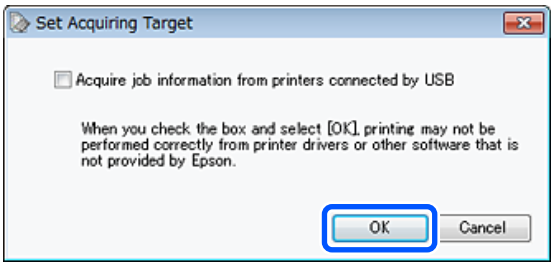
1 Double-click the LFP Accounting Tool shortcut icon on the desktop.




2 When the following message is displayed, click **OK**.

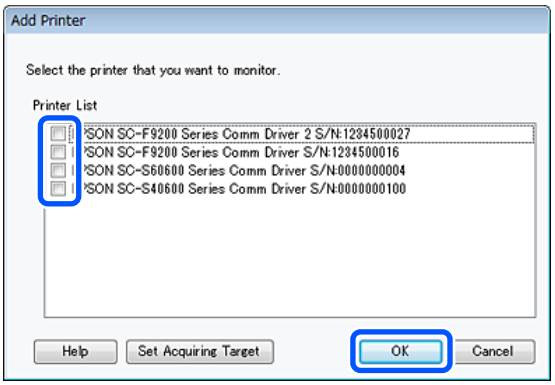



3 When the following message is displayed, check the content, decide what action to take, and then click **OK**.




4 Select the printer from the **Add Printer** screen, and then click **OK**.

If this software cannot communicate with the printer, it is not displayed in the list. When you want to summarize cost calculations and job information for multiple printers, select the target printers. We recommend setting up to four printers for monitoring.

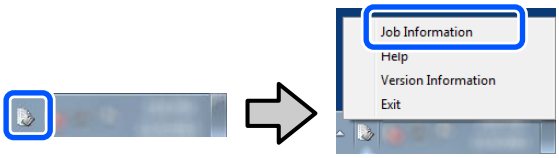



When you click **OK**, this software starts acquiring job information from the selected printers.

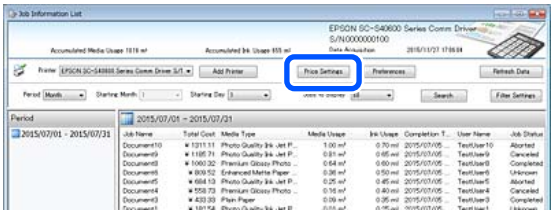
## Set the unit prices

Set the unit prices for the paper and ink being used by the printer.

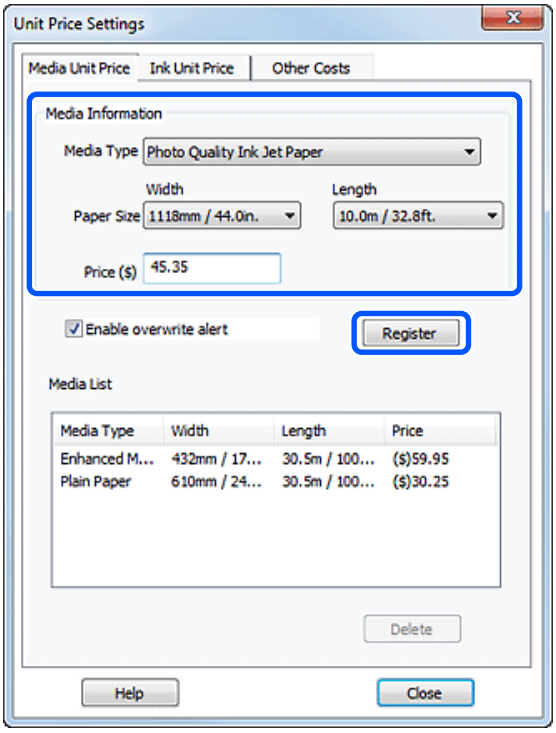
1 If **Job Information List** is not displayed, right-click the LFP Accounting Tool icon on the task tray, and then click **Job Information**.




2 Click **Price Settings**.

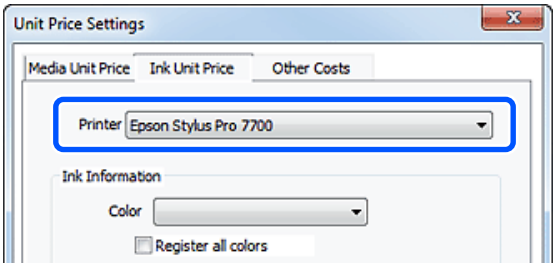


3 Click the **Media Unit Price** tab, make settings for all of the **Media Information** items, and then click **Register**.

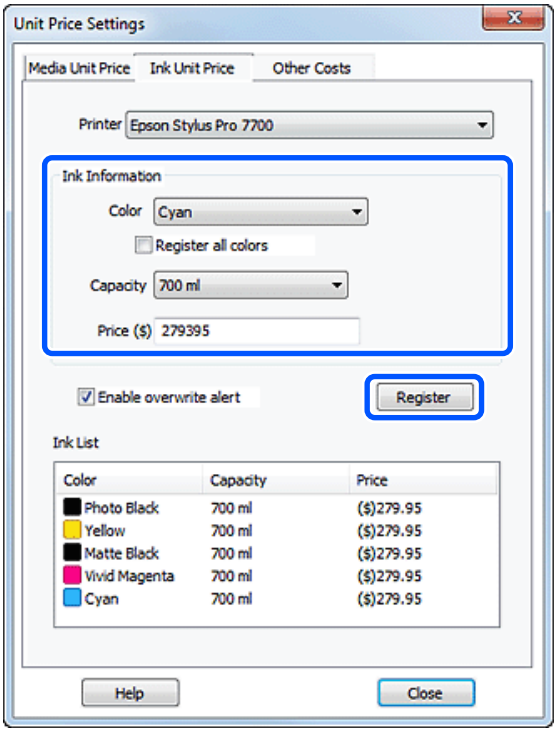



Registered information is displayed in **Media List**.

4 Click the **Ink Unit Price** tab, and then select the printer.

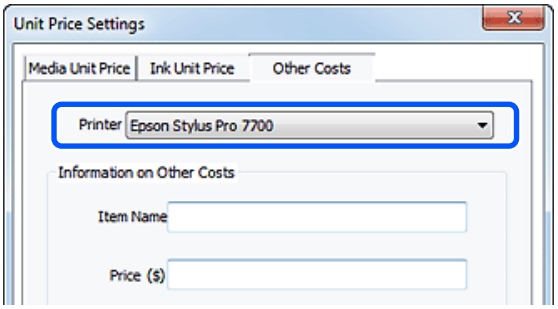



5 Make settings for all of the **Ink Information** items, and then click **Register**.



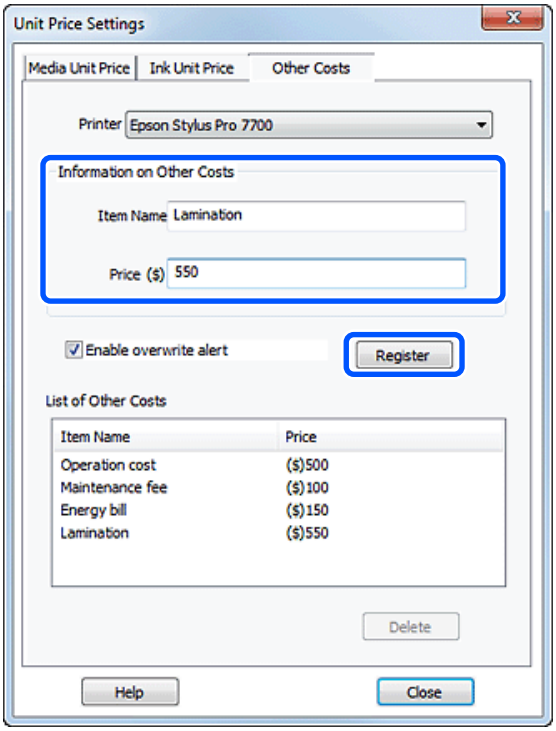

Registered information is displayed in **Ink List**. Go to Step 8 if you do not need to make other cost settings such as administration costs or utility costs.

6 Click the **Other Costs** tab, and then select the printer for which you want to set other costs.



7 Make settings for all of the **Information on Other Costs** items, and then click **Register**.

You can register up to five additional costs for each job information, such as administration costs, utility costs, or lamination costs.



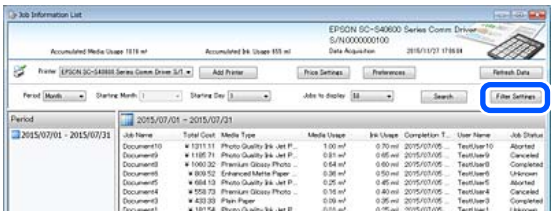

Registered information is displayed in **List of Other Costs**.

8 When you have finished setting each unit price, click **Close**.

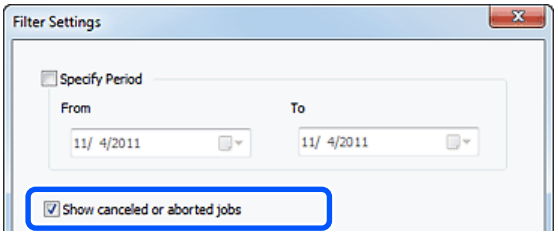
## Set the display conditions for job information

Hide jobs that should be skipped when summarizing job information, such as canceled jobs, test prints, and jobs by specific users.

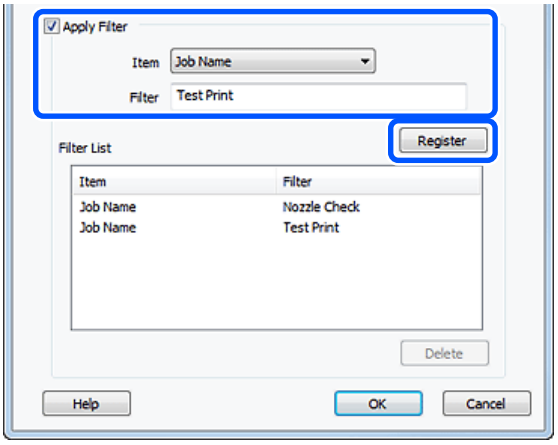
1 Click **Filter Settings** on the **Job Information List** screen.



2 To hide canceled jobs, clear **Show canceled or aborted jobs**.




3 To hide test prints or jobs by specific users, select **Apply Filter**, make settings for the items you want to hide, and then click **Register**.



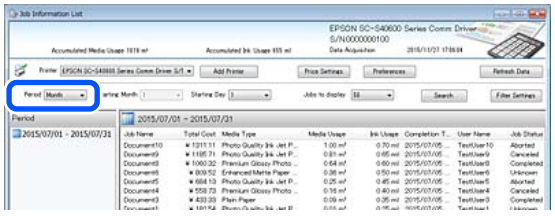

Registered information is displayed in **Filter List**.

4 When you have finished setting display conditions, click **OK**.

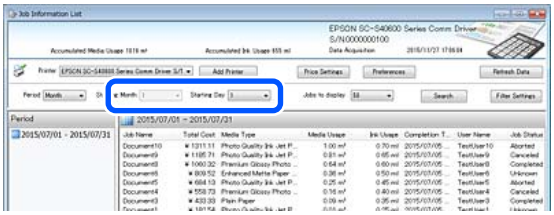
## Set the units you want to summarize

Set the start date and units (month, year, and so on) for the jobs you want to summarize.

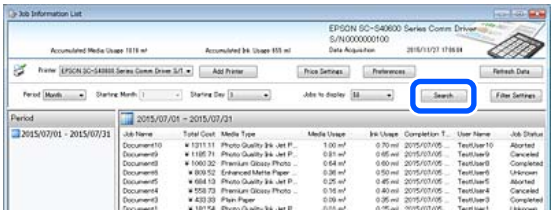
1 You can select Year, Half Year, Quarter, or Month as the unit (period) for the jobs you want to summarize.



2 Select **Starting Month** or **Starting Day** on the **Job Information List** screen.



3 Click **Search** to display jobs that satisfy the search conditions.



Click **Export to CSV** to export the summarized jobs to a CSV file. For details, see the LFP Accounting Tool help.

> ***Note:***
> *The LFP Accounting Tool automatically communicates with the printer every five minutes and acquires job information. You can also click* ***Refresh Data*** *to acquire the latest job information collected in the printer. If the printer has not yet printed any material, you cannot acquire data as there is no job information.*

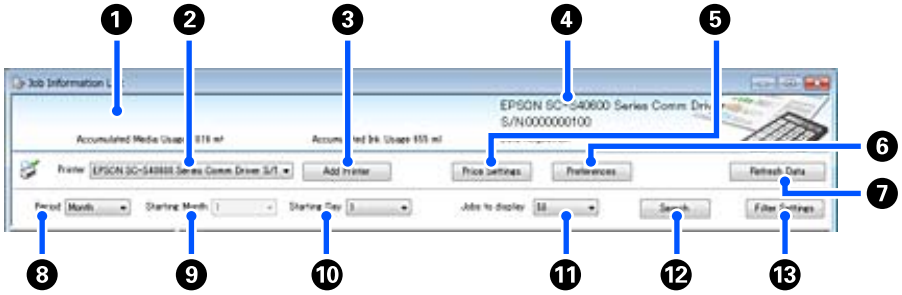
This completes doing settings.
To continue acquiring job information, make sure the LFP Accounting Tool is running whenever the printer is printing.

# Screen Layout

The job information that is automatically acquired from the printer and collected in the computer is displayed on the Job Information List screen.
You can display the screen using one of the following methods.

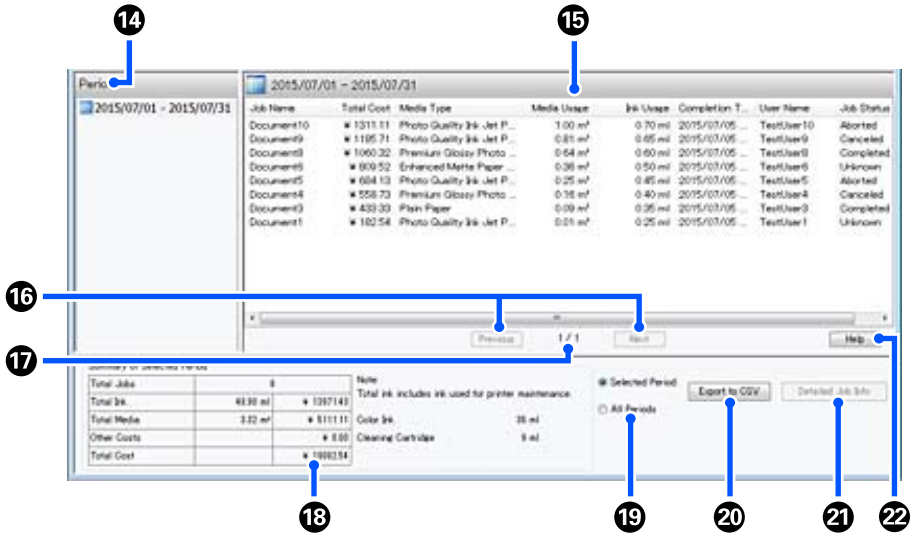
- ❏ Double-click this software's icon on the task tray
- ❏ Right-click this software's icon on the task tray, and then click **Job Information**
- ❏ In Epson Edge Dashboard, click the **LFP Accounting Tool** on the Accounting tab of the Printer Operation screen

For details of other screens, see the LFP Accounting Tool help.




| Item | | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| ❶ | Message display area | Displays a message if the job information search results contain a job for which cost cannot be calculated, or a job for which the unit price has not been set. |
| ❷ | Printer | Select the printer for which you want to display job information.<br>Displays the list of printers selected on the **Add Printer** screen. |
| ❸ | **Add Printer** button | Opens the **Add Printer** screen. |
| ❹ | Selected printer information/Data Acquisition display area | Displays the product name and serial number for the selected printer, as well as the date when the latest job information was acquired from the selected printer. At the bottom of the message display area, Accumulated Ink Usage and Accumulated Media Usage are also displayed depending on the printer model.<br>When this software is running and is able to communicate with the selected printer, it acquires job information every five minutes. |
| ❺ | **Price Settings** button | Opens the **Unit Price Settings** screen. |
| ❻ | **Preferences** button | Opens the **Preferences** screen. |
| ❼ | **Refresh Data** button | Click to instantly acquire the latest job information for the selected printer(s). |
| ❽ | Period | Select the time period for the jobs you want to summarize.<br>You can select Year, Half Year, Quarter, or Month. The default is "---". While nothing is displayed in **Period** when the default value is selected, all of the job information for the selected printer is displayed and summarized in list view.<br>The date for each selected unit is displayed in Period. |
| ❾ | Starting Month | This is available when Year, Half Year, or Quarter is selected from **Period**. Select from 1 to 12 as the month to start summarizing. |
| ❿ | Starting Day | This is available when Year, Half Year, or Quarter is selected from **Period**. Select from 1 to 31 as the day to start summarizing. |

| Item | | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| ⑪ | Jobs to display | Set the maximum number of jobs displayed in list view. You can select from "50", "100", or "200". |
| ⑫ | **Search** button | Displays data that matches the search conditions set on the **Period** or **Filter Settings** screens. |
| ⑬ | **Filter Settings** button | Opens the **Filter Settings** screen. |




| Item | | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| ⑭ | Period | Displays the period set in **Period**, **Starting Month**, or **Starting Day**. |
| ⑮ | List View | Displays a list of the job information found using the search conditions set on the **Period** or **Filter Settings** screens. Acquired job information is displayed in descending order from the latest to the oldest.<br>"???" is displayed in jobs for which the **Media Unit Price** or the **Ink Unit Price** has not been set. If you click **Price Settings** while selecting a job for which "???" is displayed, the **Unit Price Settings** screen opens with the items that need to be set already selected.<br>If more than 10 jobs are sent to the printer while the computer is turned off, this software cannot acquire job information. From the job information that the software could not acquire, only ink consumption is reported in the list with the job name **Lost Job**. **-** is displayed for other information that could not be acquired. Depending on the model being used, you may not be able to acquire ink consumption information, in which case **0ml** is displayed. |
| ⑯ | **Previous**/**Next** buttons | Use these buttons to navigate between pages when job information for the selected period is spread over multiple pages. |
| ⑰ | Current Page | Displays the page number for the current page. |
| ⑱ | Summary of Selected Period | Displays the total value of each item for the job information selected in **Period**. Information displayed vary depending on the acquiring target printer.<br>If a job without a set media unit price or ink unit price is displayed in the list view, "???" is also displayed in the summary. |

| Item | | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| ⑲ | **Selected Period**/**All Periods** | Set the period for the data to be output to a CSV file.<br>When you want to output data selected from **Period** that is displayed in the current list view, set **Selected Period**.<br>You can only select one **Period**.<br>To output all information for the selected printer, set **All Periods** (job information that has been excluded on the **Filter Settings** screen is also output).<br>To output information for the selected printer without the job information items set on the **Filter Settings** screen, set **Period** to "---", and then select **Selected Period**. |
| ⑳ | **Export to CSV** button | Exports job information for either **Selected Period** or **All Periods** to a file. |
| ㉑ | **Detailed Job Info** button | Displays detailed information for the job selected in list view. |
| ㉒ | **Help** button | Displays the Help for this screen. |

# Using EPSON Software Updater

***Note:***
*EPSON Software Updater is not available in all regions.*

**North American users:**

*To check for software updates, visit:*

*SC-F20070:*

❏ *support.epson.com/f20070*

*SC-F11070H:*

❏ *www.epson.com/support/f11070h (U.S.)*

❏ *www.epson.ca/support/f11070h (Canada)*

*SC-F11070:*

❏ *www.epson.com/support/f11070 (U.S.)*

❏ *www.epson.ca/support/f11070 (Canada)*

*SC-F10070H:*

❏ *www.epson.com/support/f10070h (U.S.)*

❏ *www.epson.ca/support/f10070h (Canada)*

*SC-F10070:*

❏ *www.epson.com/support/f10070 (U.S.)*

❏ *www.epson.ca/support/f10070 (Canada)*

***Note:***
*EPSON Software Updater is not available in all regions.*

**Latin American users:**

*To check for software updates, visit:*

*SC-F20070:*

❏ *support.epson.com/f20070*

*SC-F11070H:*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070h (Caribbean)*

❏ *www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070h (Brazil)*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070h (other regions)*

*SC-F11070:*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/support/f11070 (Caribbean)*

❏ *www.epson.com.br/suporte/f11070 (Brazil)*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f11070 (other regions)*

*SC-F10070H:*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070h (Caribbean)*

❏ *www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070h (Brazil)*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070h (other regions)*

*SC-F10070:*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/support/f10070 (Caribbean)*

❏ *www.epson.com.br/suporte/f10070 (Brazil)*

❏ *www.latin.epson.com/soporte/f10070 (other regions)*

## Checking software update availability

1 Check the following status.

❏ The computer is connected to the Internet.

❏ The printer and the computer can communicate.

2 Start EPSON Software Updater.

**Windows 8.1/Windows 8**

Enter the software name in the search charm, and select the icon displayed.

**Except for Windows 8.1/Windows 8**

Click Start > **All Programs** (or **Programs**) > **Epson Software** > **EPSON Software Updater**.

**Mac**

Click **Move** - **Applications** - **Epson Software** - **EPSON Software Updater**.

> ***Note:***
> *In Windows, you can also start by clicking the printer icon on the desktop toolbar and selecting* ***Software Update****.*

3 Update the software and manuals.

Follow the on-screen instructions to continue.

> ***Important:***
> *Do not turn off the computer or printer while updating.*

> ***Note:***
> *Software that is not displayed in the list cannot be updated using EPSON Software Updater. Check for the latest versions of the software from the Epson website.*
>
> *https://www.epson.com*

## Receiving update notifications

1 Start EPSON Software Updater.

2 Click **Auto update settings**.

3 Select an interval for checking for updates on the printer's **Interval to Check** box, and then click **OK**.

# Using Web Config

## Instructions for starting

Launch a browser on a computer connected to the same network as the printer.

1 Check the IP address of the printer.

Press Menu, and press in order **General Settings** - **Network Settings** - **Network Status** - **Wired LAN Status**.

2 Launch a Web browser on a computer connected to the printer via a network.

3 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar of the Web browser and press the **Enter** or **Return** key.

Format:

IPv4: https://IP address of printer/

IPv6: https://[IP address of printer]/

Example:

IPv4: https://192.168.100.201/

IPv6: https://[2001:db8::1000:1]/

## Exiting procedure

Close the Web browser.

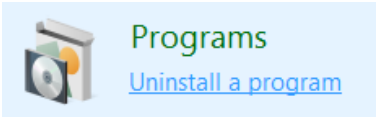
# Uninstalling Software

> ***Important:***
> ❏ *Log in to a "Computer administrator" account (an account with administrative privileges).*
> ❏ *Enter the administrator password when prompted and then proceed with the remainder of the operation.*
> ❏ *Exit any other applications that may be running.*

This section describes how to uninstall Epson communications drivers. For uninstallation of other software, see the software help.

1. Turn off the printer, and unplug the interface cable.

2. Go to the **Control Panel** and click **Uninstall a program** from the **Programs** category.




3. Click on the name of whichever of the Comm Drivers listed below corresponds to the model you are using, and then click on **Uninstall/Change**.

   - ❏ **EPSON SC-F20000 Series Comm Driver Printer Uninstall**
   - ❏ **EPSON SC-F10000H Series FpFy Comm Driver Printer Uninstall**
   - ❏ **EPSON SC-F10000H Series LcLm Comm Driver Printer Uninstall**
   - ❏ **EPSON SC-F10000H Series OrV Comm Driver Printer Uninstall**
   - ❏ **EPSON SC-F10000 Series Comm Driver Printer Uninstall**

4. Select the target printer icon, and then click **OK**.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions to continue.

   When the delete confirmation message appears, click **Yes**.

If you are reinstalling the Epson communications drivers, restart the computer.

# Basic Operations

## Workflow for Optimal Printing

The following conditions must be fulfilled to print optimally on the printer.

- ❏ The media settings values appropriate for the media you are using are registered to the printer, and the print information is registered to the RIP.
- ❏ The media is loaded appropriately on the printer.
- ❏ The print adjustments (print head alignment and media feed adjustment) are executed using the media to be used.
- ❏ The printer is kept in a proper condition.

Follow the steps below to fulfill the conditions.

**When using the EMX file with the new media**

**1. Register media settings.**

Use Epson Edge Print or Epson Edge Dashboard to download the EMX file and register the media settings to the printer.

"Registering Media Settings to the Printer" on page 68

↓

**2. Load the media.**

Load the media you want to use into the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit on the printer.

When loading media, from the screen of the control panel, select a number of a media, whose media settings were registered in advance.

"Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

↓

**3. Execute the Print Adjustments.**

Execute the Print Adjustments to optimize the media settings values to the condition of the machine.

Usually, this is adjusted automatically by executing Automatic Adjustment.

"Print Adjustments" on page 140

↓

**4. Check the condition of the printer.**

Upon starting printing work, inspect the remaining ink level and the condition of the print head nozzle.

"Before Printing" on page 140

↓

**5. Print.**

Start printing from Epson Edge Print.

For details, see the help for Epson Edge Print.

**When using a new media by using general media settings/by using a media type that has already been registered**

**1. Load the media.**

Load the media you want to use into the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit on the printer.

When using a new media, on the screen of the control panel, by selecting a Media Type that is close to the media you are using, you can register the suitable media settings.

"Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

↓

**2. Execute the Print Adjustments. (when using new media)**

Execute the Print Adjustments to optimize the media settings values to the condition of the machine.

Usually, this is adjusted automatically by executing Automatic Adjustment.

"Print Adjustments" on page 140

**3. Check the condition of the printer.**

Upon starting printing work, inspect the remaining ink level and the condition of the print head nozzle.

"Before Printing" on page 140

**4. Print.**

Start printing from Epson Edge Print.

For details, see the help for Epson Edge Print.

# Registering Media Settings to the Printer

Media settings are registered to the printer in one of the following ways.

### Using general media settings that are already registered to the printer

The printer already has 4 types of Media Type that correspond to the paper weight of the media. Select a media type to print with the general media settings that correspond to various paper weights.

When loading media, view the **Media** items shown in the operation panel screen to select a Media Type that corresponds to the paper weight of the media you are loading.

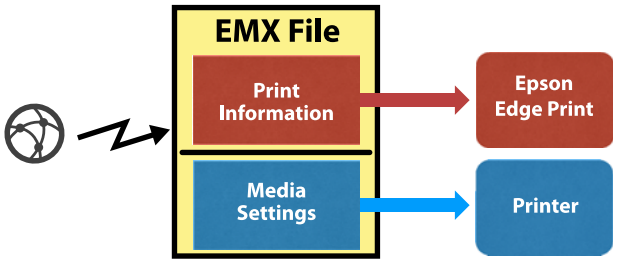
"Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

### Downloading an EMX file to register settings

An EMX file supplied by Epson is a single print settings file containing the following information necessary to print properly on commercially available media (the provided files differ according to the country and region in which you live).

- Print Information: Settings for ICC profiles that are used in RIP, the number of passes, the resolution, and so on
- Media Settings: Registered setting values, such as a platen gap and feeding tension suitable for the media being used, that are registered to the printer for media management




To use Epson Edge Print, the software RIP provided with the printer, download an EMX file from Epson Edge Print.

"Using Epson Edge Print (Windows Only)" on page 56

To use commercially available software RIP, download an EMX file by using Epson Edge Dashboard.

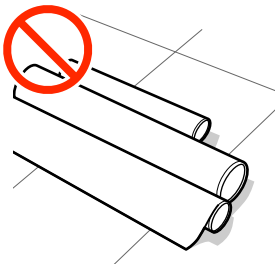
"Using Epson Edge Dashboard" on page 47

# Precautions When Handling Media

If the following points are not observed when handling media, small amounts of dust and lint may stick to the media surface and cause ink drops in the print results or cause the nozzles to clog.

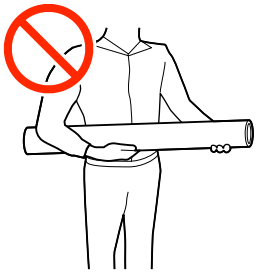
### Do not place exposed media directly on the floor.

Media should be rewound and inserted in its original packaging for storage.



**Do not carry media with the media surface pressed against clothing.**

Handle media in its individual packaging until just before loading the media in the printer.



# Notes on Loading and Removing Media

***Caution:***

- ❏ *The dryer may be hot; observe all necessary precautions. Failure to observe the necessary precautions could result in burns.*
- ❏ *Do not put your hand inside the dryer. Failure to observe the necessary precautions could result in burns.*
- ❏ *Because the media is heavy, it should not be carried by one person. We recommend using a lifter for media that weighs over 40 kg (88 lb.) .*
- ❏ *Be careful not to trap your hands or fingers when opening or closing the front cover or the maintenance cover. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*
- ❏ *Do not rub your hands along the edges of the media. The edges of the media are sharp and can cause injury.*
- ❏ *Follow the instructions in the manual when loading media or roll cores or removing media from the take-up roll. Dropping media, roll cores, or take-up rolls could result in injury.*
- ❏ *Be sure that your hands or hair do not get caught in the Media Feeding Unit or Auto Take-up Reel Unit while it is operating. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*
- ❏ *When cutting media, be careful not to cut your fingers or hands with the cutter or other blades.*
- ❏ *If the media weighs over 20 kg (44.09 lb.), it should not be carried by one person. When loading or removing the media, use at least two people.*

### Notes when Using Large Capacity Media

***Caution:***

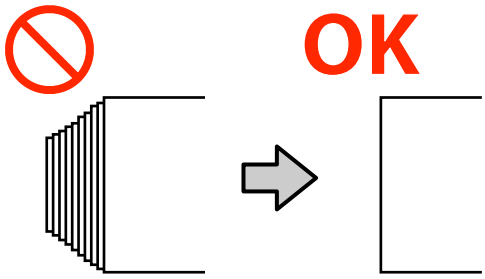
- *When handling media, such as when loading it, we recommend using a lifter. Failure to use a lifter may cause the media to fall and result in injury.*
- *Do not place your hands on the handles when loading spindles or media rolls on spindles into the large capacity roll unit or large capacity reel unit. Doing so may cause your fingers to be caught and result in injury.*
- *Do not touch rotating spindles or media during operation. Doing so may cause your hands, hair, or other body parts to be caught and result in injury.*
- *Do not work while wearing the following types of clothing or with the following hairstyles. Doing so may cause your clothing or hair to be caught in rotating spindles or media and result in injury.*
  - *Clothing with strings, such as hoodies*
  - *Clothing with loose sleeves*
  - *Neckties, scarves, or mufflers*
  - *Accessories such as bracelets or necklaces*
  - *Hairstyles with long, loose hair*
- *When loading or removing media, be careful of sudden power interruptions such as a tripped circuit breaker. Sudden power interruptions may cause the tension bar to move unexpectedly and result in injury.*
- *Do not touch the tension bar while it is operating or moving. Doing so may cause your hands, hair, or other body parts to be caught, or the tension bar may strike your hands, head, or other body parts and result in injury.*
- *Do not step over spindles to approach the printer. Doing so may cause you to trip over spindles, fall, and result in injury.*

**Load the media just before printing.**

The pressure rollers may crease media left in the printer. The media may also become wavy or curled, causing jams or resulting in the media coming into contact with the print head.

**Do not load media if the right and left edges are uneven.**

If media is loaded and the right and left edges of the roll are uneven, media feeding problems may cause the media to move around during printing. Either rewind to align the edges or use a roll without any issues.




**Media that cannot be used**

Do not use media that is folded, wrinkled, scuffed, torn, or dirty. The media could rise up and contact the printheads and damage them.

Example of media with folds or wrinkles at its edge

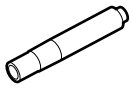


# Precautions When Handling Spindles

> ⚠ *Caution:*
>
> ❏ *Because spindles are heavy, they should be handled by two or more people. Dropping them, etc., could result in injury.*
>
> ❏ *Because spindles are heavy, wear safety shoes when handling them. Dropping a spindle may cause it to land on your feet and result in injury.*
>
> ❏ *When you carry a roll of media on a spindle, use compressed air to firmly secure the spindle. Otherwise, the roll of media or the spindle could fall and injure your feet. When a roll of media on a spindle has not been handled for a long time, use compressed air to firmly resecure the spindle, if needed.*

**Use an air compressor suitable for the printer to secure the media.**

❏ Supply air from a commercially available air compressor from the valve to secure media to the spindle.
If the nozzle shape of your air compressor does not fit the valve, use the nozzle included with the printer. The included nozzle can be attached to an air tube with an outer diameter of 8 mm.



❏ Set the air pressure of the air compressor within a range of 0.45 to 1 MPa. There is a risk of problems, such as the media not being secured, if the setting is outside the range.

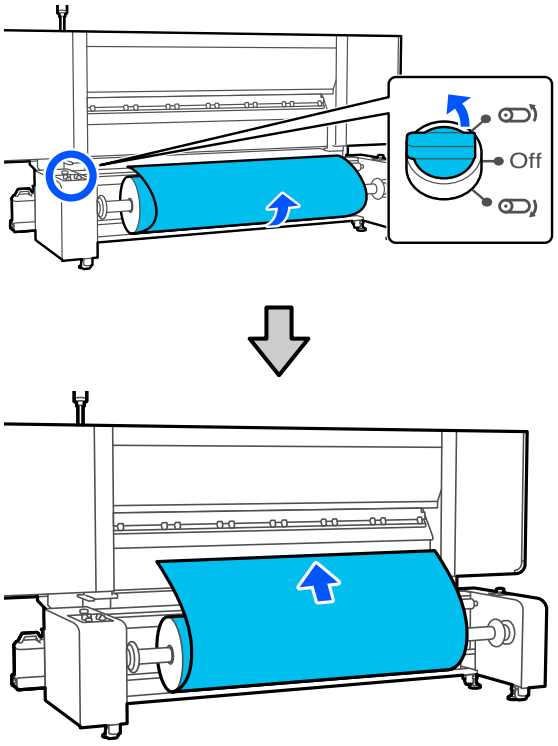
# Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models

Let the media slacken before gripping and pulling on its leading edge to pull it from the roll, such as when loading media. The media may get torn if it is forcibly pulled out without slackening. To slacken the media, follow the steps in the following section to operate the buttons and switches.

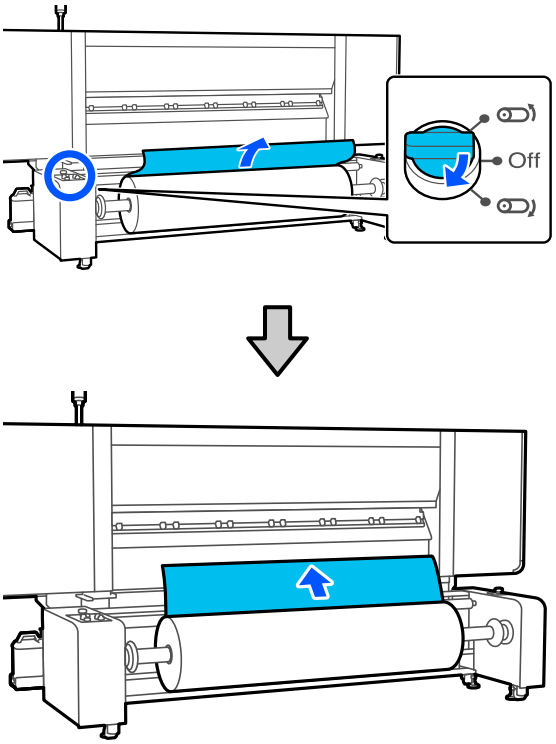
## When working from the back side

Use the Manual switch, on the media feeding unit, to slacken the media before pulling it by hand.

**When the roll is printable side out**



**When the roll is printable side in**



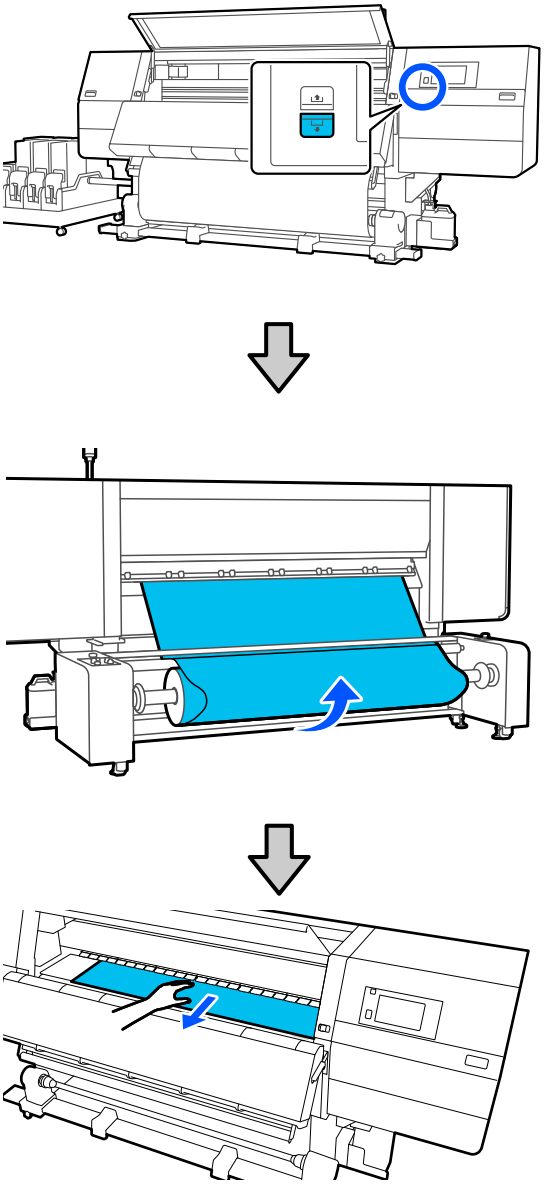

## When working from the front side

Do the following operations while the media loading lever is raised.

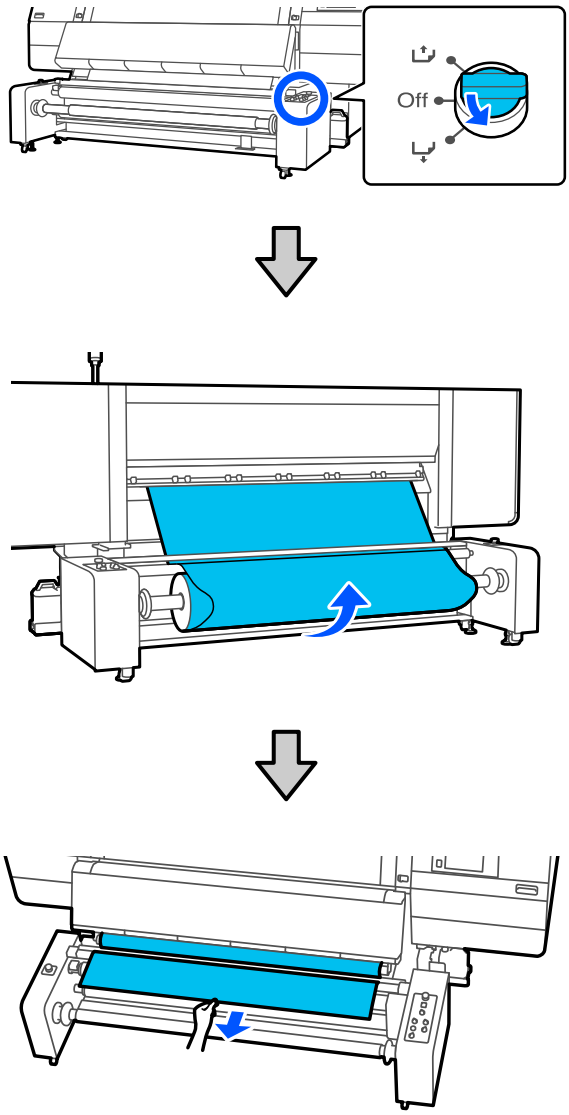
Use the media feed button or the media feed switch to slacken the media before pulling it by hand.

**When the roll is printable side out**

❏ Large capacity roll models

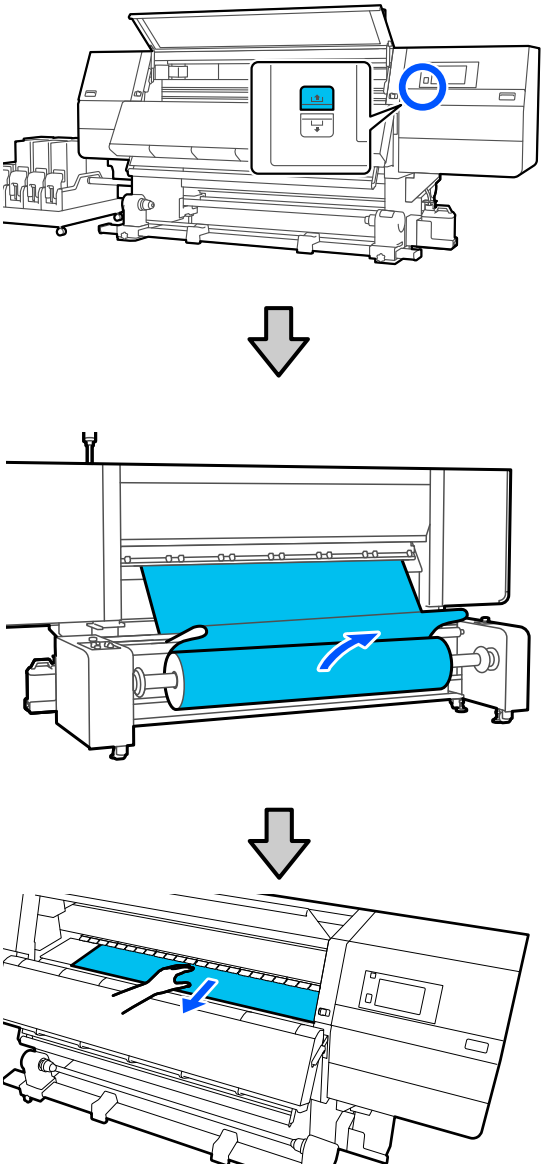


❏ Large capacity reel models

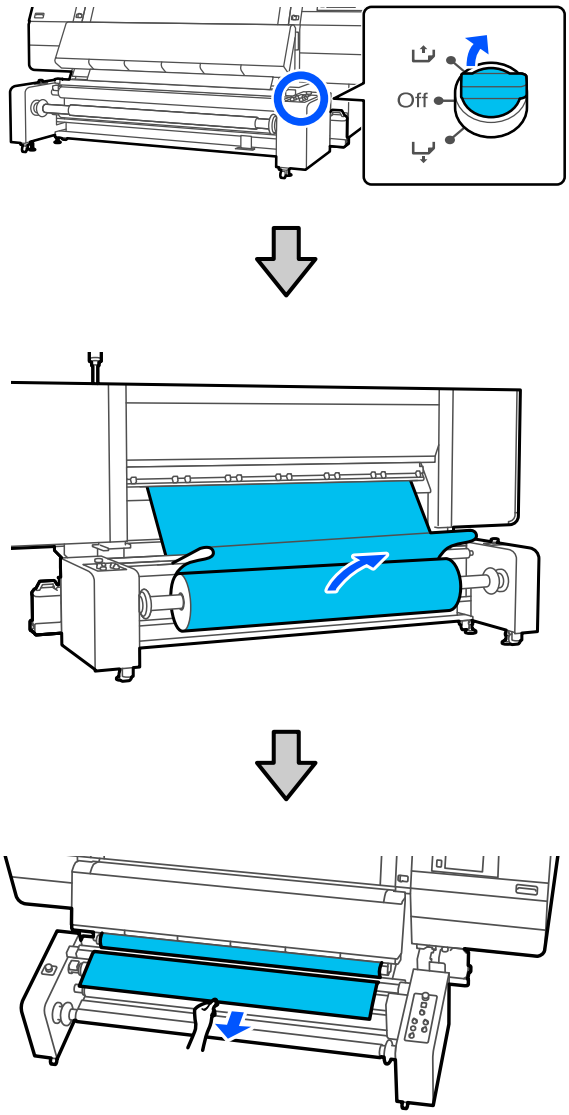



**When the roll is printable side in**

❏ Large capacity roll models



❏ Large capacity reel models




# Media Loading Procedure

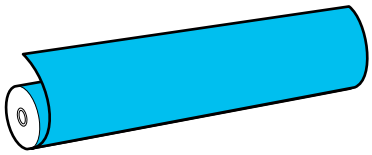
When loading media into the media feeding unit and auto take-up reel unit, the loading method varies depending on your model and the type of media. Check the points in advance, and then load the media following the procedure for your model.

# Points To Check In Advance

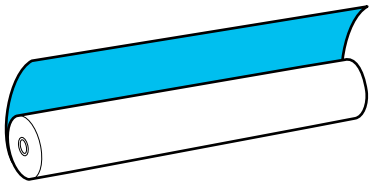
## Media winding specifications and take-up direction

You can load media with either of the following winding specifications into the media feeding unit on the printer.

**Printable Side Out**



**Printable Side In**

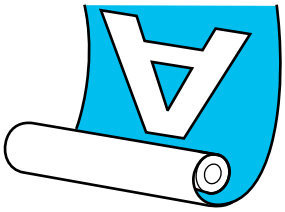


Printable side out means the printable surface is wound on the outside.

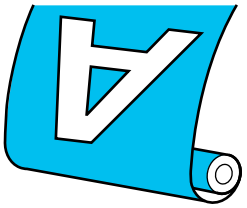
Printable side in means the printable surface is wound on the inside.

Additionally, the auto take-up reel unit on the printer can take up printed media in either of the following directions.

**Printed side in**



**Printed side out**



Taking-up with printed side in places the printed surface on the inside of the roll.

Taking-up with printed side out places the printed surface on the outside of the roll.

The take-up direction for printed media is specified separately from the loaded media's winding specifications. For example, even if the loaded media is printable side out, you can set the take-up direction to printable side in.

Because the procedure for loading media differs depending on the winding specifications of the loaded media and the take-up direction for printed media, check this information before starting work.

Normally, load media with the printable side out. We also recommend taking up printed media with printable side in.

## Normal feed procedure and take-up feed procedure

There are two ways to load media: The normal feeding procedure and the take-up feeding procedure.

When media is being loaded, the printer does operations such as feeding and rewinding the media to detect its width. When using the normal feeding procedure at this time, some problems, such as the media wrinkling on the platen, may occur depending on the type of media. These problems are caused when the media gets stuck to the platen.

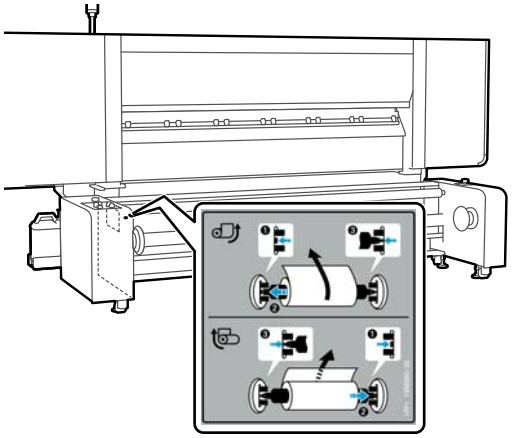
If these problems occur, follow the take-up feeding procedure to load the media. In the take-up feeding procedure, the media is loaded to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit before feeding, to avoid it getting stuck to the platen and causing problems.

The take-up feeding procedure is often suitable for large capacity media, so we recommend following the take-up feeding procedure.

## Models requiring gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle

For the following models, you need to close the gaps at the ends of the spindle when loading media to prevent media skewing or meandering. If you are using one of these models, follow the procedure to close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.

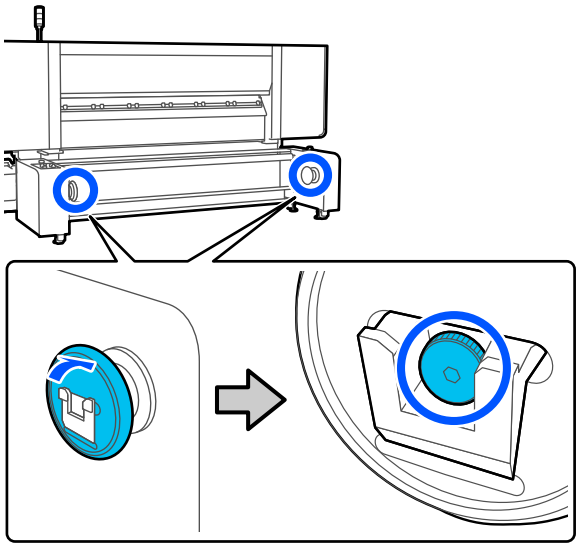
- ❏ Large capacity reel models
- ❏ Large capacity roll models that have the gap adjustment label shown in the following illustration on the media feeding unit



Models that support gap adjustment have type A or type B gap adjustment screws inside the handles.

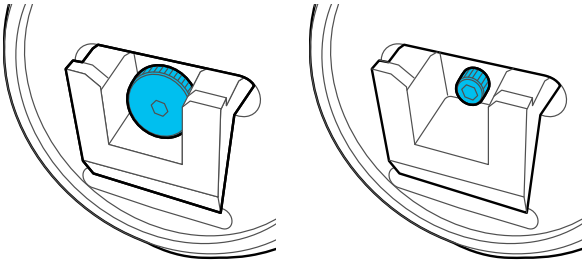
Because the tools used for gap adjustment and the method for turning the screws differ, check the type of screw inside the handle in advance.

### Gap adjustment screw location



### Gap adjustment screw types

A B



# Media Loading Procedure by Model

## Standard roll/reel models

### Normal feeding procedure

**1. Attach the media to the media feeding unit.**

☞ "Loading the media" on page 81

↓

**2. Pull out the leading edge of the media to the front of the printer.**

☞ "Feeding media to the front" on page 84

↓

**3. Set the media information.**

☞ "Setting the media information" on page 87

↓

**4. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit.**

☞ "Attaching the Roll Core" on page 100

↓

**5. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Loading using the normal feeding procedure" on page 103

### Take-up feeding procedure

**1. Attach the media to the media feeding unit.**

☞ "Loading the media" on page 81

↓

**2. Pull out the leading edge of the media to the front of the printer.**

☞ "Feeding media to the front" on page 84

↓

**3. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit.**

☞ "Attaching the Roll Core" on page 100

↓

**4. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Loading using the take-up feeding procedure" on page 105

↓

**5. Set the media information.**

☞ "Setting the media information" on page 110

## Large capacity roll models

### Normal feeding procedure

**1. Insert the spindle into the media.**

"Preparing the media" on page 88

↓

**2. Attach the media to the media feeding unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

"Loading the media and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 90

↓

**3. Pass the leading edge of the media between the rollers of the media feeding unit and pull it out to the front of the printer.**

"Feeding media to the front" on page 95

↓

**4. Set the media information.**

"Setting the media information" on page 98

↓

**5. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit.**

"Attaching the Roll Core" on page 100

↓

**6. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

"Loading using the normal feeding procedure" on page 103

### Take-up feeding procedure

**1. Insert the spindle into the media.**

"Preparing the media" on page 88

↓

**2. Attach the media to the media feeding unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

"Loading the media and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 90

↓

**3. Pass the leading edge of the media between the rollers of the media feeding unit and pull it out to the front of the printer.**

"Feeding media to the front" on page 95

↓

**4. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit.**

"Attaching the Roll Core" on page 100

↓

**5. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

"Loading using the take-up feeding procedure" on page 105

↓

**6. Set the media information.**

"Setting the media information" on page 110

## Large capacity reel models

### Normal feeding procedure

**1. Insert the spindle into the media.**

☞ "Preparing the media" on page 88

↓

**2. Attach the media to the media feeding unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

☞ "Loading the media and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 90

↓

**3. Pass the leading edge of the media between the rollers of the media feeding unit and pull it out to the front of the printer.**

☞ "Feeding media to the front" on page 95

↓

**4. Set the media information.**

☞ "Setting the media information" on page 98

↓

**5. Insert the spindle into the roll core.**

☞ "Preparing the roll core" on page 111

↓

**6. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

☞ "Attaching the roll core and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 111

↓

**7. Pull the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Feeding media to the roll core" on page 114

↓

**8. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side in" on page 118

☞ "Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side out" on page 119

↓

**9. Set the load switch and heater temperature.**

☞ "Setting the load switch and heater temperature" on page 120

### Take-up feeding procedure

**1. Insert the spindle into the media.**

☞ "Preparing the media" on page 88

↓

**2. Attach the media to the media feeding unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

☞ "Loading the media and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 90

↓

**3. Pass the leading edge of the media between the rollers of the media feeding unit and pull it out to the front of the printer.**

☞ "Feeding media to the front" on page 95

↓

**4. Insert the spindle into the roll core.**

☞ "Preparing the roll core" on page 111

↓

**5. Attach the roll core to the auto take-up reel unit and close the gaps at the ends of the spindle.**

☞ "Attaching the roll core and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle" on page 111

↓

**6. Pull the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Feeding media to the roll core" on page 120

↓

**7. Attach the leading edge of the media to the roll core.**

☞ "Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side in" on page 124

☞ "Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side out" on page 127

↓

**8. Set the media information, load switch, and heater temperature.**

☞ "Setting the media information, load switch, and heater temperature" on page 129

# Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit

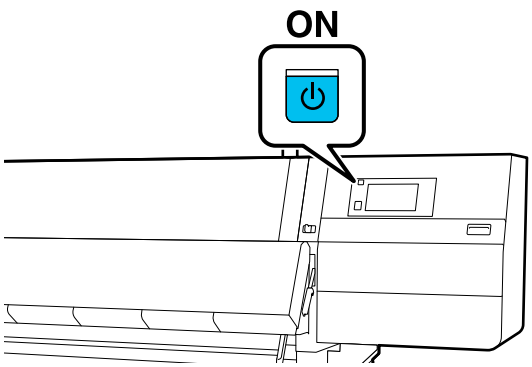
You can check the procedure in a video on YouTube.

Epson Video Manuals

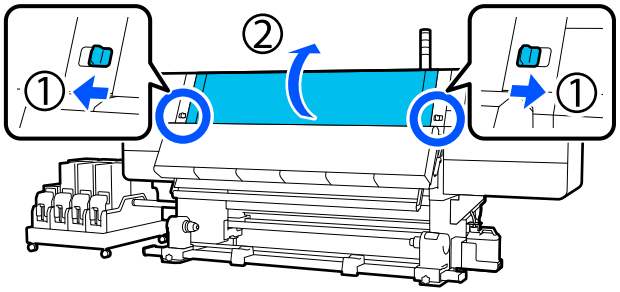
## Loading the standard type Media Feeding Unit

### Loading the media

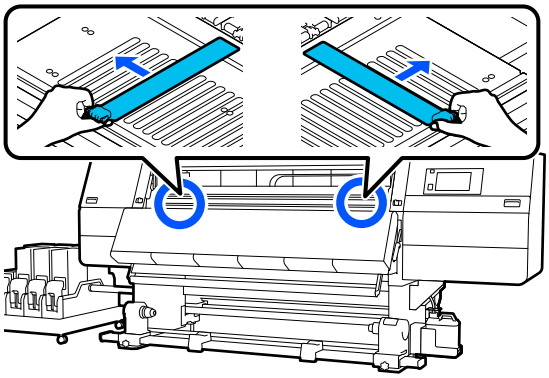
1 Press the ⏻ button and wait until the Home screen is displayed.



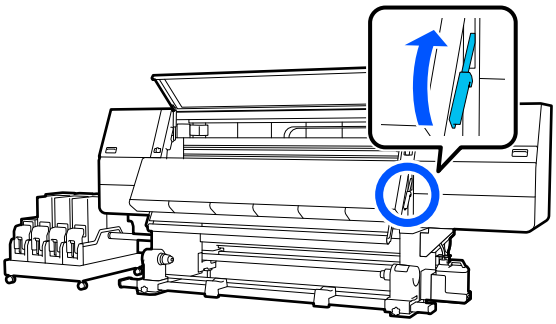

2 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



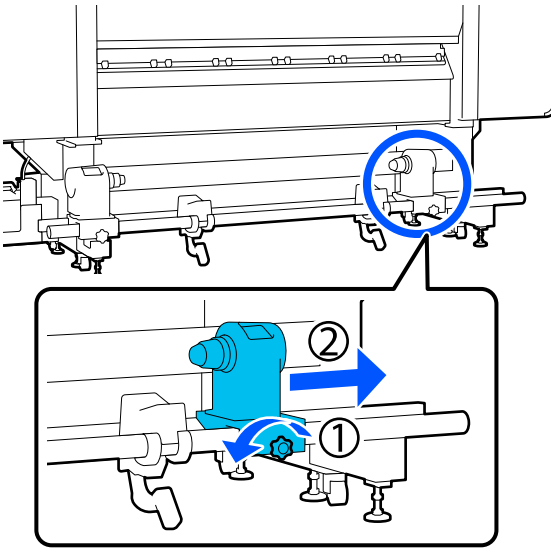

3 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate out of the way toward both edges of the platen.



4 Raise the media loading lever.

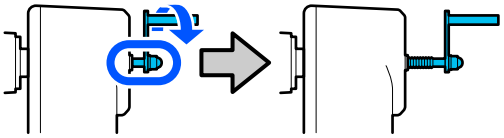


5 Move to the back side, and loosen the right media holder fixing screw to move the holder outwards.

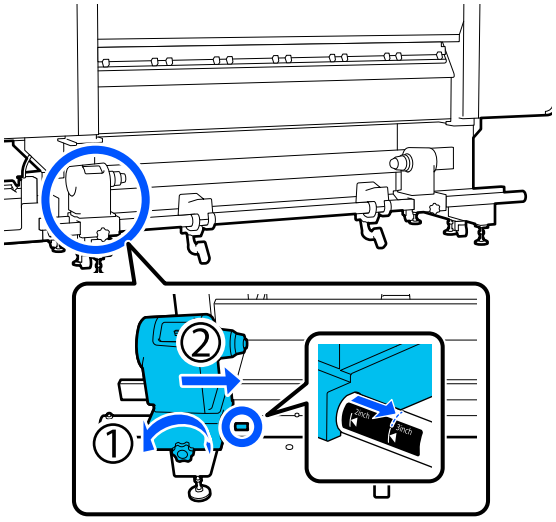


**Important:**

*If the right holder handle shaft is not visible, rotate the handle forward until it stops. The media can not be properly loaded if the handle shaft is not visible.*

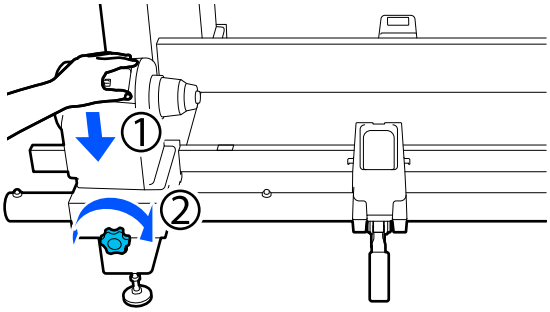


6 Loosen the left media holder fixing screw and move the media holder to the set position according to the inner diameter of the roll core of the media that will be loaded.

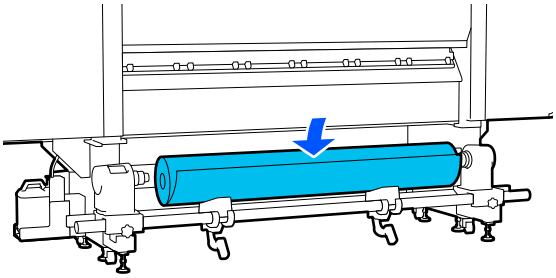



7 While pressing from the top of the media holder, tighten the fixing screw until it no longer turns.

Tighten it so the media holder does not move.



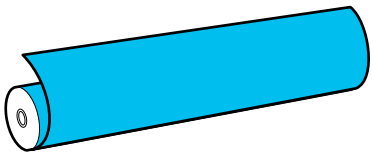

8 Place the media on the roll support. Have the roll support moved inward for about 20 cm (7.87 in.) from the roll end.



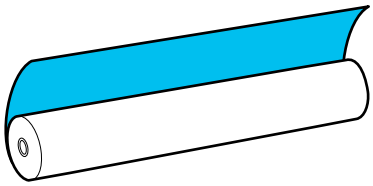
***Note:***

*The method of placing varies as follows depending on how media is rolled.*

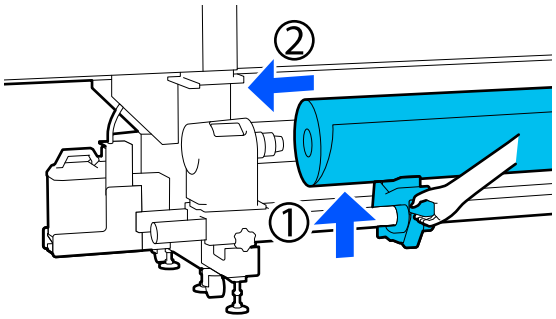
**Printable Side Out**



**Printable Side In**



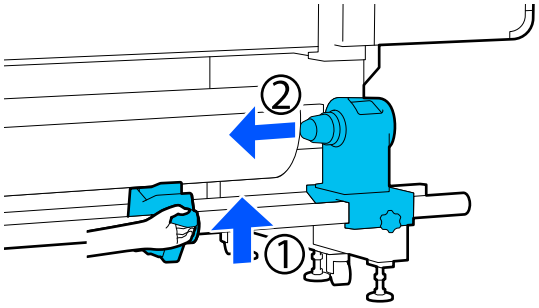
9 While lifting the lift lever, move the roll support to the left, and firmly insert the roll core of the media onto the media holder.



***Note:***
*If the roll of media has an outer diameter that is less than 140 mm (5.51 in.), the roll core will not reach the media holder when raised using the lift lever.*

*Raise it with your hands, and insert the roll core into the media holder.*

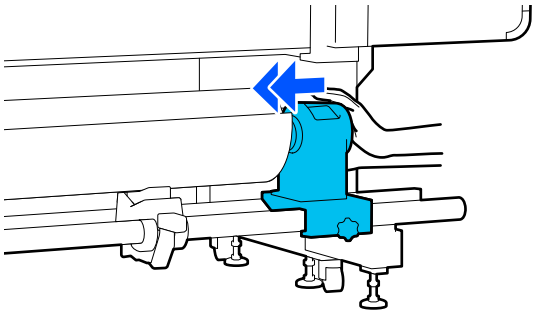
10 While lifting the right lift lever, firmly insert the media holder onto the roll core of the media.




***Note:***
*If the roll of media has an outer diameter that is less than 140 mm (5.51 in.), the roll core will not reach the media holder when raised using the lift lever.*

*Raise it with your hands, and insert the roll core into the media holder.*

11 To ensure that the media holder is sufficiently inserted into the roll core, push the top of the media holder towards the end of the roll two times.

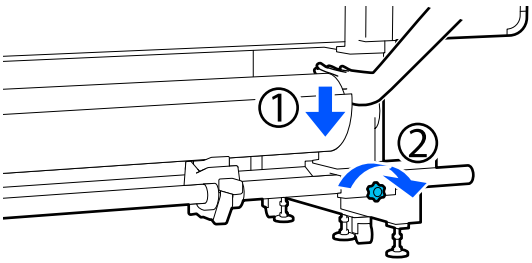


***Important:***
*If the media holder is inserted into the roll core insufficiently, media is not fed correctly during printing because of slippage between the media holder and roll core.*

*This may cause banding in the print results.*

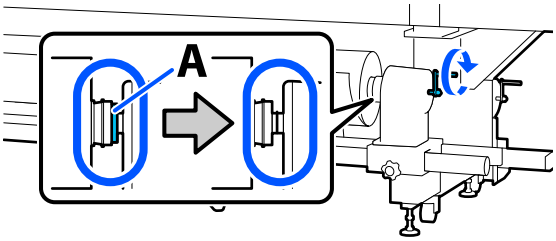
12 While pressing from the top of the media holder, tighten the fixing screw until it no longer turns.

Tighten it so the media holder does not move.




***Important:***
*If the media holder screw is loose, the media holder may move during printing. This could cause stripes and unevenness in the print results.*

13 Rotate the handle until part A in the illustration below is fully inserted.



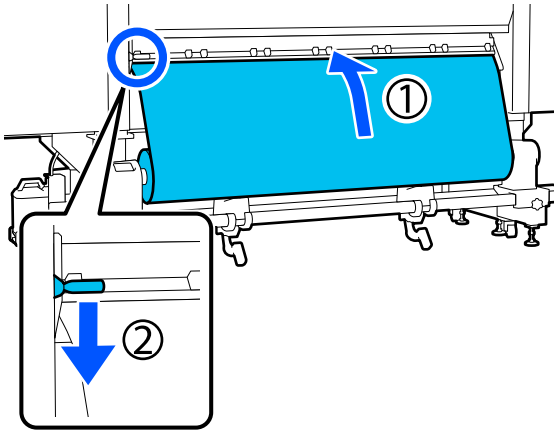

***Important:***
*Once part A is hidden, do not turn the handle any further. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the media holder.*

*If part A is still visible even after the handle has been turned fully, rewind the handle. Loosen the media holder screw on the right side, and then restart from Step 5.*

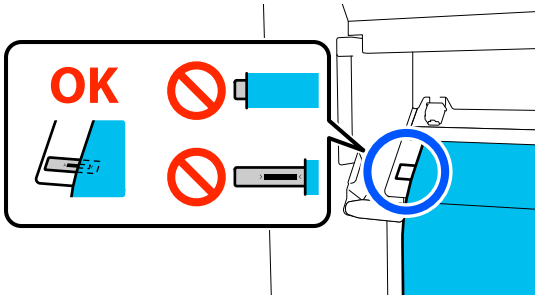
## Feeding media to the front

1 Insert the media approximately 20 cm (7.87 in.) into the opening, then lower the media loading lever.

The media that you inserted is clamped and does not fall out.



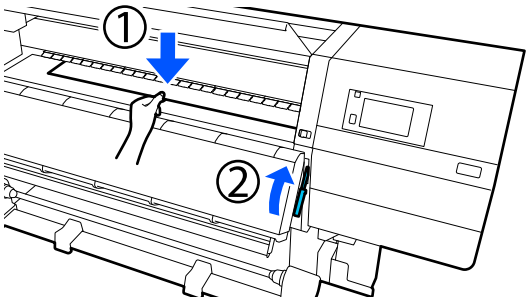

2 Confirm that the left edge of the media is within the range of the label's rectangle in the illustration below.




**Important:**

*If the left edge of the media is not within the black square of the label, do Steps 6 to 15 in reverse to adjust the position of the media holder. Do not attempt to reposition the media holders while they are inserted in the media.*

3 Move to the front side, and while holding the media to keep it from falling down to the back side, lift the media loading lever.




***Note:***

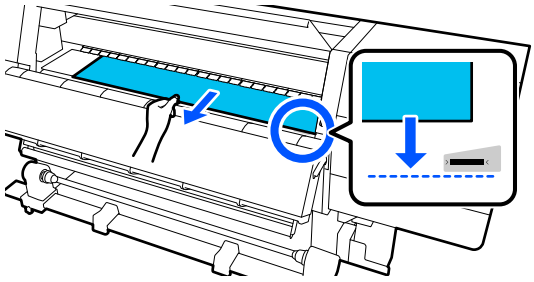
*You can change the media suction on the platen through the screen operation. Increasing the media suction lowers the possibility of media falling down.*

*If it is difficult to pull out the media in the following procedure, decrease the media suction. Change as required.*

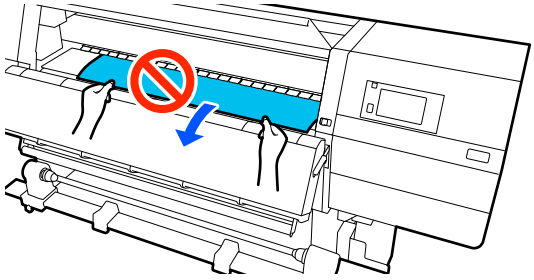
4 Pull out the media to the following position according to the feeding method suitable for the media.

**Normal feeding procedure**

Pull out the media to the near edge of the label on the platen.
Hold the center of the media in one hand, and pull it straight out.



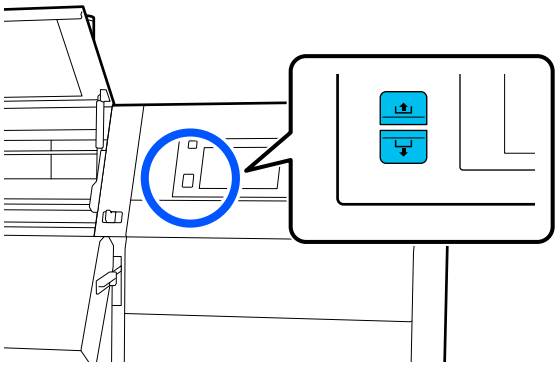
Do not pull the media with both hands. This could cause the media to skew or move around.



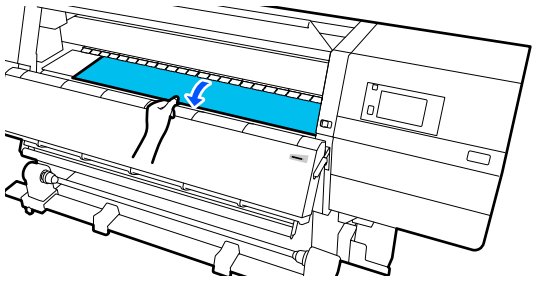
### Take-up feeding procedure

Pull out the media until it reaches the media holder.
Follow the steps below to pull out the media.

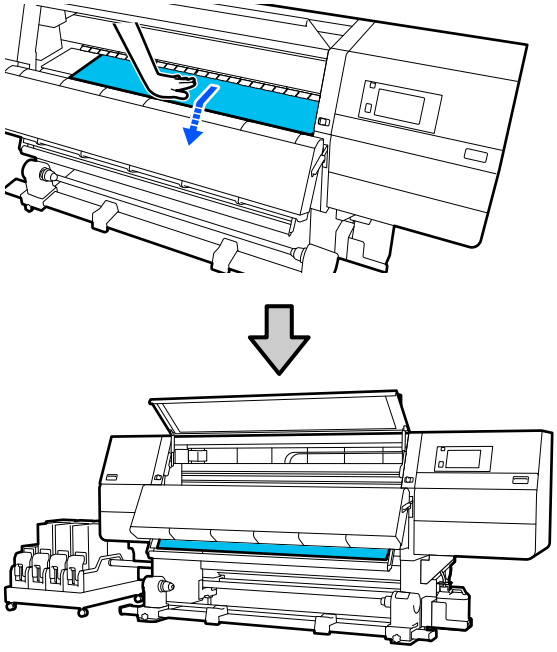
For each step given below, be sure to slacken the media before pulling it out. The media may get torn if it is forcibly pulled out without slackening.
To slacken the media, press the media feed button. When loading media, press ↓ for printable side out, and press ↑ for printable side in.
By doing so, the media that is loaded on the back side will rotate in the feeding direction and slacken.



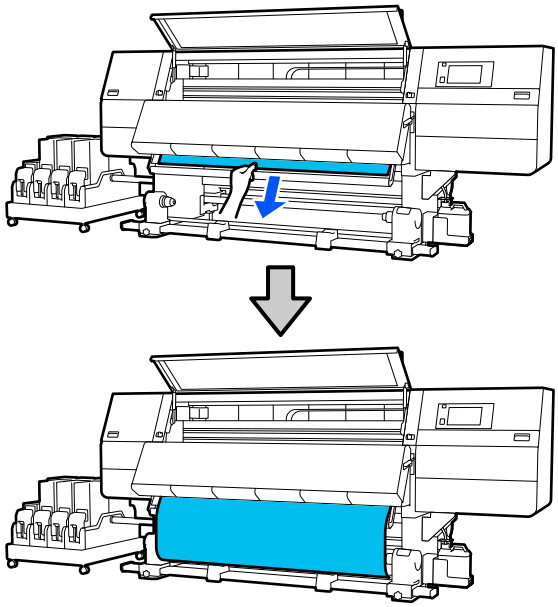
a. Hold the center of the media in one hand, pull it straight out, and insert its edge into the dryer.



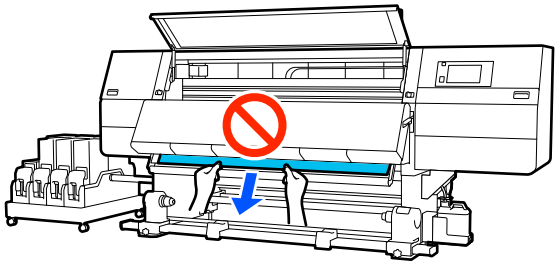
b. While holding the center of the media on the platen, pull it out by moving it toward yourself, until its edge comes out from the bottom of the dryer.



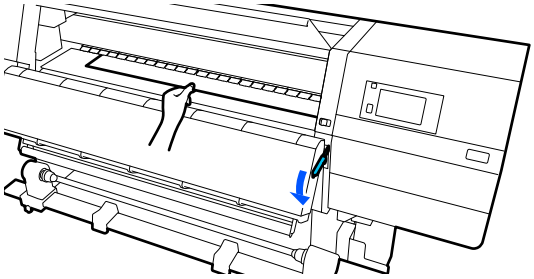
c. Hold the center of the media in one hand, and pull out the media until its edge reaches the media holder.



Do not pull the media with both hands. This could cause the media to skew or move around.



5 Lower the media loading lever.



**Normal feeding procedure**

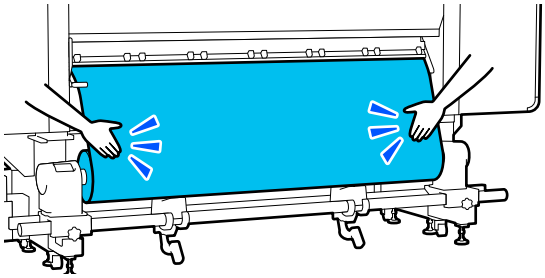
After lowering the media loading lever, move on to the next step.

**Take-up feeding procedure**

Lower the media loading lever, and then continue to attach the media to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit. While the front cover is open, see the following to attach media to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

6 Move to the back side, tap lightly on both edges of the media, and check if there is a difference in tension between the left and right sides.



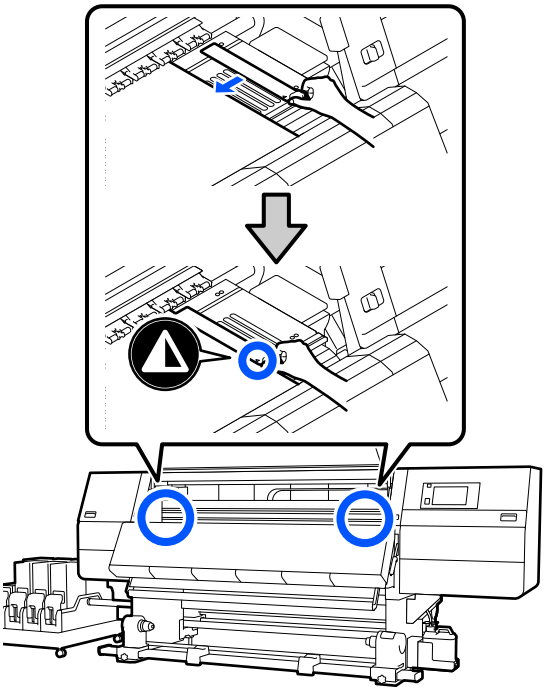
If there is a difference in tension, the media becomes loose.

From the front of the printer, raise the media loading lever, and correct the looseness in the media.

Once the looseness is corrected, lower the media loading lever.

7 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

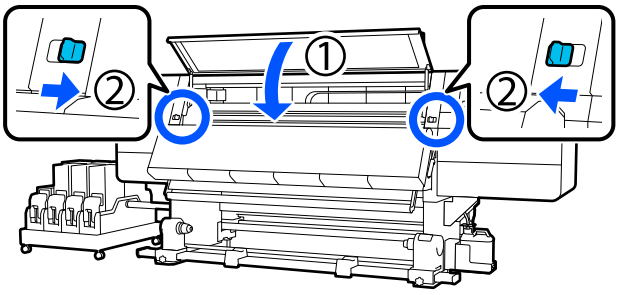
The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.



**Important:**

- ❏ *Do not use the media edge plates with media that is 0.4 mm (0.01 in.) or more thick. The media edge plates could touch and damage the print head.*
- ❏ *Always position the plates so that the edges of the media are at the centers of the triangular holes. Incorrect positioning causes banding (horizontal banding, tint unevenness, or stripes) during printing.*
- ❏ *Move the media edge plates to the left and right edges of the platen when they are not in use.*
- ❏ *Do not use the media edge plates if the sides of the printed media are smudged.*

8 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




## Setting the media information

1 Set the media information on the screen, and press **OK**.

Do the following settings here.

- ❏ Media: Set the media to use for printing
- ❏ Roll Winding Direction: How to wind the loaded media
- ❏ Media Length: Length of the loaded media
- ❏ Media Detection: How to detect the width of the media

**Media** is set in the following way.

**When there are no registered media settings for the loaded media**

First, select an unregistered number.

There is no Media Type set for an unregistered number, so the screen to select Media Type appears. Select the Media Type using the paper weight of the loaded media as a guideline as shown below. The paper weights of each Media Type shown in the screen are typical values.

| Media Type | Paperweight (g/m²) |
|---|---|
| Ultra-Thin | 39 or under |
| Thin | 40 to 56 |
| Med-Thick | 57 to 89 |
| Thick | 90 or over |

**When there are registered media settings/EMX file is downloaded and registered for the loaded media**

Choose a registered media number.

In **Media Detection**, set **Width Detection**. Normally, leave this **On**.

See the following for details about Media Detection.

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

2 Press **OK**.

The printer starts detecting the loaded media and performing related operations.

3 Follow the on-screen instructions to forward the edge of the media to the given position as necessary.

# Loading the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit

We recommend having 2 people work together to load media. The work is easier to do if they stand so one is on the left and the other on the right as they pass the media through the rollers.

## Necessary items

**Air compressor (available in the market)**

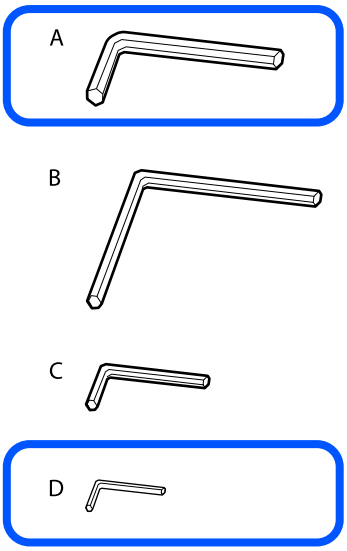
Use this to secure media to the spindle. Prepare an air compressor that can be set to a pressure within a range of 0.45 to 1 MPa. To make media loading easier, we recommend keeping the air compressor ready for use near the printer.

**Lifter (available in the market)**

Use this to transport media. Prepare a lifter with a load capacity greater than the combined weight of the media and spindle to be loaded.

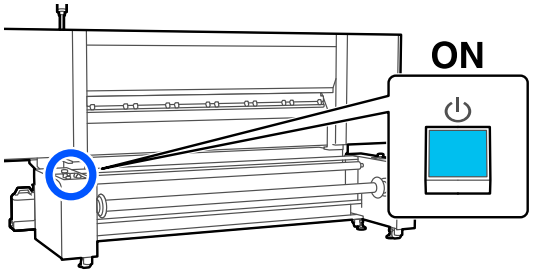
**Hex wrench (large) and hex wrench (small) (included only with models with type B gap adjustment screws)**

Models with type B gap adjustment screws at the ends of the spindle come with four hex wrenches in the sizes shown in the illustration, from largest to smallest: A to D. A is the largest (hex wrench large) and D is the smallest (hex wrench small). For models with type B gap adjustment screws, keep these hex wrenches on hand as they are used when loading media.



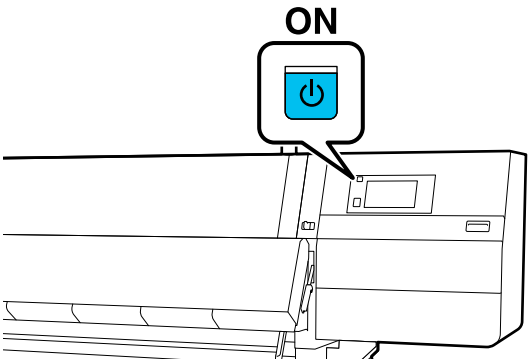

## Preparing the media

1 Press the ⏻ button on the media feeding unit to turn on the power.

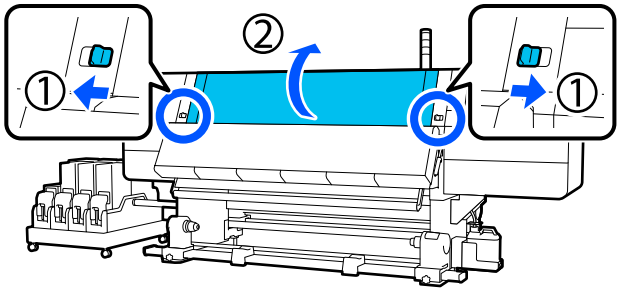



If you are using a large capacity reel model, also turn on the power for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

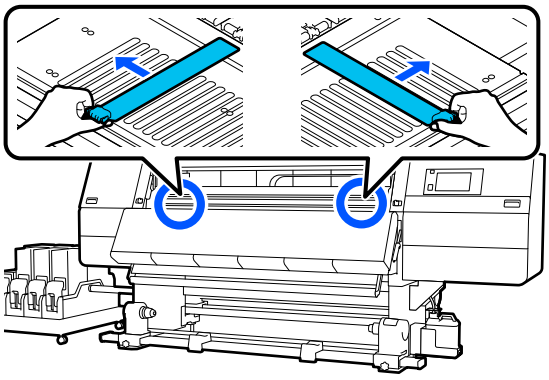
2 Press the ⏻ button and wait until the Home screen is displayed.



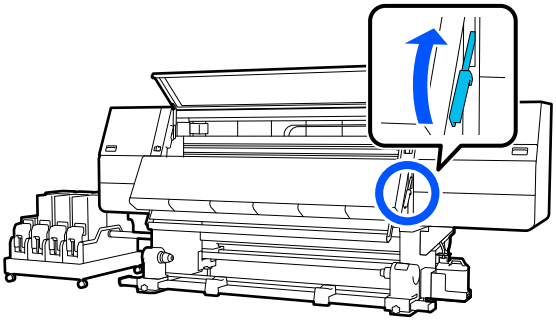

3 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



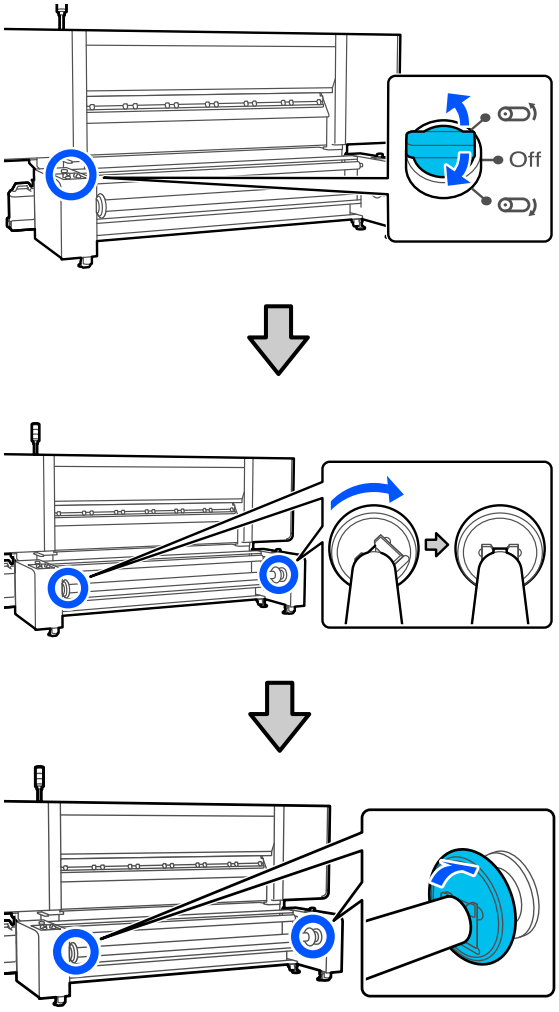

4 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate out of the way toward both edges of the platen.



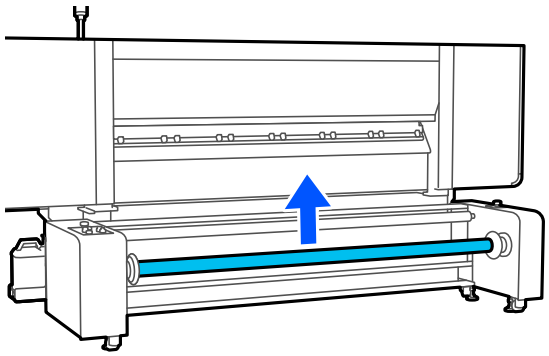
5 Raise the media loading lever.



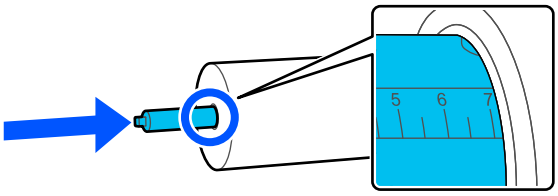
6 Move to the back side, use the Manual switch to rotate the spindle to face as shown in the illustration, then lower the handles on both sides outward.



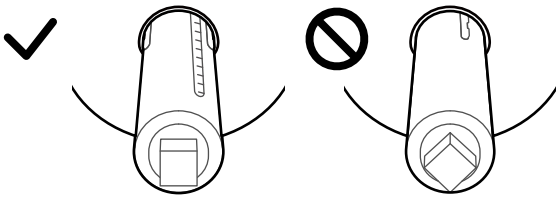

7 Remove the spindle.



8 Insert the spindle into the paper core up to about 7 cm on the scale of the spindle (on the side with the printer's control panel).




Face the spindle as shown in the illustration.



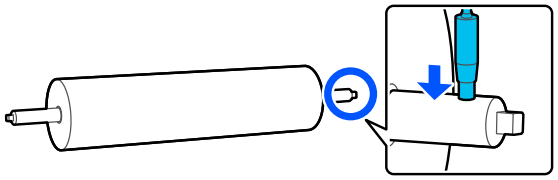
After inserting the spindle, follow the instructions below according to your model.

- ❏ Models requiring gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle
  If the air compressor is available near the printer: Go to step 10.
  If the air compressor is not available near the printer: Go to the next step.
- ❏ For models that do not require gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle: Go to the next step.

9 If the air compressor is not near the printer or if gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle is not required, put air into the spindle at this point to secure the roll core.

Put air into the spindle from the valve until the air stops going in.

If you have an air compressor handy, there is no need to supply air at this point as you will add air in a later step.



## Loading the media and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle

If you are using a model that does not require gap adjustment at the ends of the spindles, start from step 4.

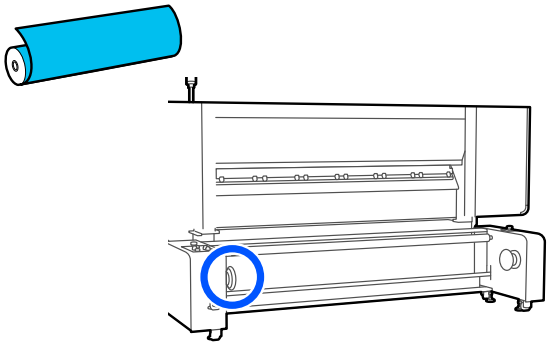
1 Confirm the side to which the spindle should be moved.

After placing the spindle on the media feeding unit in a later step, move the spindle to either the left or right side to eliminate any gap at the end of the spindle.

The side to which the spindle is moved depends on the printable surface of the media to be loaded.

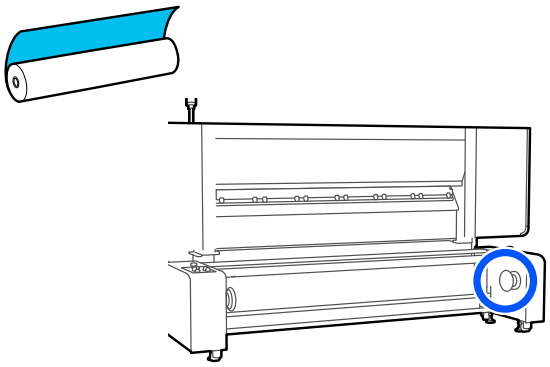
**When the roll is printable side out**

Move the spindle to the left side toward the media feeding unit.



**When the roll is printable side in**

Move the spindle to the right side toward the media feeding unit.

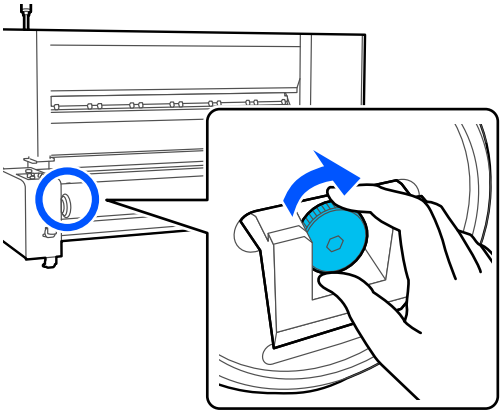


2 Turn the screw clockwise inside the handle on the side to which the spindle is to be moved until it stops.

The following explanation uses media with printable side out as an example.

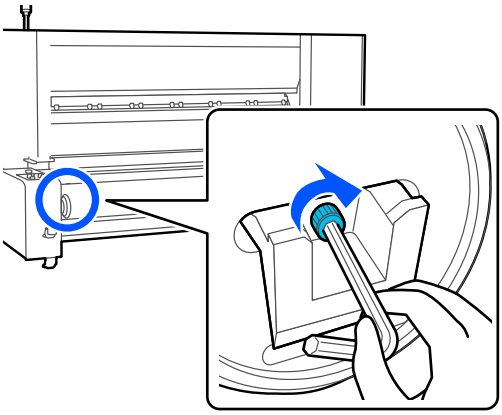
**Type A gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw by hand.



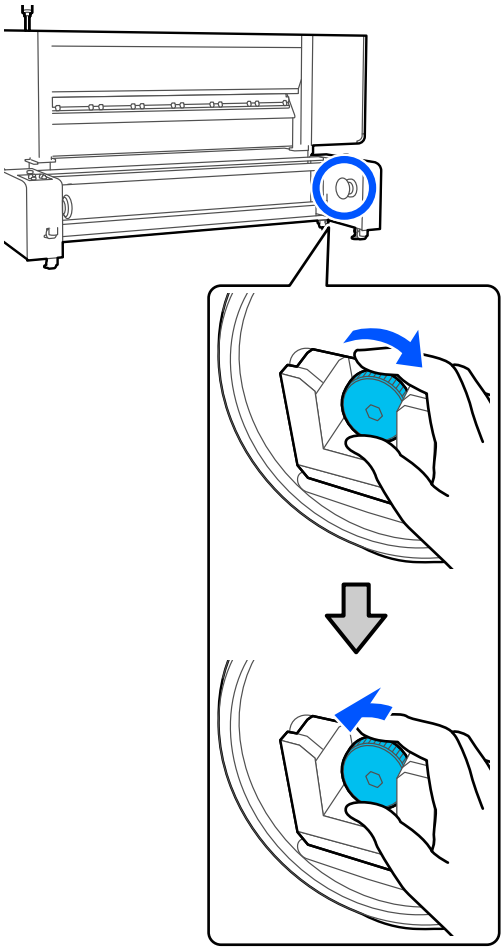
**Type B gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw using the hex wrench (large).

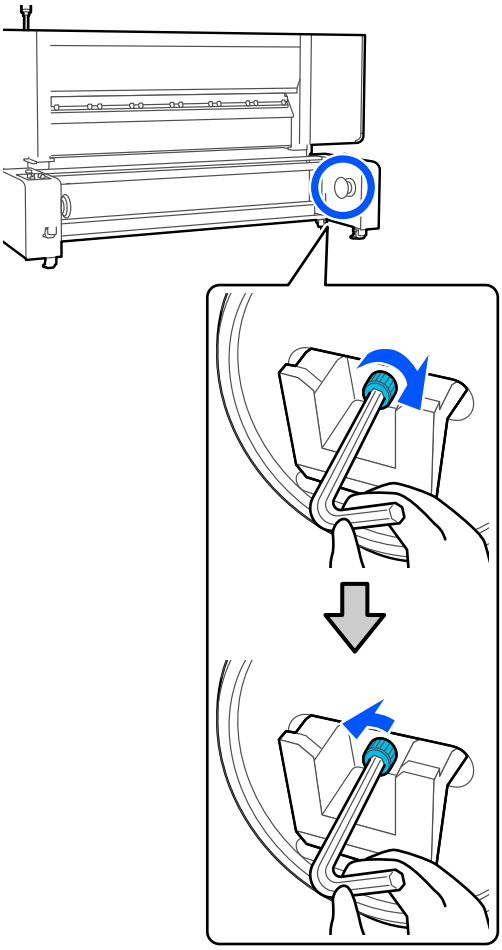


3 Turn the screw clockwise inside the handle on the opposite side until it stops, then loosen it slightly.

**Type A gap adjustment screw**

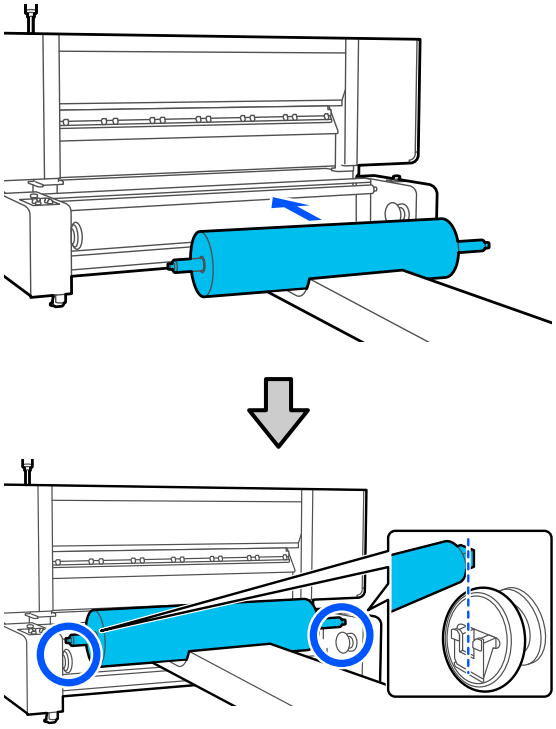


**Type B gap adjustment screw**



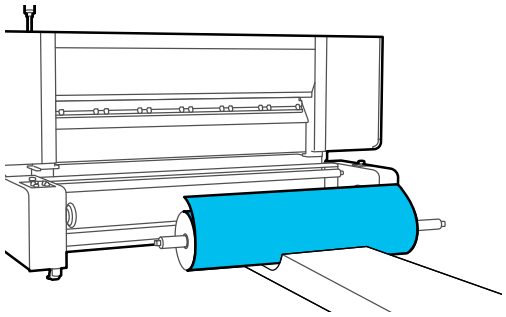
4 Move the media to the position shown in the illustration.

Be careful that the tip of the lifter does not hit the unit.

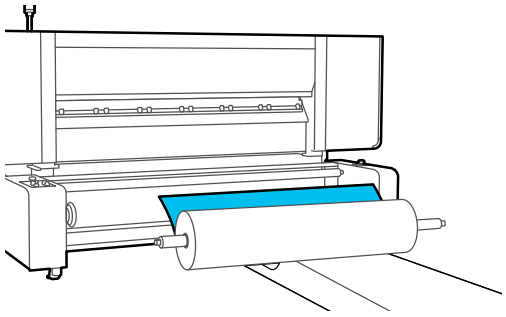


***Note:***
*The method of placing varies as follows depending on how media is rolled.*

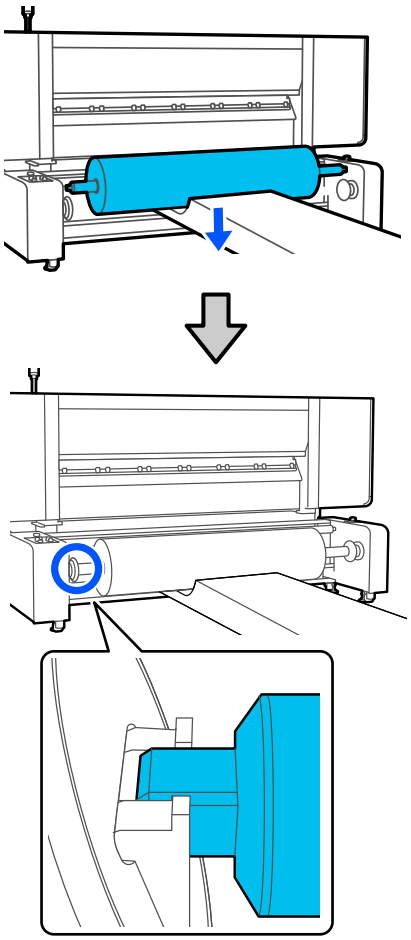
**Printable Side Out**



**Printable Side In**



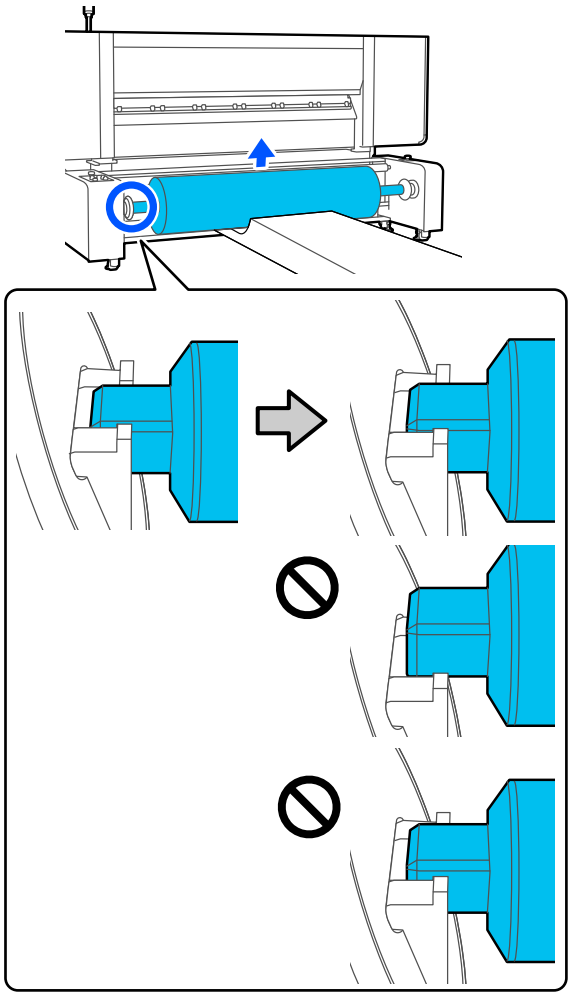
5 Lower the media so that both edges of the spindle fit into the socket.



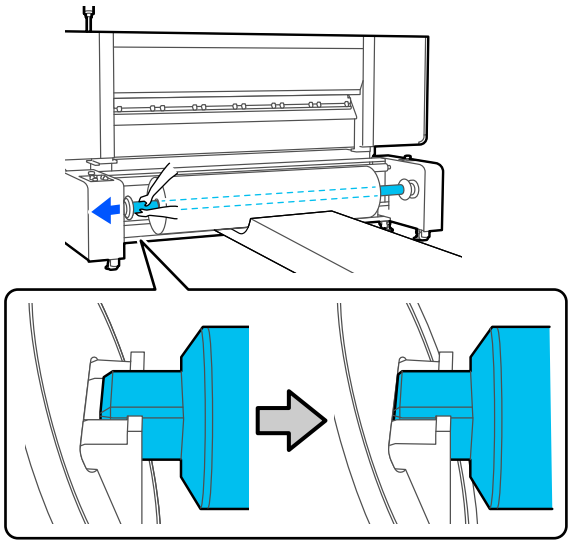
If you are using a model that does not require gap adjustment at the ends of the spindles, go to step 11.

6 Slightly lift the media.

Lift the media only by 2 to 4 mm. Lifting it too much may prevent you from correctly loading the media in the procedure below.



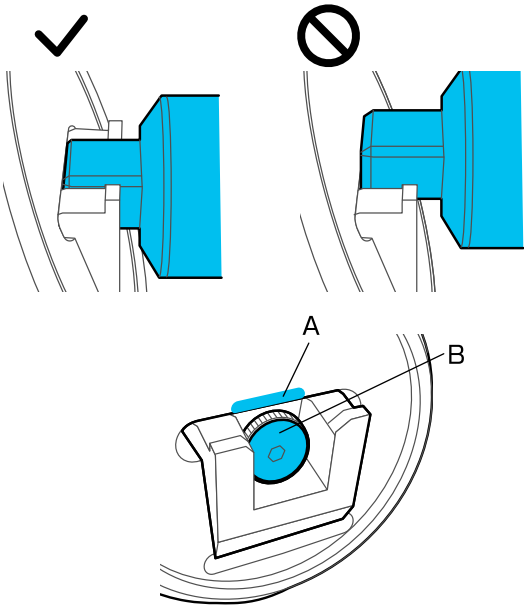
7 Slide the spindle by hand until the edge of the spindle touches the screw inside the handle.



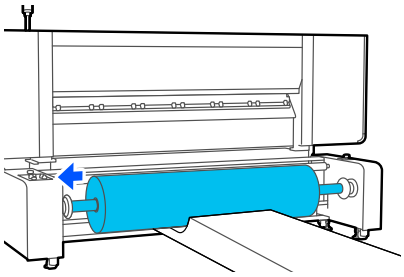
In this operation, confirm that the edge of the spindle does not touch point A on the handle.

If the media was lifted appropriately in the previous procedure, the edge of the spindle will correctly touch surface B of the screw.

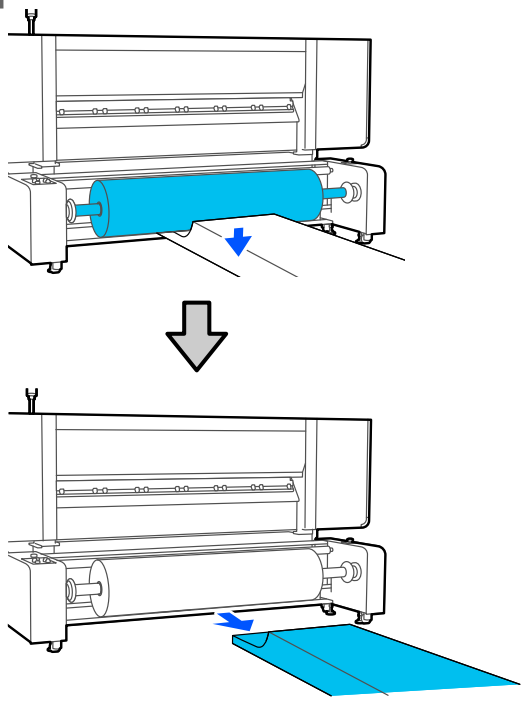
Lifting it too much may cause the edge of the spindle to touch point A on the handle, resulting in an incorrect spindle position.




If air has already been put into the spindle to secure the roll core, move the lifter sideways to move the spindle along with the media to the handle.



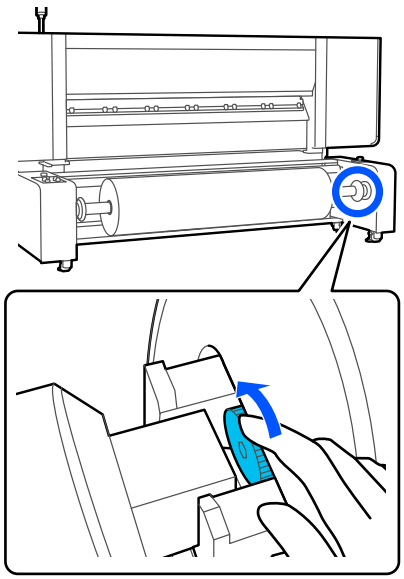
8 Lower the media.



9 Turn the screw counterclockwise inside the handle on the side opposite to where the spindle has been moved until the screw touches the edge of the spindle.

**Type A gap adjustment screw**

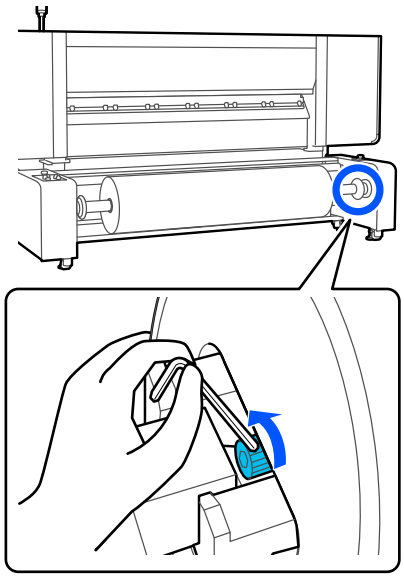
Turn the screw by hand.



**Type B gap adjustment screw**

The side of the screw head has a knurled, non-slip texture with fine ridges and grooves.

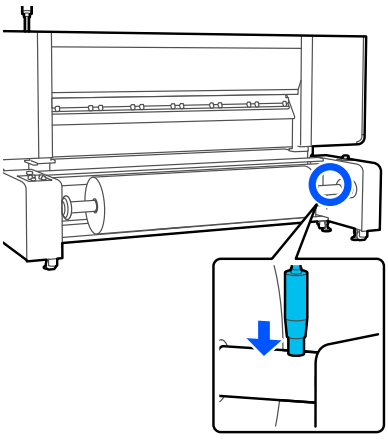
Insert a hex wrench into the gap between the handle and the spindle, and slowly turn the screw while hooking the tip of the hex wrench onto the side of the screw head.



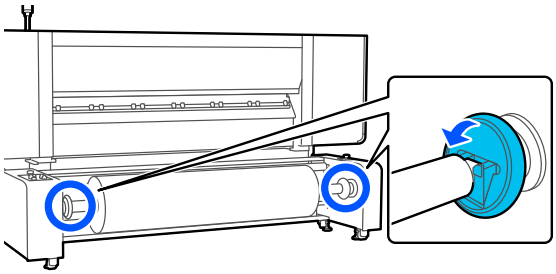
After turning the screw, proceed to Step 11 if air has already been put into the spindle to secure the roll core.

10 Put air into the spindle from the valve until the air stops going in.

If air has already been put into the spindle to secure the roll core, this procedure is not necessary.

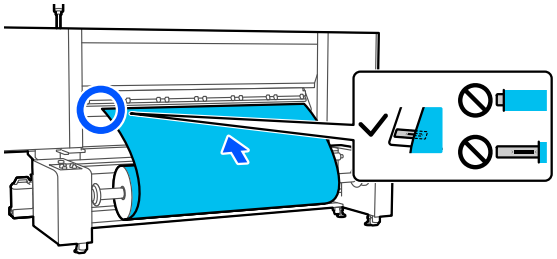


11 Raise the handles on both sides.



12 Pull out a little of the media to confirm that the left edge of the media is within the range of the label's rectangle in the illustration below.

"Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models" on page 71

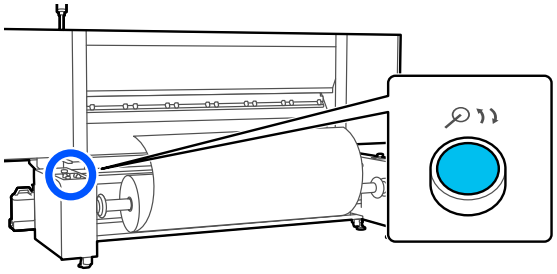


**Important:**

*If it is outside the range, do the procedure again from installation of the spindle.*

## Feeding media to the front

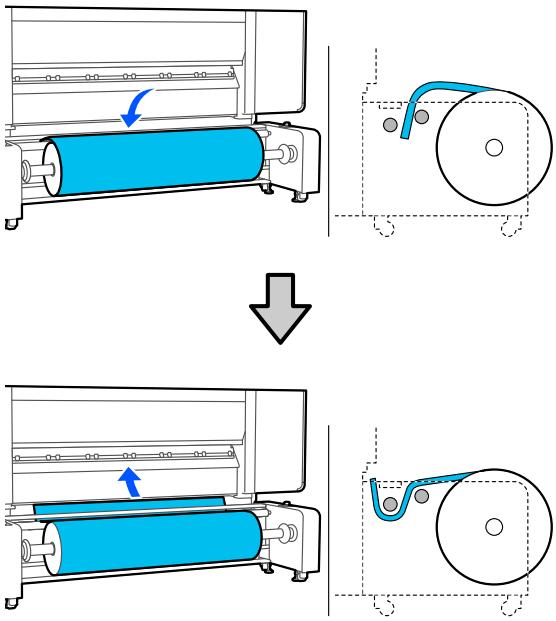
1 Press the Release Button and raise the tension bar.



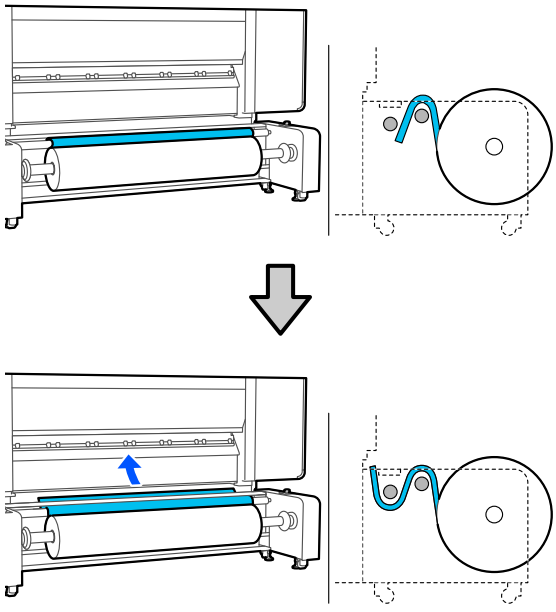
2 As you pull out the media, pass it through the rollers as shown in the illustration.

"Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models" on page 71

**Printable Side Out**

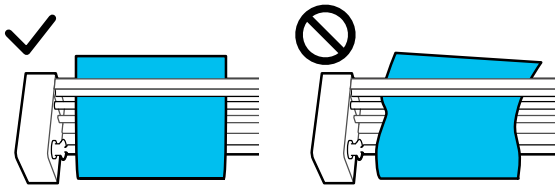


**Printable Side In**

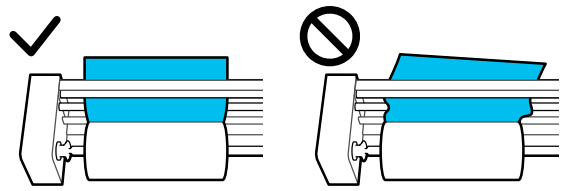


Pass the media straight through so it does not skew.

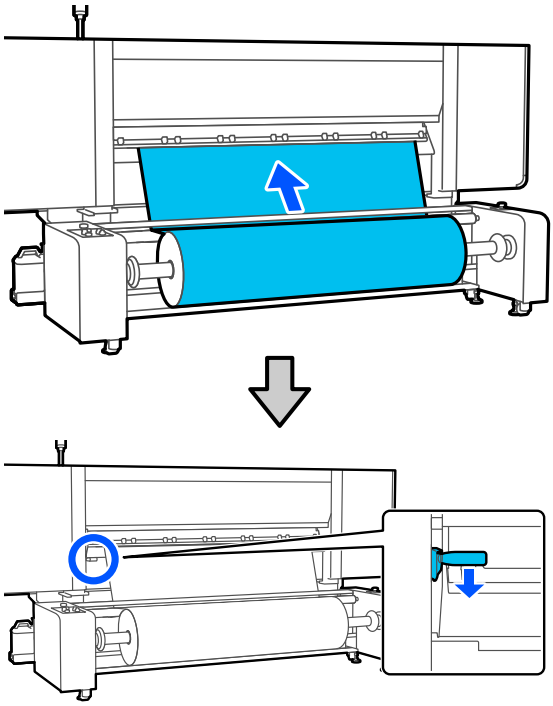
❏ Printable Side Out



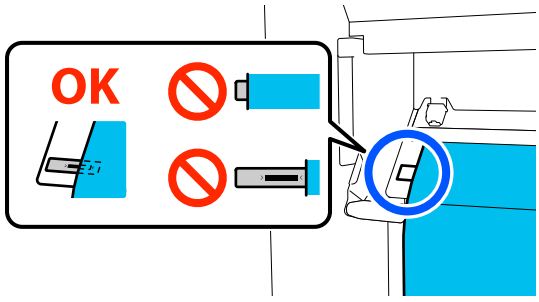
❏ Printable Side In



3 Insert the leading edge of the media approximately 20 cm into the opening, then lower the media loading lever.



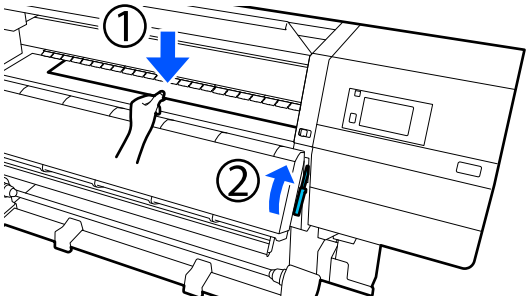
4 Confirm that the left edge of the media is within the range of the label's rectangle.




**Important:**

*If it is outside the range, do the procedure again from passing the media through the rollers.*

5 Move to the front side, and while holding the media to keep it from falling down to the back side, lift the media loading lever.




**Note:**

*You can change the media suction on the platen through the screen operation. Increasing the media suction lowers the possibility of media falling down.*

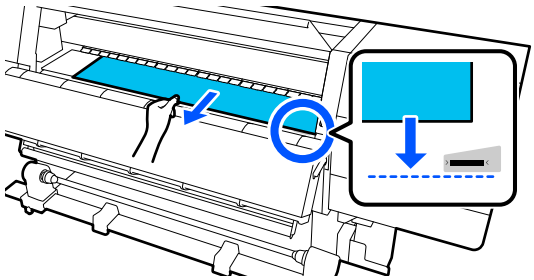
*If it is difficult to pull out the media in the following procedure, decrease the media suction. Change as required.*

6 Pull out the media to the following position according to the feeding method suitable for the media.

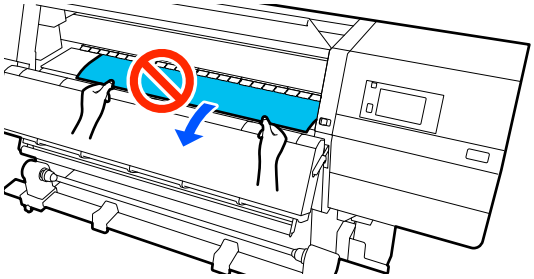
"Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models" on page 71

**Normal feeding procedure**

Pull out the media to the near edge of the label on the platen.
Hold the center of the media in one hand, and pull it straight out.



Do not pull the media with both hands. This could cause the media to skew or move around.



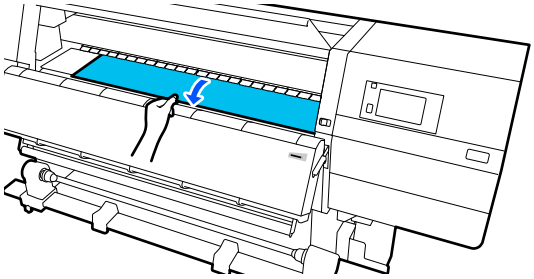
After pulling out the media, move on to the next step.

**Take-up feeding procedure**

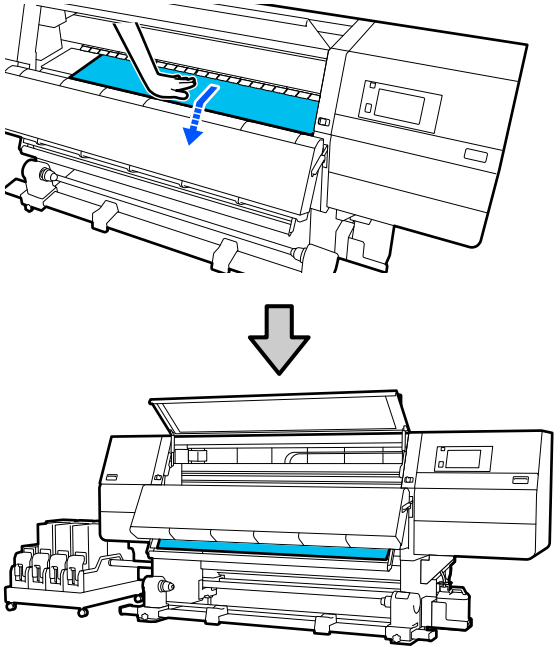
Pull out the media until it reaches the media holder.

While slackening the media, follow the steps below to pull out the media.

a. Hold the center of the media in one hand, pull it straight out, and insert its edge into the dryer.



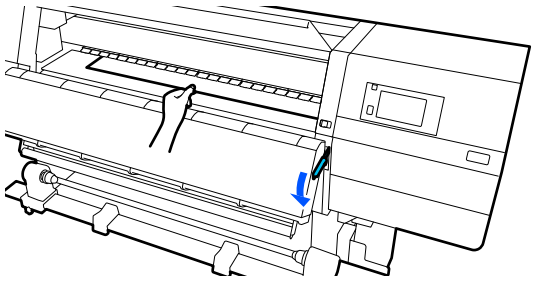
b. While holding the center of the media on the platen, pull it out by moving it toward yourself, until its edge comes out from the bottom of the dryer.



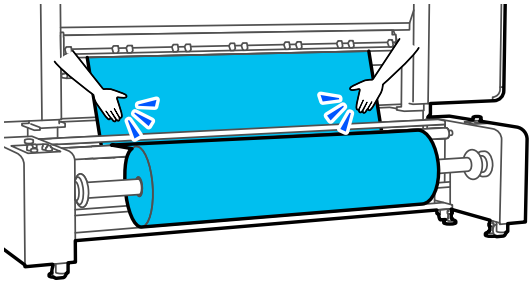
Then, attach the media to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit. While the front cover is open, see the following to attach media to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

7 Lower the media loading lever.



8 Move to the back side, tap lightly on both edges of the media, and check if there is a difference in tension between the left and right sides.



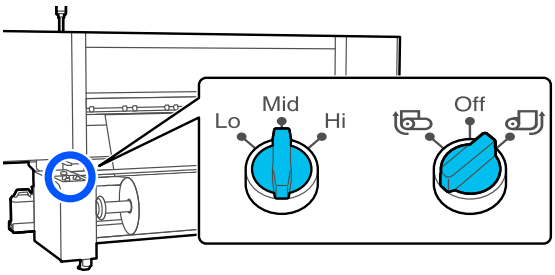
If there is a difference in tension, the media becomes loose.

From the front of the printer, raise the media loading lever, and correct the looseness in the media.

Once the looseness is corrected, lower the media loading lever.

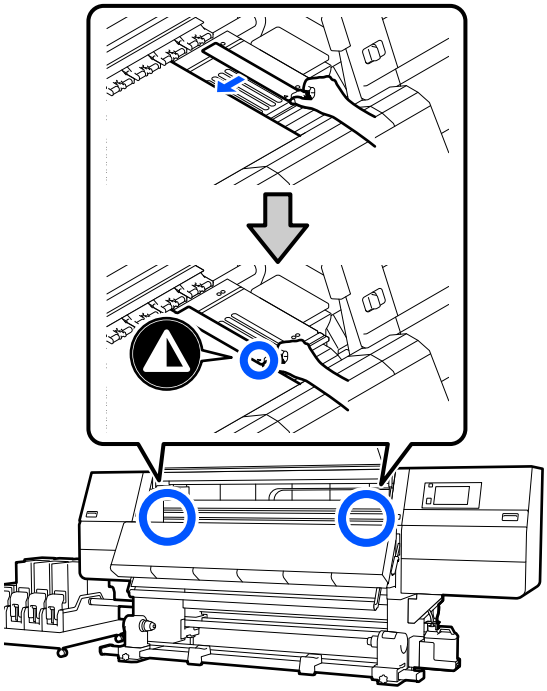
9 Confirm that the Auto switch and the load switch are set according to the loaded media.

The load switch is normally set to Mid. Switch to Hi to increase tension if wrinkles appear in the media during printing.




10 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

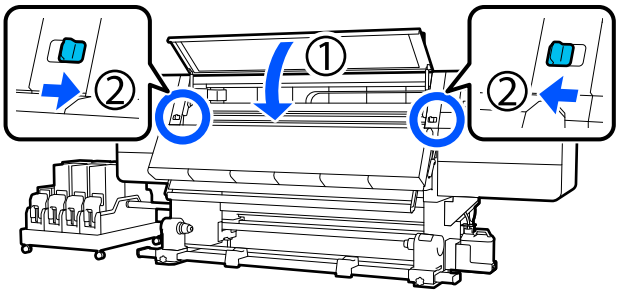
The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.



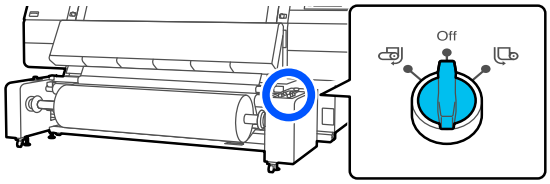
**Important:**

- ❏ *Do not use the media edge plates with media that is 0.4 mm (0.01 in.) or more thick. The media edge plates could touch and damage the print head.*
- ❏ *Always position the plates so that the edges of the media are at the centers of the triangular holes. Incorrect positioning causes banding (horizontal banding, tint unevenness, or stripes) during printing.*
- ❏ *Move the media edge plates to the left and right edges of the platen when they are not in use.*
- ❏ *Do not use the media edge plates if the sides of the printed media are smudged.*

11 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




12 Check that the Auto switch on the auto take-up reel unit is turned Off.




## Setting the media information

1 Set the media information on the screen, and press **OK**.

Do the following settings here.

- ❏ Media: Set the media to use for printing
- ❏ Media Length: Length of the loaded media
- ❏ Media Detection: How to detect the width of the media

**Media** is set in the following way.

**When there are no registered media settings for the loaded media**

First, select an unregistered number.

There is no Media Type set for an unregistered number, so the screen to select Media Type appears. Select the Media Type using the paper weight of the loaded media as a guideline as shown below. The paper weights of each Media Type shown in the screen are typical values.

| Media Type | Paperweight (g/m²) |
|---|---|
| Ultra-Thin | 39 or under |
| Thin | 40 to 56 |
| Med-Thick | 57 to 89 |
| Thick | 90 or over |

**When there are registered media settings/EMX file is downloaded and registered for the loaded media**

Choose a registered media number.

In **Media Detection**, set **Width Detection**. Normally, leave this **On**.

See the following for details about Media Detection.

"General Settings menu" on page 201

2 Press **OK**.

The printer starts detecting the loaded media and performing related operations.

3 Follow the on-screen instructions to forward the edge of the media to the given position as necessary.

# Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit

The Auto Take-up Reel Unit automatically takes up media as it is printed, improving the efficiency of unmanned operations.

You can check the procedure in a video on YouTube.

Epson Video Manuals

## Important points for correct take-up

Observe the following points for correct take-up of media.

- ❏ We recommend using a take-up roll core with the same width as the media. If a take-up roll core of a different width is used, the take-up roll core may bend, and the media will be taken up incorrectly.
- ❏ We recommend "printed side in" for the take-up of media. "Printed side out" may cause the media to move around and create a large misalignment with the roll. When take-up cannot be done correctly with "printed side out", do take-up using "printed side in".
- ❏ Media smaller than 36 inches wide may move around and be taken up incorrectly.
- ❏ Do not attach take-up roll cores like the ones shown in the following figure. The take-up tension will be uneven and the core will spin loosely. As a result, the paper cannot wind correctly, which may cause banding in the print results.

Edges are worn



Deformed



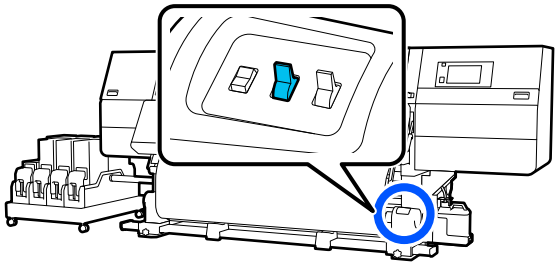
# Loading Media Into the Standard Type Auto Take-Up Reel Unit

## Necessary items

- ❏ Take-up roll core that is the same width as the media
- ❏ Commercially available adhesive tape

## Attaching the Roll Core

1 Set the Auto switch to Off.

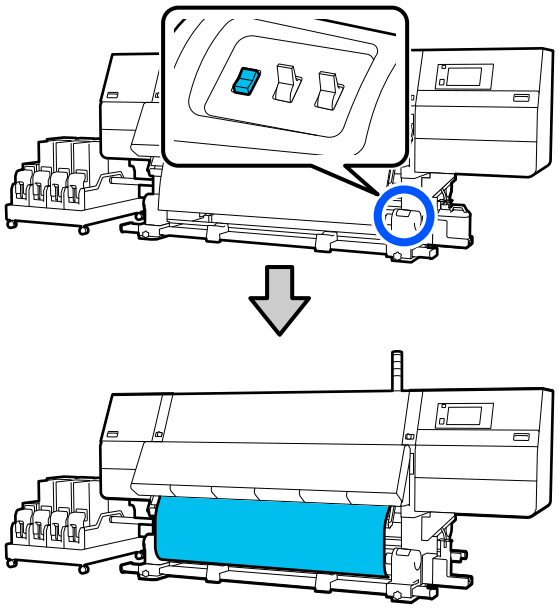


2 Confirm that the edge of the media is touching the media holder.

If not, follow the procedure below to have the edge of the media touch the media holder.

**Normal feeding procedure**

Hold down the near side of the media feed switch until the edge of the media reaches the media holder.



**Important:**

*Always press the media feed switch to feed the media. If the media is pulled by hand, the media may twist during take-up.*

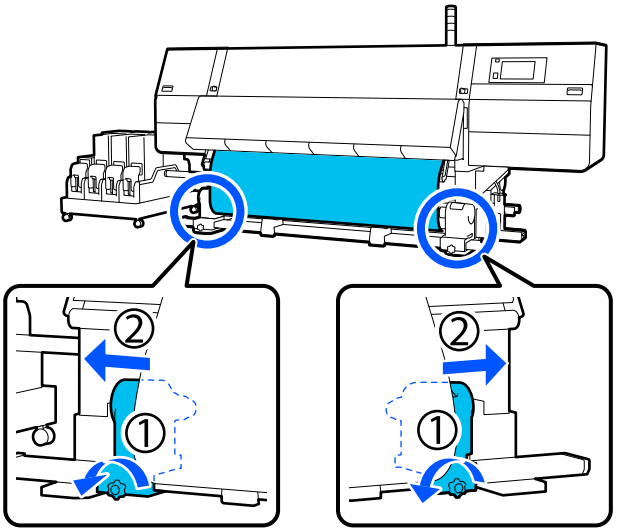
**Take-up feeding procedure**

Follow steps 3 to 5 in "Feeding media to the front" to pull out the media until its edge reaches the media holder.

"Feeding media to the front" on page 84

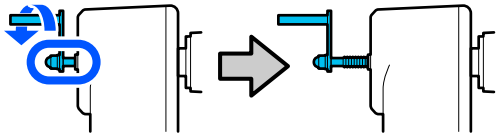
3 Loosen the media holder fixing screws on both sides and adjust the media holders so that the distance between the two is wider than the media.

If the roll supports are not positioned evenly, move them so that they are even.

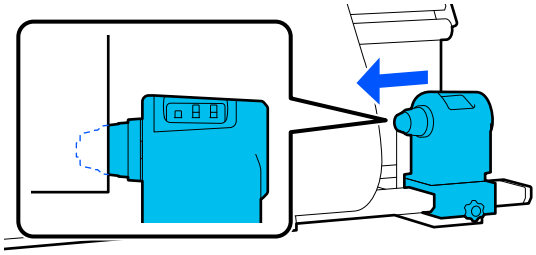



**Important:**

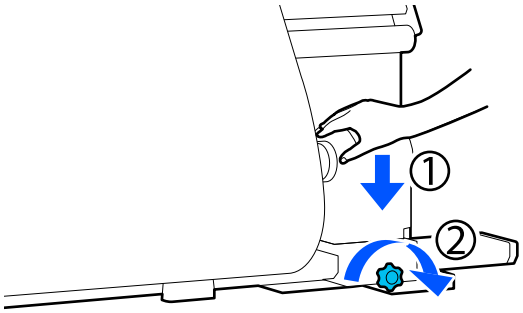
*If the left-side media holder handle's shaft is not visible, rotate the handle as shown in the illustration until it stops. The roll core cannot be properly loaded if the handle's shaft is not visible.*



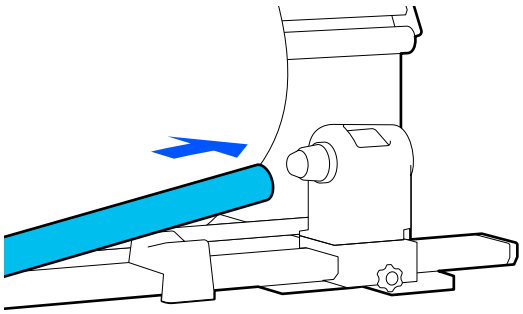
4 Align and move the right-side media holder to the right edge of the media.



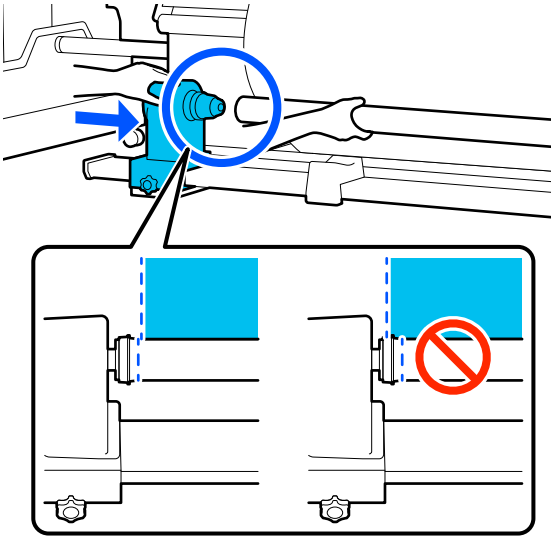
5 While pressing from the top of the media holder, tighten the fixing screw in place.




6 Insert the roll core onto the right-side media holder.



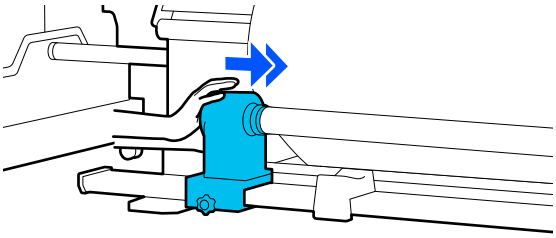
7 Check that the left-side media holder is fully inserted into the roll core and that the roll core and edges of the media are not misaligned.



**Important:**

*If the edges of the media are misaligned, the media cannot be taken up correctly. If the edges are misaligned, loosen the fixing screw for the right-side media holder, and then restart from Step 4.*

8 To ensure that the media holder is sufficiently inserted into the roll core, push the top of the media holder towards the end of the roll two times.



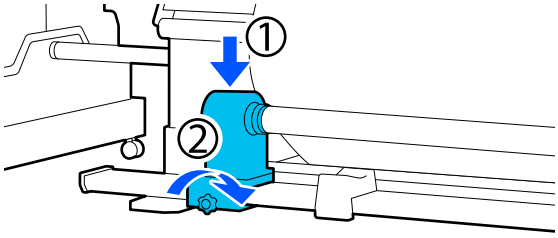
**Important:**

*If the media holder is inserted into the roll core insufficiently, media is not fed correctly during printing because of slippage between the media holder and roll core.*

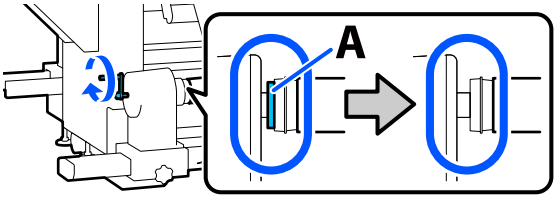
*This may cause banding in the print results.*

9 While pressing from the top of the media holder, tighten the fixing screw.

Tighten it so the media holder does not move.




10 Rotate the handle until part A in the illustration below is fully inserted.



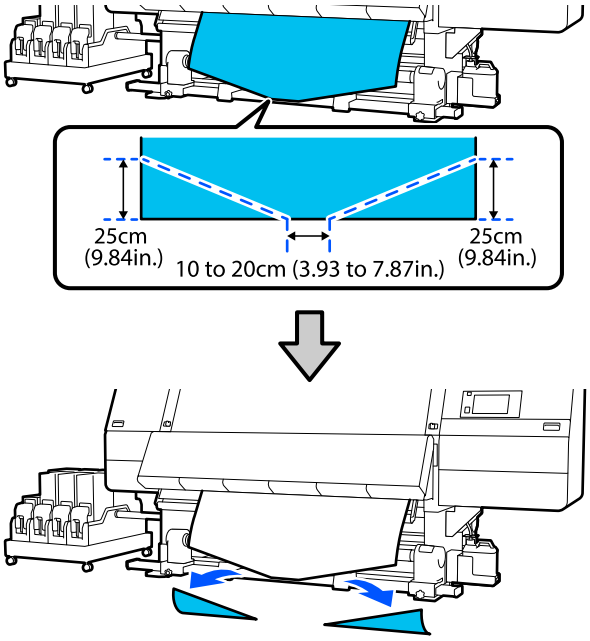

**Important:**

*Once part A is hidden, do not turn the handle any further. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the media holder.*

*If part A is still visible even after the handle has been turned fully, rewind the handle. Loosen the media holder screw on the right side, and then restart from Step 5.*

11 Leave a 10 to 20 cm (3.93 to 7.87 in.) wide section in the center of the media, and cut at least 25 cm (9.84 in.) in height from the left and right corners of the media.

Cutting the media prevents feeding problems, such as the left and right corners of media being folded and caught at the start of take-up.




Next, see the following according to the procedure.

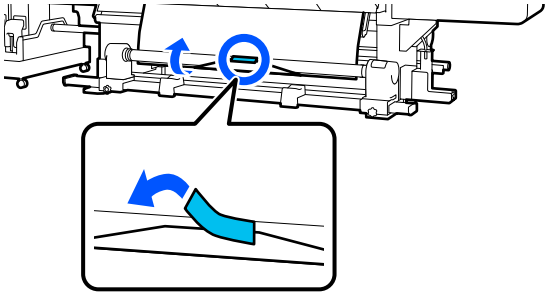
Normal feeding procedure “Loading using the normal feeding procedure” on page 103

Take-up feeding procedure “Loading using the take-up feeding procedure” on page 105

## Loading using the normal feeding procedure

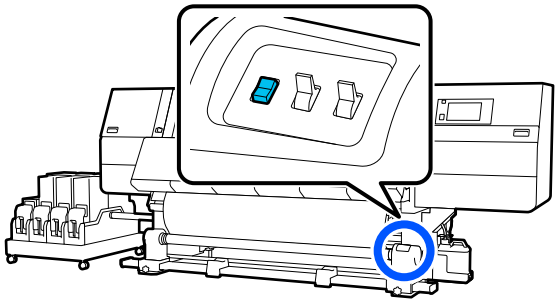
### *Printed side in*

1 While pulling the center of the media straight down, wrap it around the roll core from back to front, and affix it using commercially available adhesive tape.

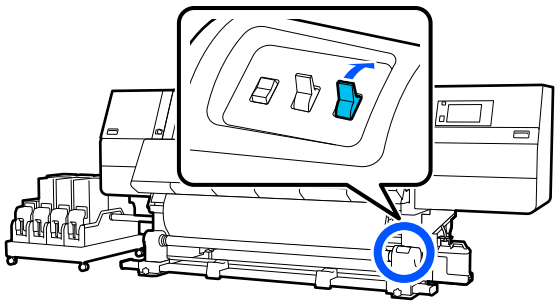


> ***Important:***
> *Affix the media to the take-up roll core with the media pulled tightly. If media is affixed loosely, the media may move around during take-up.*

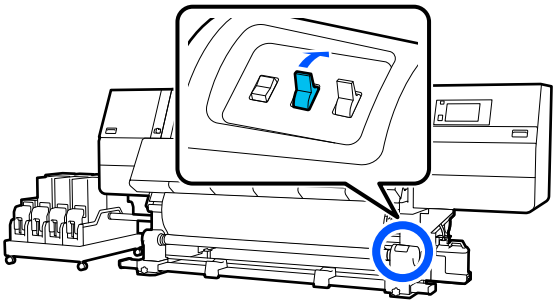
2 Hold down the near side of the media feed switch to feed enough media for a single wrap around the take-up roll core.



3 Hold down the Manual switch on the side to take-up the media for a single wrap around the core.

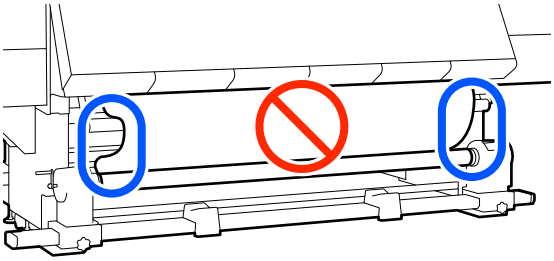


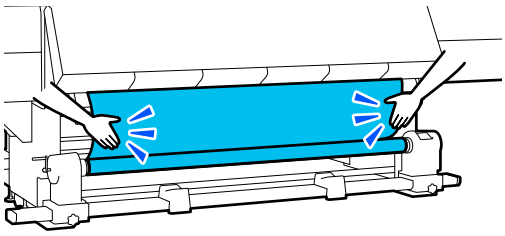
4 Flip the Auto switch to .



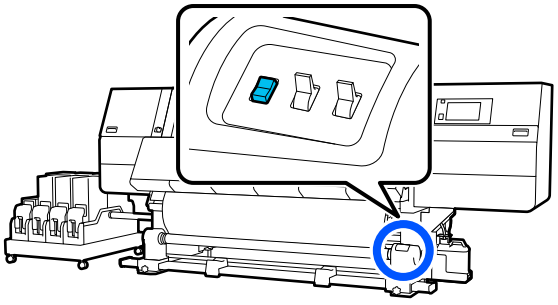
5 Confirm that the media is attached without any looseness.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different in the areas shown in the illustration below, the media will not be taken up correctly. When one side is loose, restart the procedure from Step 1.



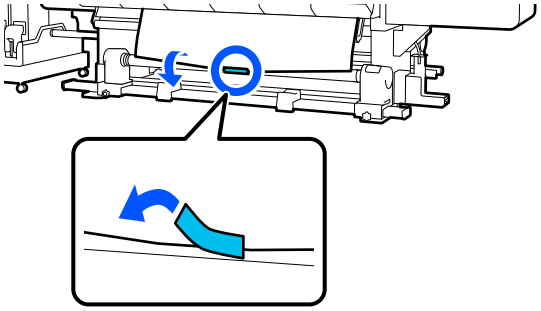
> ***Note:***
> *You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the illustration below.*
>
> 

6 Hold down the near side of the media feed switch until both edges of the media are taken up and wrap around the core once or twice.



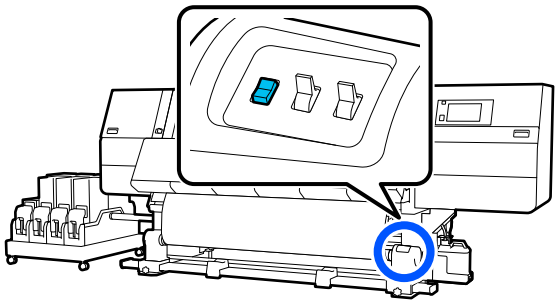
### *Printed side out*

1 While pulling the center section of the media straight down, affix the media to the take up roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.

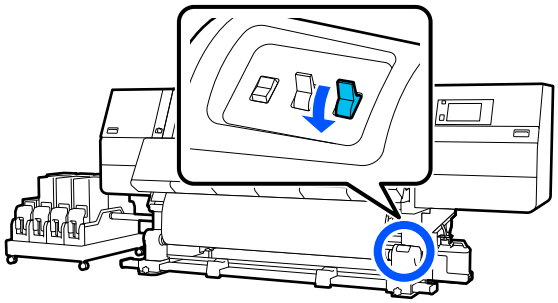


> **Important:**
> *Affix the media to the take-up roll core with the media pulled tightly. If media is affixed loosely, the media may move around during take-up.*

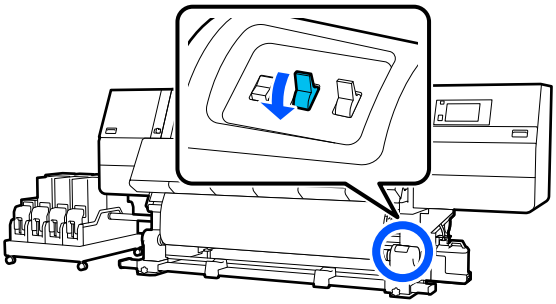
2 Hold down the near side of the media feed switch to feed enough media for a single wrap around the take-up roll core.



3 Hold down the Manual switch on the side to take-up the media for a single wrap around the core.

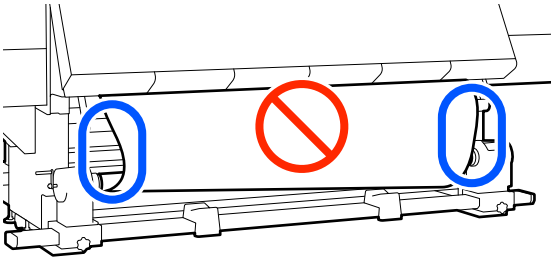


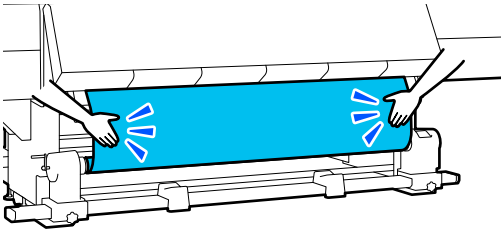
4 Flip the Auto switch to .



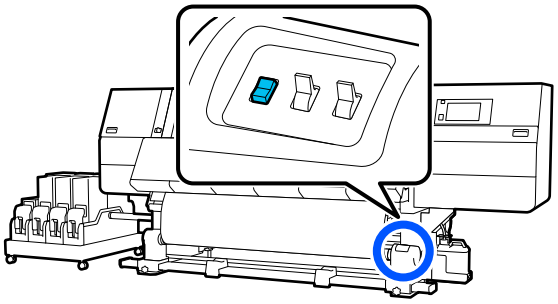
5 Confirm that the media is attached without any looseness.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different in the areas shown in the illustration below, the media will not be taken up correctly. When one side is loose, restart the procedure from Step 1.



> **Note:**
> *You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the illustration below.*
>
> 

6 Hold down the near side of the media feed switch until both edges of the media are taken up and wrap around the core once or twice.

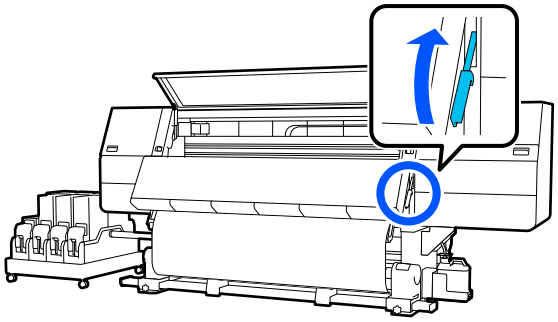


## Loading using the take-up feeding procedure

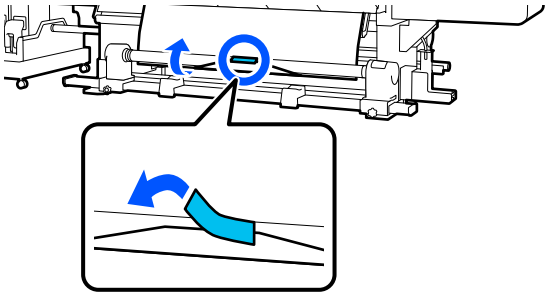
### *Printed side in*

1 Confirm that the front cover is open.

2 Raise the media loading lever.



3 While pulling the center of the media straight down, wrap it around the roll core from back to front, and affix it using commercially available adhesive tape.

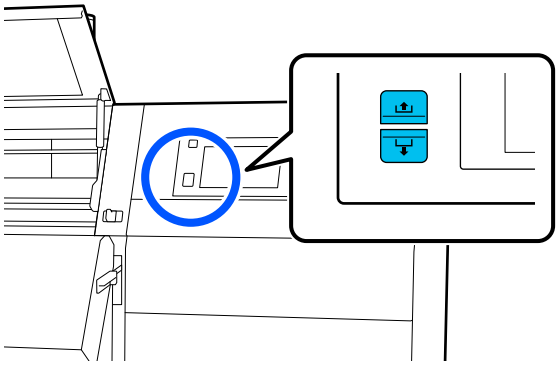


> **Important:**
> *Affix the media to the take-up roll core with the media pulled tightly. If media is affixed loosely, the media may move around during take-up.*

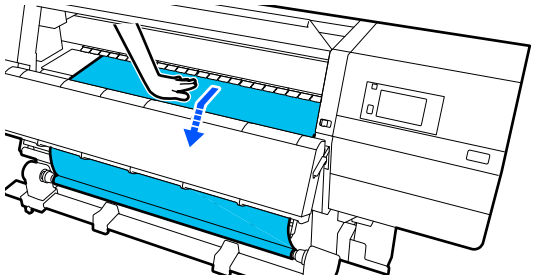
4 Repeat the following procedure and take-up the media for a double wrap around the roll core.

a. Hold the media feed button pressed to slightly slacken the media at the back side.

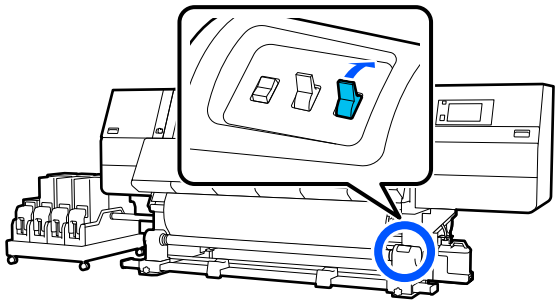
When loading media, press ↓ for printable side out, and press ↑ for printable side in.



b. While holding the center of the media on the platen, pull it out by moving it toward yourself, and slacken the media at the front.

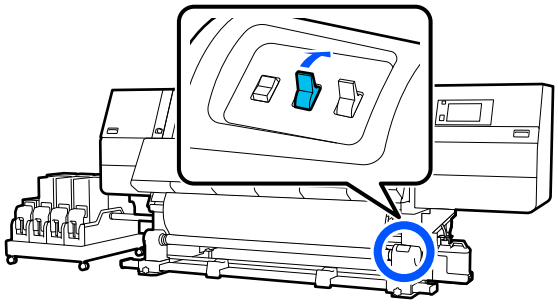


c. Hold down the Manual switch on the ↻ side to take-up the slack media around the core.

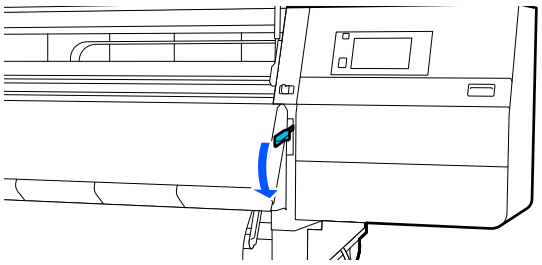


> **Important:**
> *When taking-up the media around the core, do take-up of only the slackened part. If you do take-up without slackening, it will cause problems, such as wrinkles.*

5 Flip the Auto switch to .



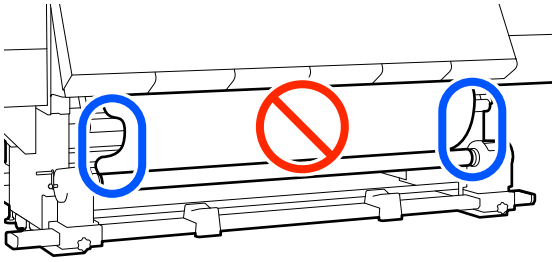
6 Lower the media loading lever.



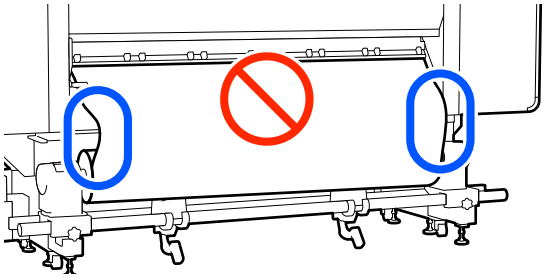
7 Confirm that the media is attached without looseness on the front and back sides.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different in the areas shown in the illustration below, the media will not be taken up correctly. When one side is loose, restart the procedure from Step 2.

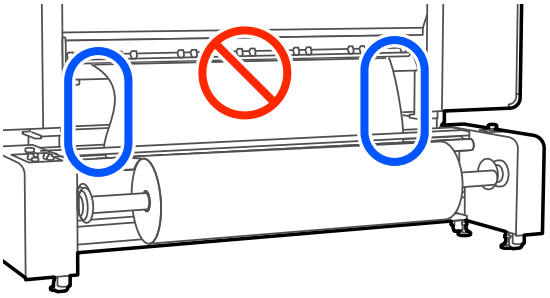
Front side



Back side (Standard type Media Feeding Unit)

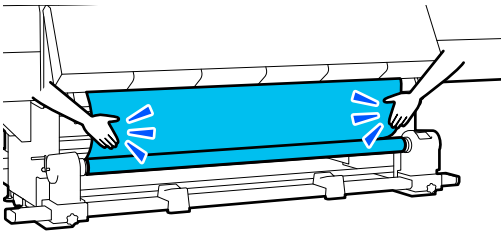


Back side (Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit)

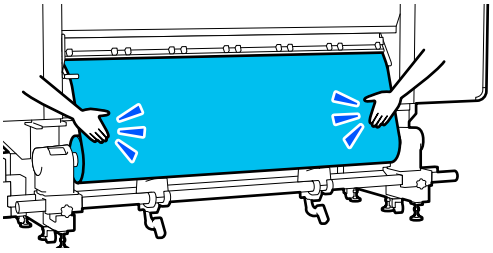


***Note:***
*You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the illustration below.*

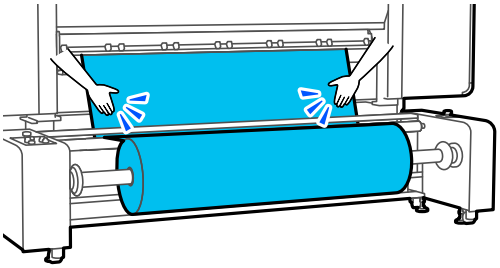
*Front side*



*Back side (Standard type Media Feeding Unit)*

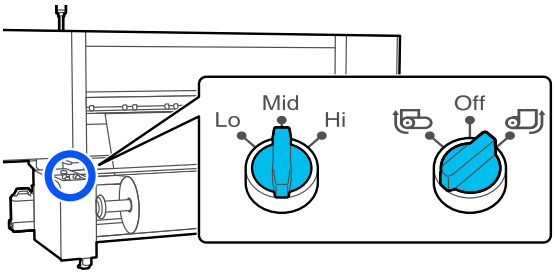


*Back side (Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit)*



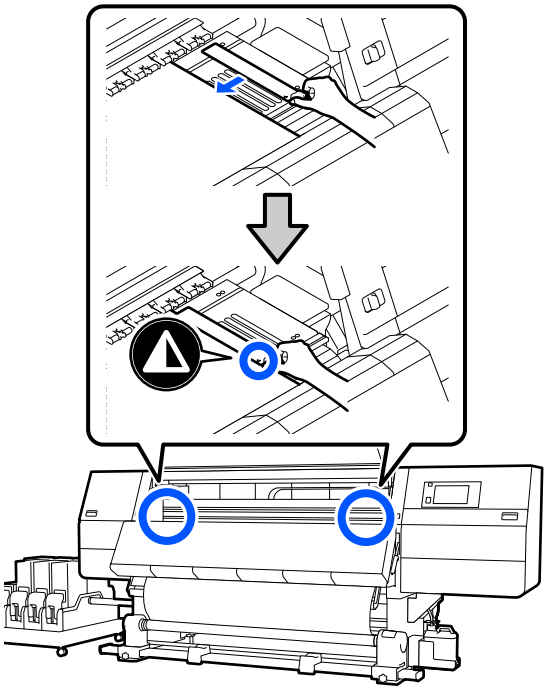
8 If you are using the large capacity type of media feeding unit, check that the Auto switch and the load switch are set according to the loaded media.

The load switch is normally set to Mid. Switch to Hi to increase tension if wrinkles appear in the media during printing.

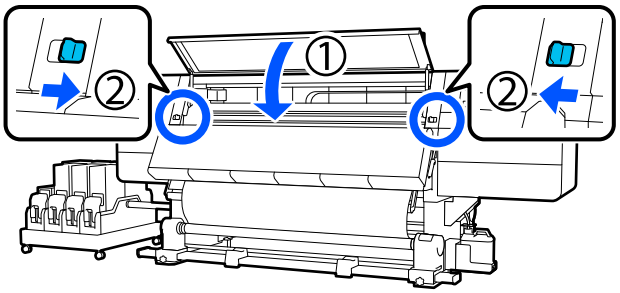



9 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.



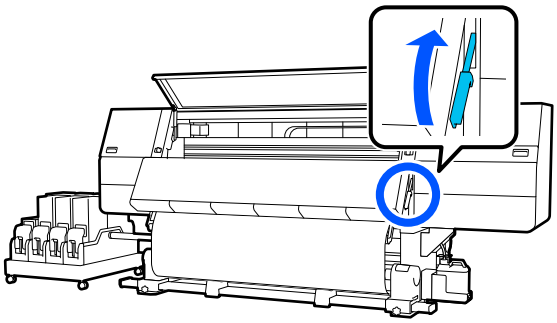
10 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.



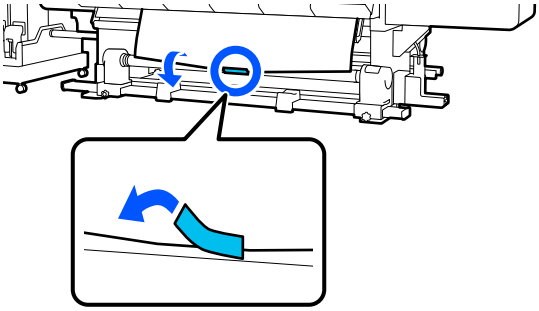

### *Printed side out*

1 Confirm that the front cover is open.

2 Raise the media loading lever.



3 While pulling the center section of the media straight down, affix the media to the take up roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.



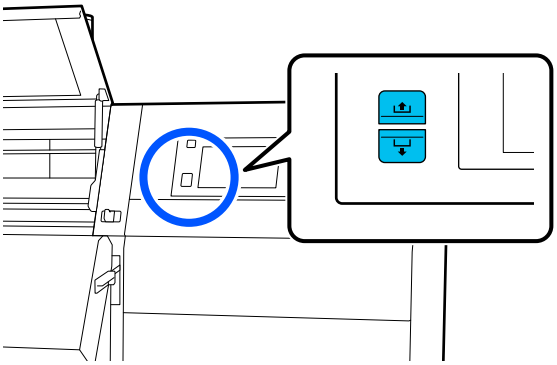
**Important:**

*Affix the media to the take-up roll core with the media pulled tightly. If media is affixed loosely, the media may move around during take-up.*

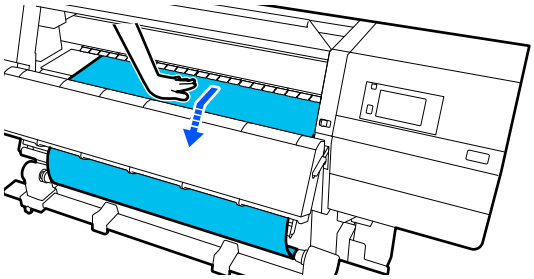
**4** Repeat the following procedure and take-up the media for a double wrap around the roll core.

a. Hold the media feed button pressed to slightly slacken the media at the back side.

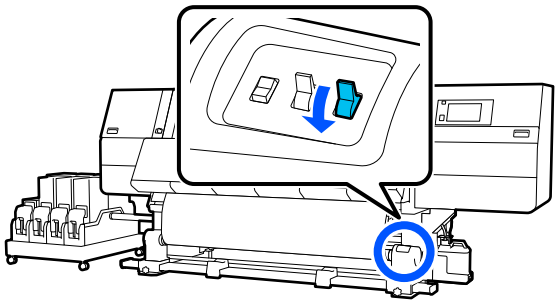
When loading media, press for printable side out, and press for printable side in.



b. While holding the center of the media on the platen, pull it out by moving it toward yourself, and slacken the media at the front.

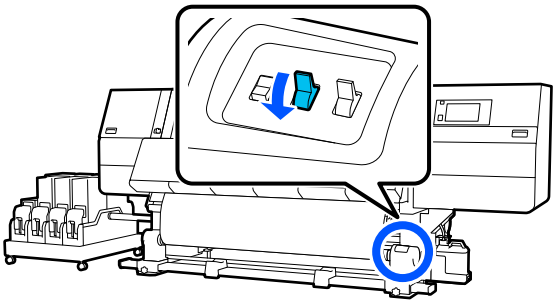


c. Hold down the Manual switch on the side to take-up the slack media around the core.

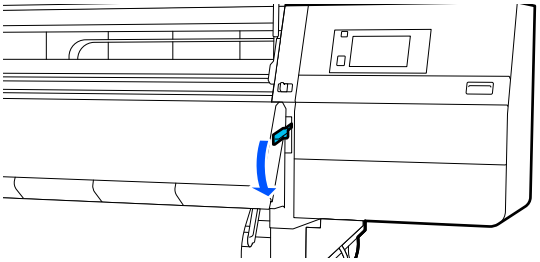


> ***Important:***
>
> *When taking-up the media around the core, do take-up of only the slackened part. If you do take-up without slackening, it will cause problems, such as wrinkles.*

**5** Flip the Auto switch to .



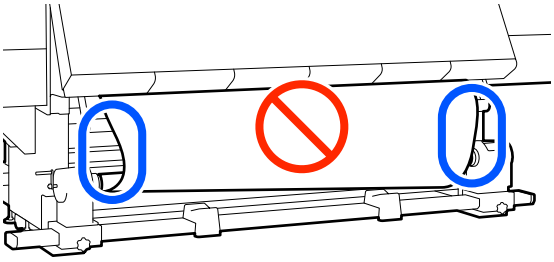
**6** Lower the media loading lever.



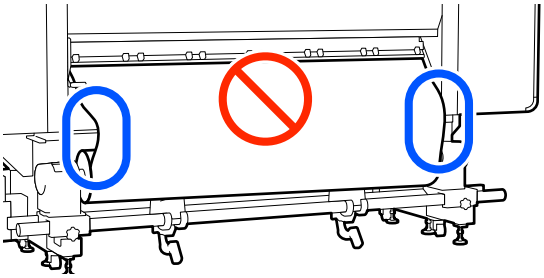
**7** Confirm that the media is attached without looseness on the front and back sides.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different in the areas shown in the illustration below, the media will not be taken up correctly. When one side is loose, restart the procedure from Step 2.

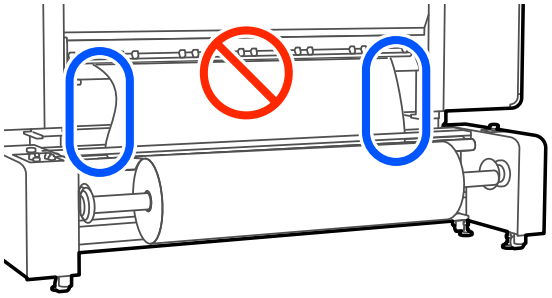
Front side



Back side (Standard type Media Feeding Unit)

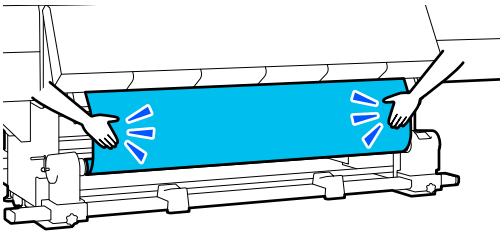


Back side (Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit)

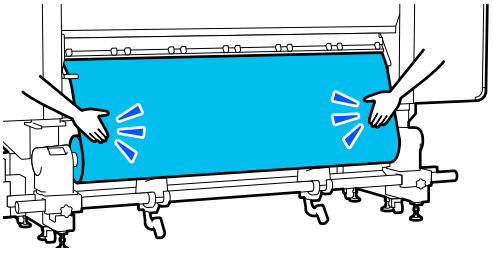


***Note:***
*You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the illustration below.*

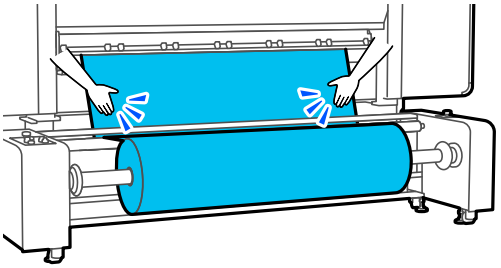
*Front side*



*Back side (Standard type Media Feeding Unit)*

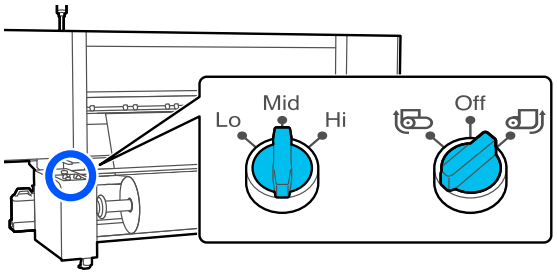


*Back side (Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit)*



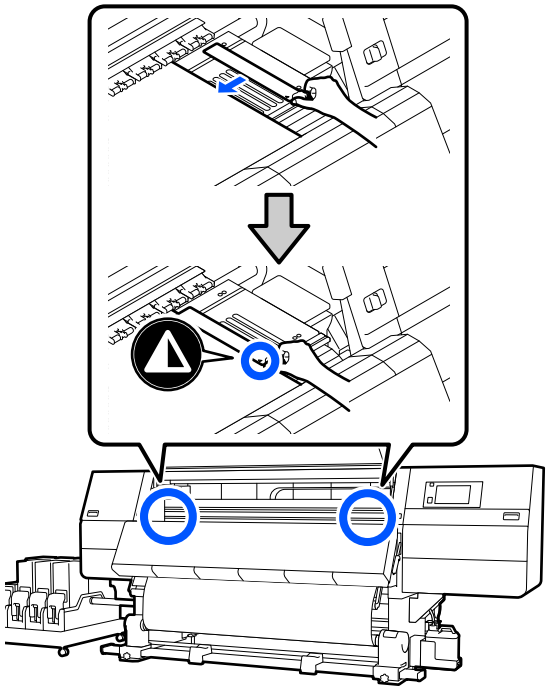
8 If you are using the large capacity type of media feeding unit, check that the Auto switch and the load switch are set according to the loaded media.

The load switch is normally set to Mid. Switch to Hi to increase tension if wrinkles appear in the media during printing.

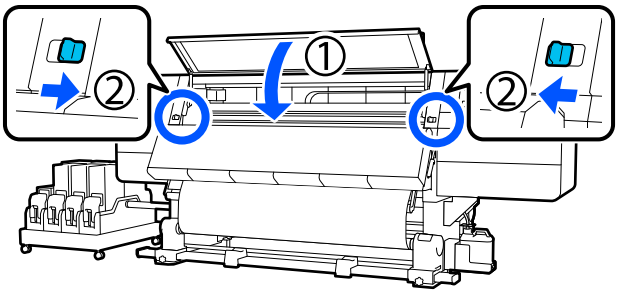



9 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.



10 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




### *Setting the media information*

1 Set the media information on the screen, and press **OK**.

Do the following settings here.

- ❏ Media: Set the media to use for printing
- ❏ Roll Winding Direction: How to wind the loaded media
- ❏ Media Length: Length of the loaded media
- ❏ Media Detection: How to detect the width of the media

**Media** is set in the following way.

**When there are no registered media settings for the loaded media**

First, select an unregistered number.

There is no Media Type set for an unregistered number, so the screen to select Media Type appears. Select the Media Type using the paper weight of the loaded media as a guideline as shown below. The paper weights of each Media Type shown in the screen are typical values.

| Media Type | Paperweight (g/m²) |
|---|---|
| Ultra-Thin | 39 or under |
| Thin | 40 to 56 |
| Med-Thick | 57 to 89 |
| Thick | 90 or over |

**When there are registered media settings/EMX file is downloaded and registered for the loaded media**

Choose a registered media number.

In **Media Detection**, set **Width Detection**. Normally, leave this **On**.

See the following for details about Media Detection.

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

2 Press **OK**.

The printer starts detecting the loaded media and performing related operations.

## Loading Media Into the Large Capacity Type Auto Take-Up Reel Unit

We recommend that two people perform the work.

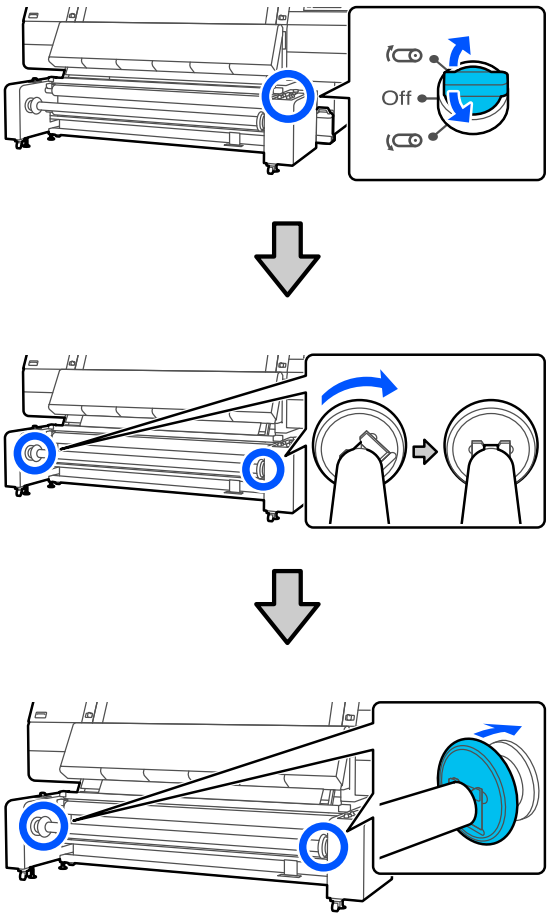
The work is easier to do if they stand so one is on the left and the other on the right as they pass the media through the rollers.

### Necessary items

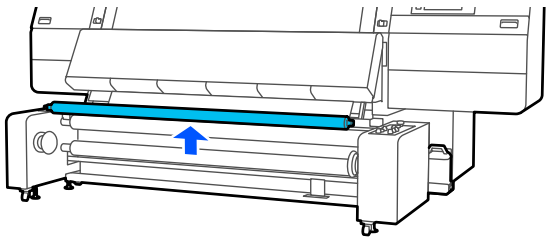
- ❏ Air compressor
- ❏ Take-up roll core that is the same width as the media
- ❏ Commercially available adhesive tape
- ❏ Hex wrench (large) and hex wrench (small) (included only with models with type B gap adjustment screws)

## Preparing the roll core

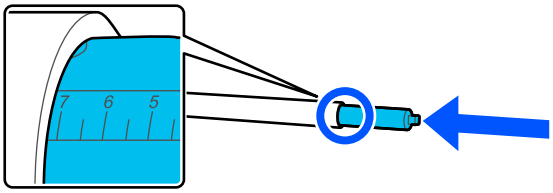
1 Use the Manual switch to rotate the spindle to face as shown in the illustration, then lower the handles on both sides outward.



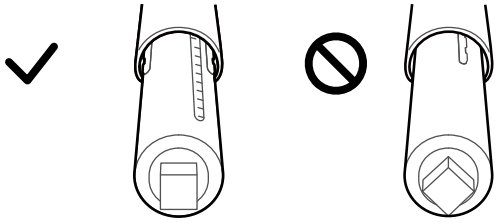

2 Remove the spindle.



3 Insert the spindle into the paper core by up to about 7 cm on the scale of the spindle.




Face the spindle as shown in the illustration.



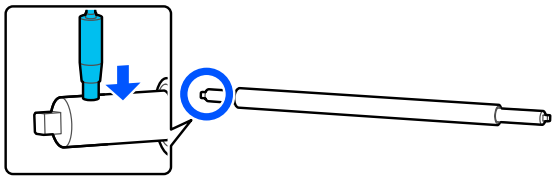
After inserting the spindle, follow the instructions below according to your model.

- ❏ Models requiring gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle
  - If the air compressor is available near the printer: Go to the next section, "Attaching the roll core and closing the gaps at ends of the spindle".
  - If the air compressor is not available near the printer: Go to the next step.
- ❏ For models that do not require gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle: Go to the next step.

4 If the air compressor is not near the printer or if gap adjustment at the ends of the spindle is not required, put air into the spindle at this point to secure the roll core.

Put air into the spindle from the valve until the air stops going in.

If you have an air compressor handy, there is no need to supply air at this point as you will add air in a later step.



## Attaching the roll core and closing the gaps at the ends of the spindle

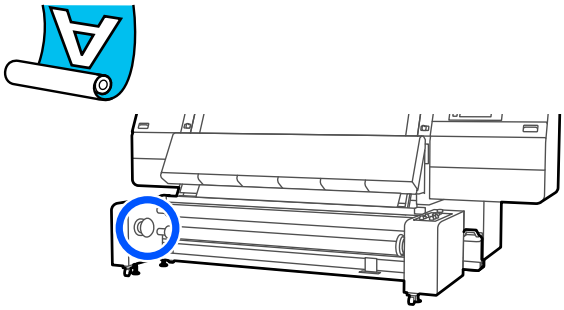
1 Confirm the side to which the spindle should be moved.

After placing the spindle on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit in a later step, move the spindle to either the left or right side to eliminate any gap at the end of the spindle.

The side to which the spindle is moved depends on the direction in which the media is taken up.

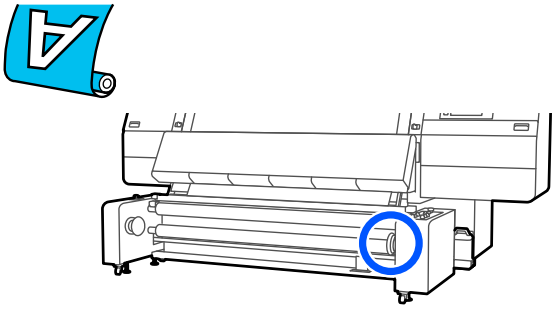
**Printed side in**

Move the spindle to the left side toward the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.



**Printed side out**

Move the spindle to the right side toward the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

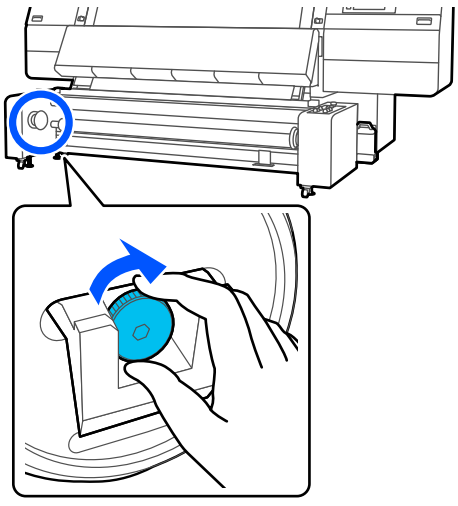


2 Turn the screw clockwise inside the handle on the side to which the spindle is to be moved until it stops.

The following is an example of taking up printed media with the printed side in.

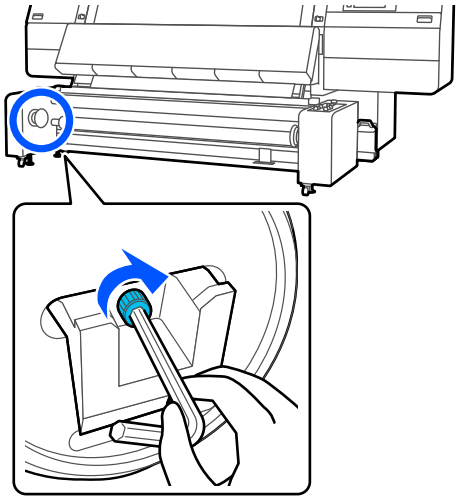
**Type A gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw by hand.



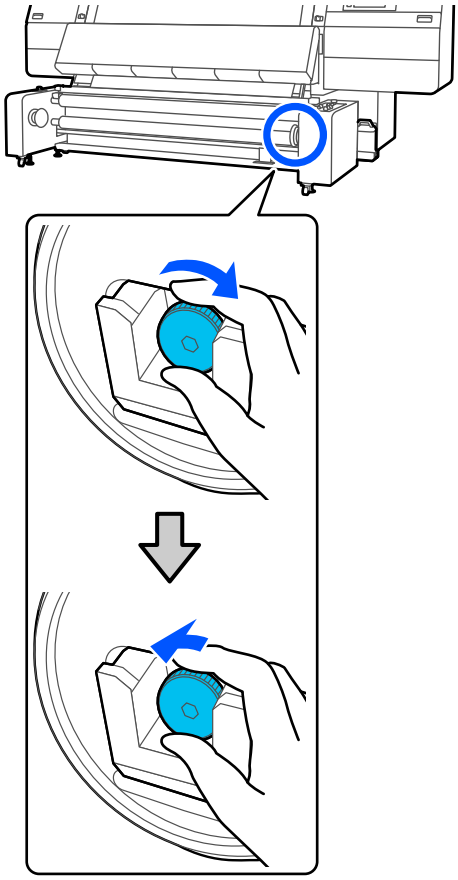
**Type B gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw using the hex wrench (large).

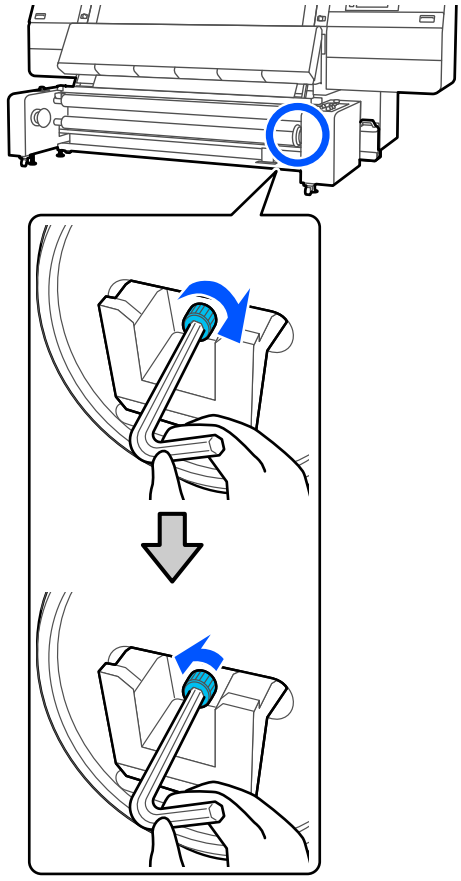


3 Turn the screw clockwise inside the handle on the opposite side until it stops, then loosen it slightly.

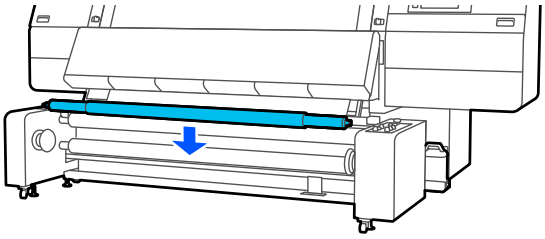
**Type A gap adjustment screw**



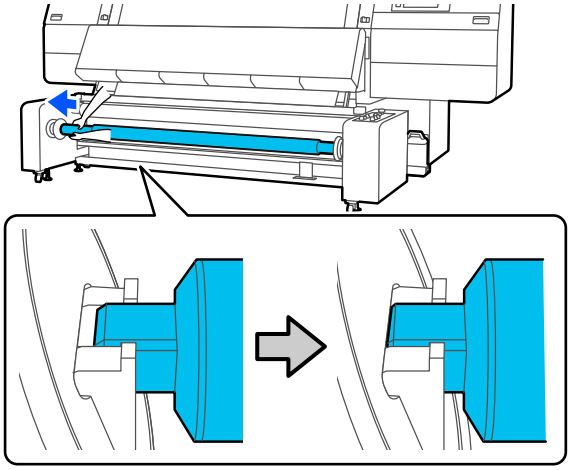
**Type B gap adjustment screw**



4 Put the spindle in the socket.



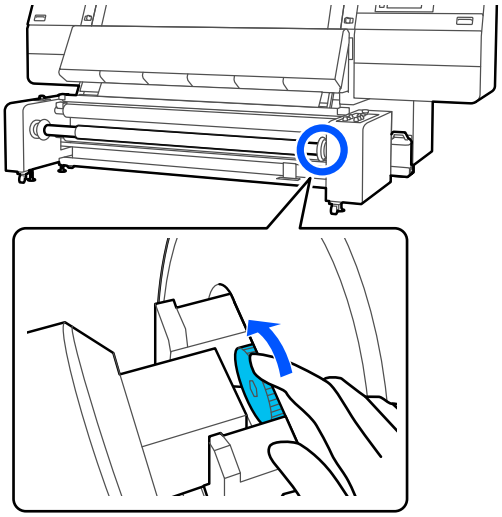
5 Slide the spindle by hand until the edge of the spindle touches the screw inside the handle.



6 Turn the screw counterclockwise inside the handle on the side opposite to where the spindle has been moved until the screw touches the edge of the spindle.

**Type A gap adjustment screw**

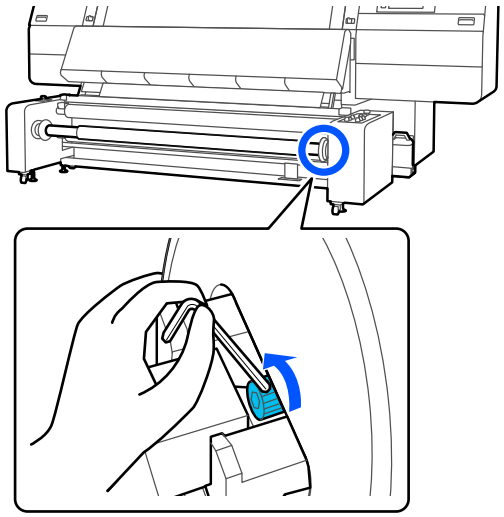
Turn the screw by hand.



**Type B gap adjustment screw**

The side of the screw head has a knurled, non-slip texture with fine ridges and grooves.

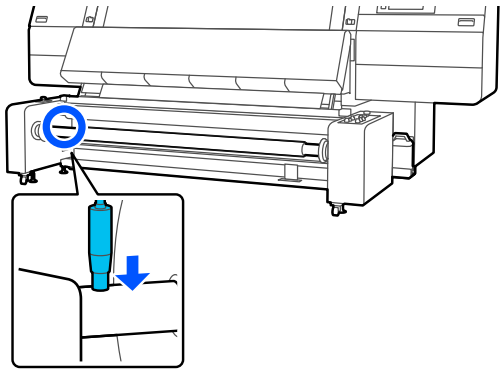
Insert a hex wrench into the gap between the handle and the spindle, and slowly turn the screw while hooking the tip of the hex wrench onto the side of the screw head.



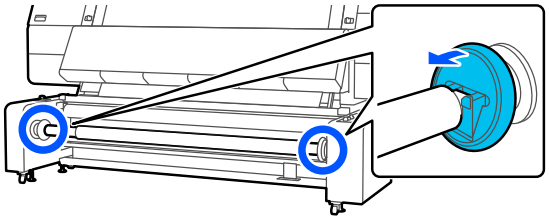
After turning the screw, proceed to step 8 if air has already been put into the spindle to secure the roll core.

7 Put air into the spindle from the valve until the air stops going in.

If air has already been put into the spindle to secure the roll core, this procedure is not necessary.



8 Raise the handles on both sides.

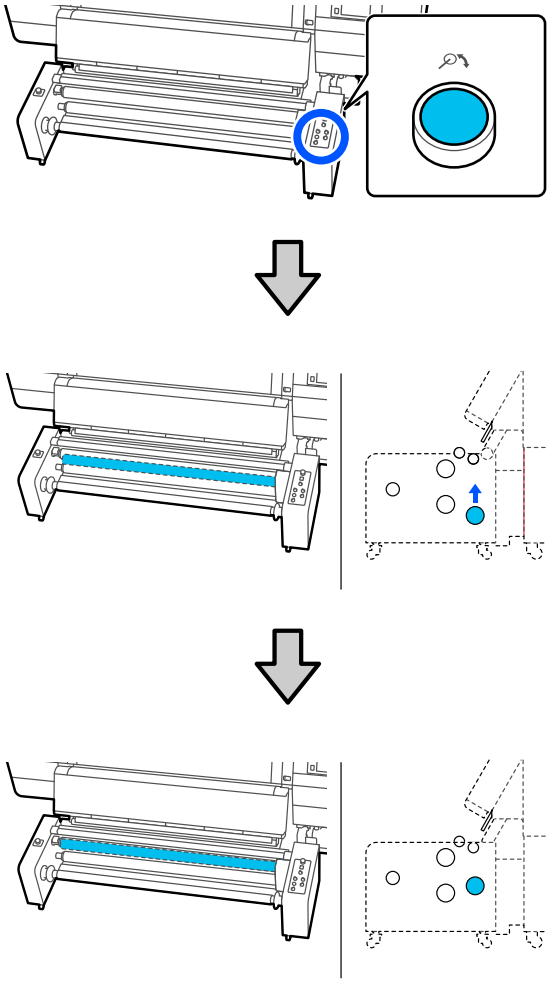


## Loading using the normal feeding procedure

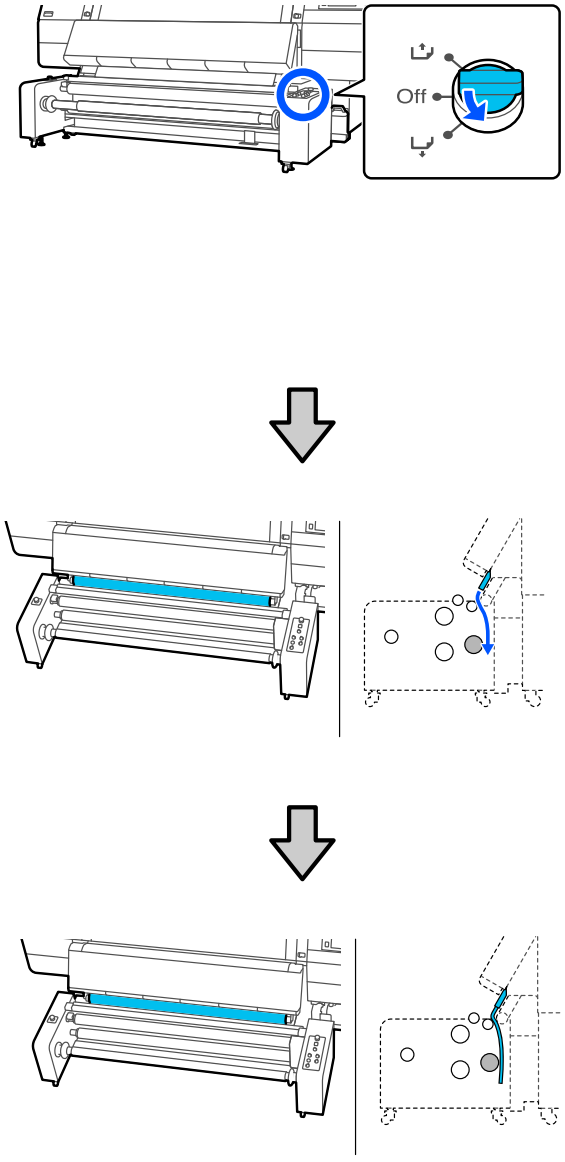
### *Feeding media to the roll core*

1 Press the Release button and raise the tension bar.

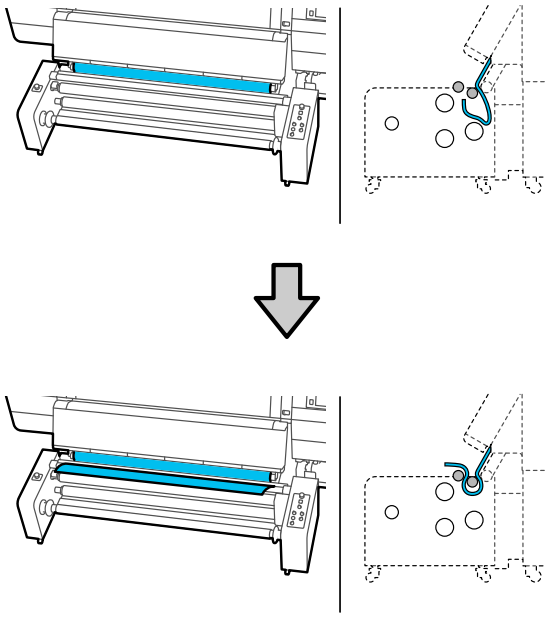
The tension bar rises to a medium height.



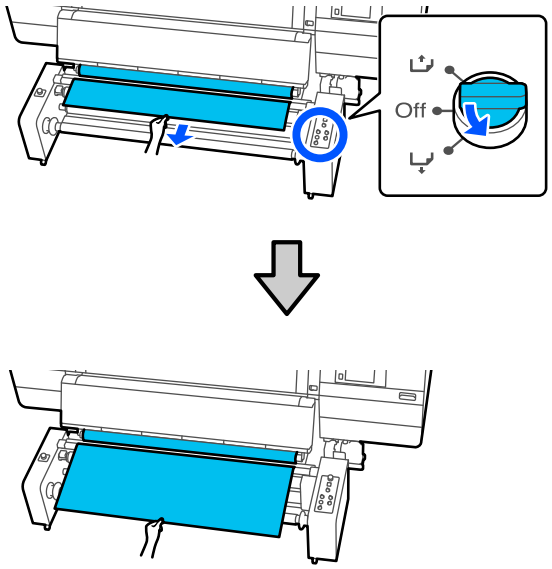
2 Use the media feed switch to feed the media until the leading edge is below the tension bar.



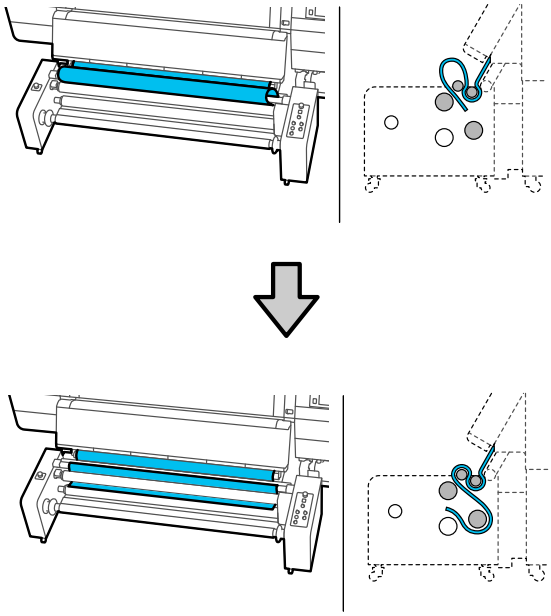

3 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



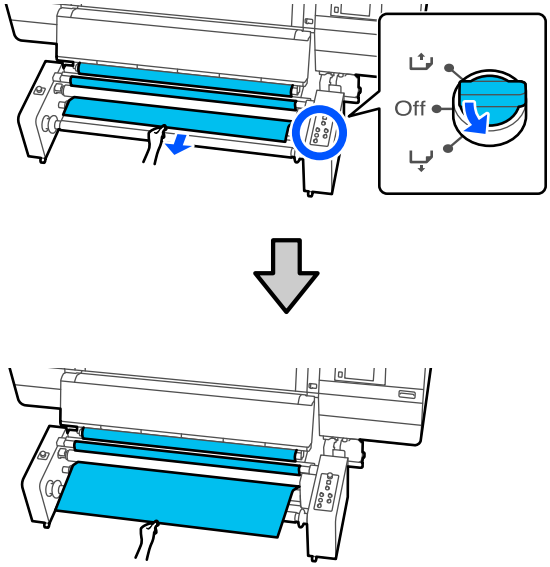
4 Hold the leading edge of the media and use the media feed switch to feed the media until it is in front of the spindle.



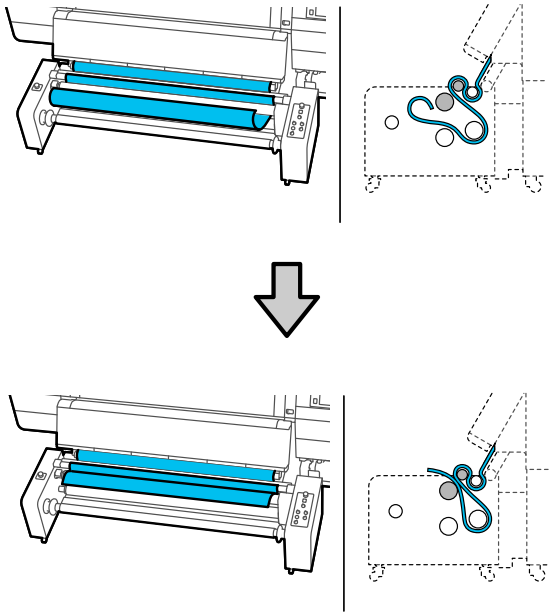
5 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



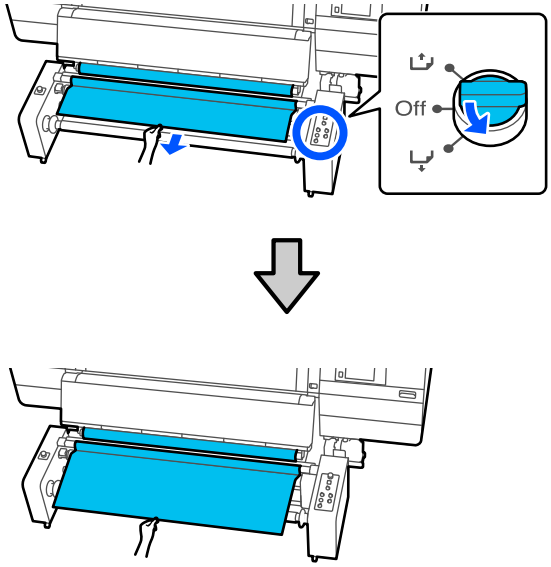
6 Hold the leading edge of the media and use the media feed switch to feed the media until it is in front of the spindle.



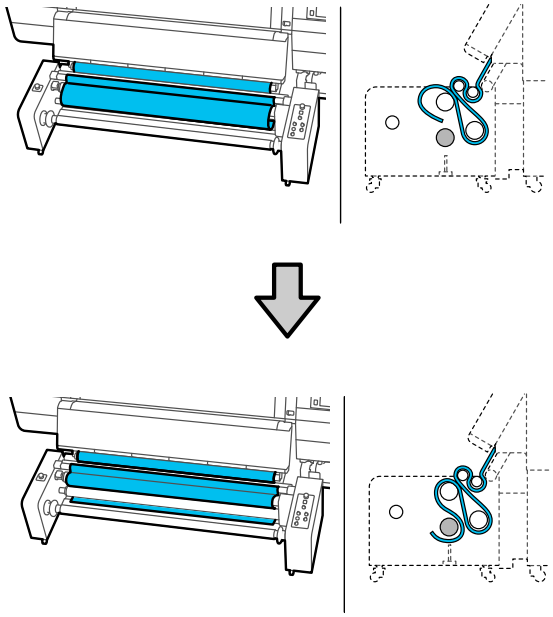

7 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



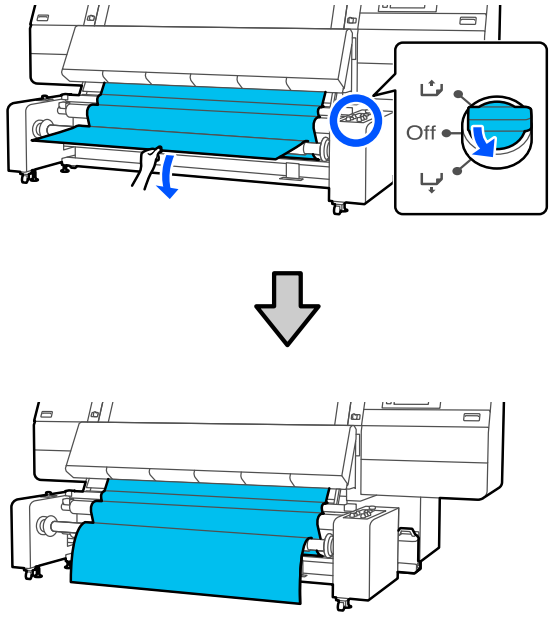
8 Hold the leading edge of the media and use the media feed switch to feed the media until it is in front of the spindle.



**9** Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.

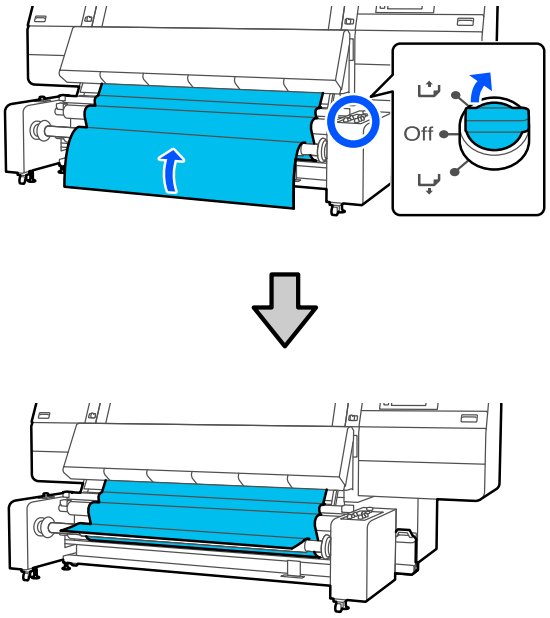


**10** Hold the leading edge of the media and use the media feed switch to feed the media until the leading edge reaches the floor.




**11** Use the media feed switch to take up the media until the leading edge is in front of the spindle.

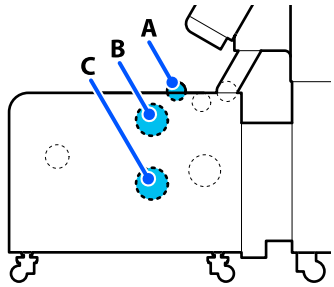
This operation prevents the media from skewing.



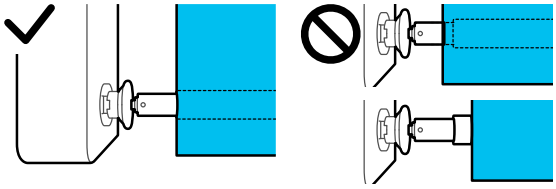

***Note:***

*If you cannot take-up the media by operating the switch, you can create a little slack in the media around the rollers to take it up.*

*Feed the media further by the amount needed to create slack, so that it is slack around rollers A, B, and C as shown in the illustration.*



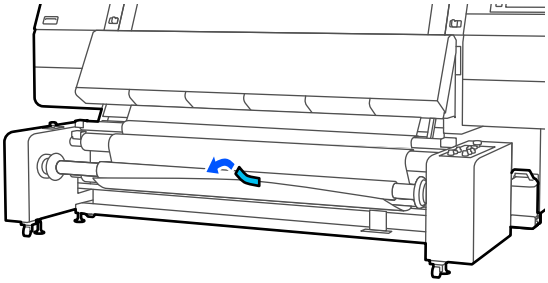

**12** Check that the roll core and the edge of the media are aligned.



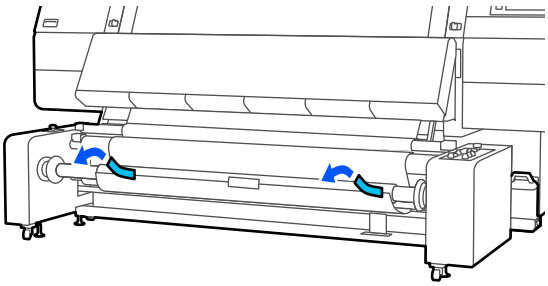
> **Important:**
> *If the edges of the media are misaligned, the media cannot be taken up correctly. If it is misaligned, start again from the procedure for attaching the spindle to the roll core.*

### *Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side in*

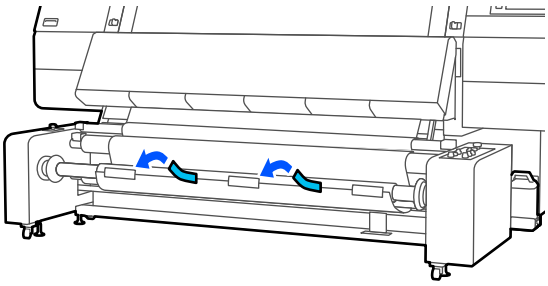
1 Wrap the media from the back of the roll core to the front, and while pulling the center section of the leading edge of the media, affix it to the roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.



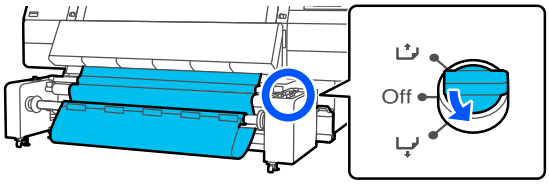
2 Attach the left and right ends.



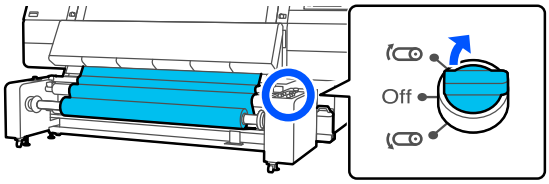
3 Attach the section between the center and the left and right ends.



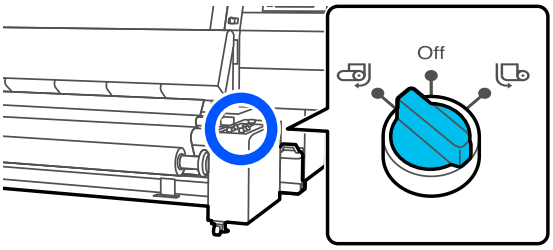
4 Use the media feed switch to feed enough media for approximately two wraps around the take-up roll core.




5 Hold down the Manual switch on the side to take-up the slack media around the core.



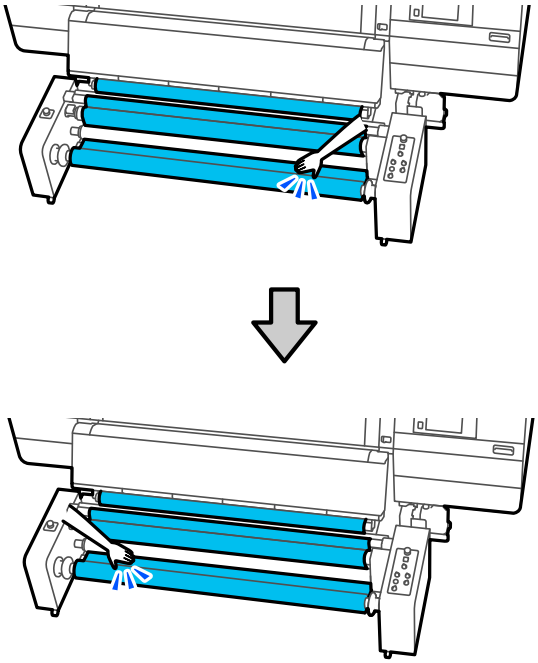

6 Check that the Auto switch is set according to the take-up direction.




7 Confirm that the media is attached without any looseness.

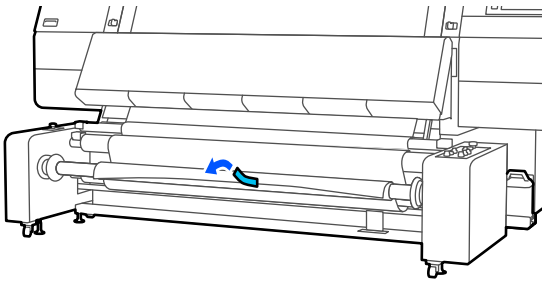
If the tension on the left and right of the media is different, the media will not be taken up correctly. If either side is loose, start again from the procedure for attaching the media to the roll core.

You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the following illustration.

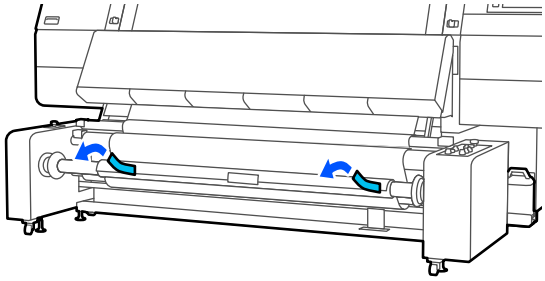


### *Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side out*

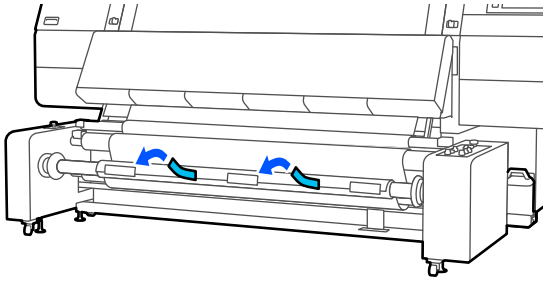
1 Pull the center section of the leading edge of the media, and affix it to the roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.



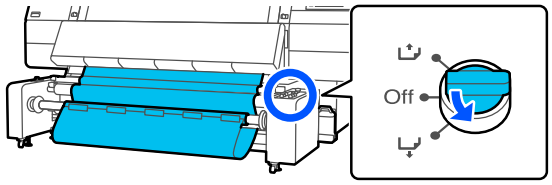
2 Attach the left and right ends.



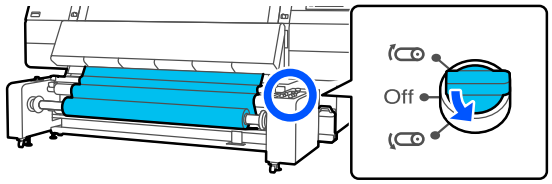
3 Attach the section between the center and the left and right ends.



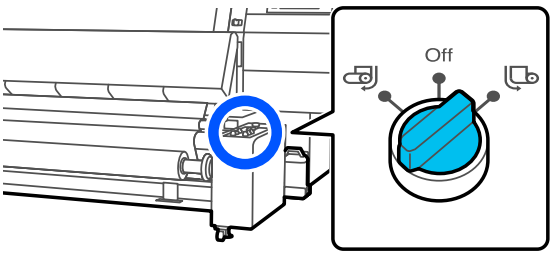
4 Use the media feed switch to feed enough media for approximately two wraps around the take-up roll core.




5 Hold down the Manual switch on the side to take-up the slack media around the core.



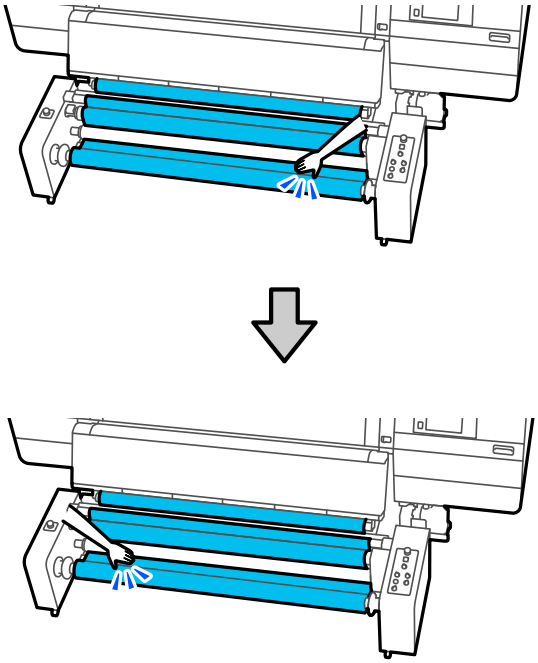

6 Check that the Auto switch is set according to the take-up direction.




7 Confirm that the media is attached without any looseness.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different, the media will not be taken up correctly. If either side is loose, start again from the procedure for attaching the media to the roll core.

You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the following illustration.



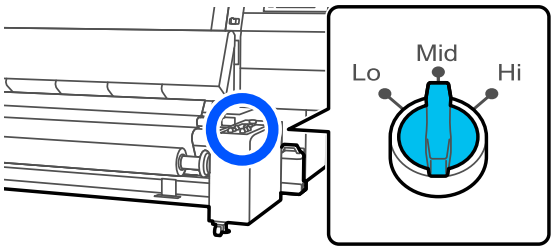
### *Setting the load switch and heater temperature*

The recommended settings for the load switch and the temperature when using the large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit are shown in the following table.

☞ "Media Settings List for Each Media Type" on page 271

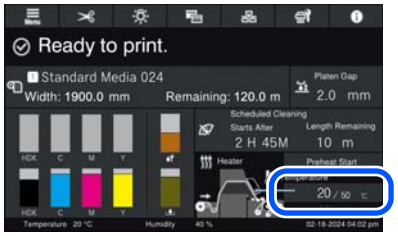
1 Check the load switch setting.

Check the table and set it according to the media you are using.




2 Check the heater's temperature setting.

Check the current temperature setting from the home screen, and if it differs from the temperature setting in the table, reset it to the temperature in the table.

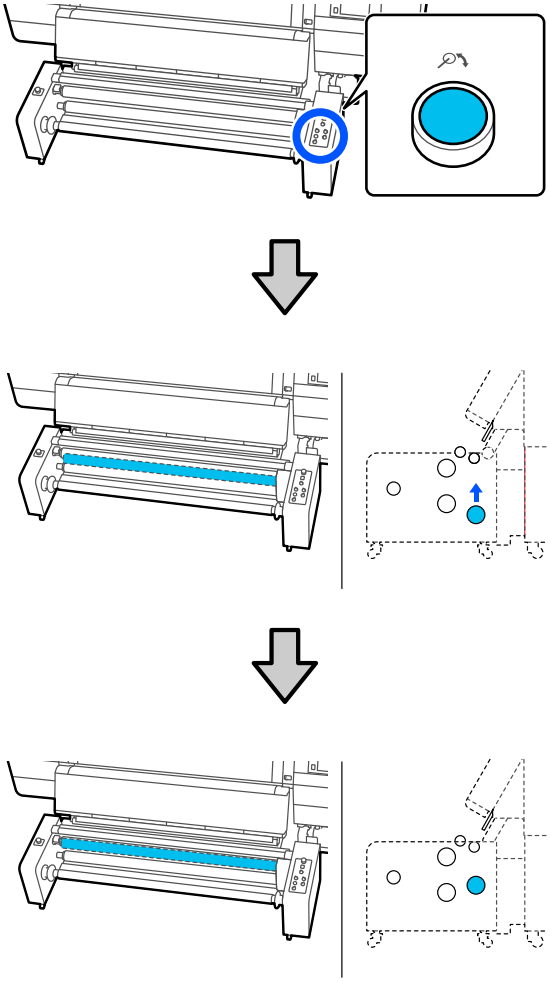



## Loading using the take-up feeding procedure

### *Feeding media to the roll core*

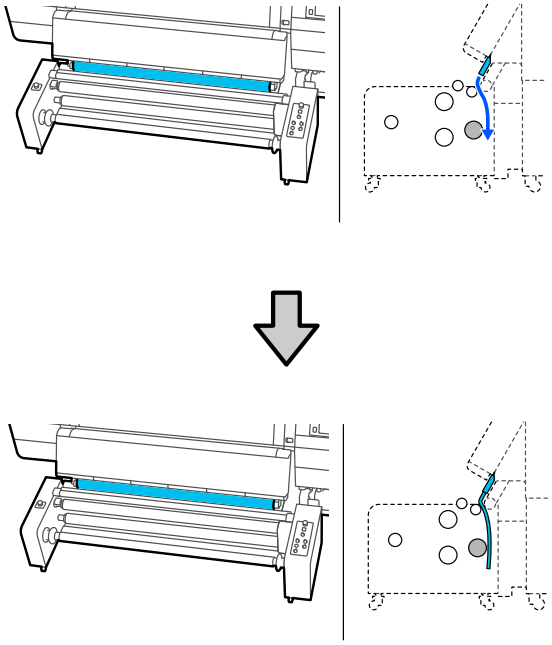
1 Press the Release Button and raise the tension bar.

The tension bar rises to a medium height.

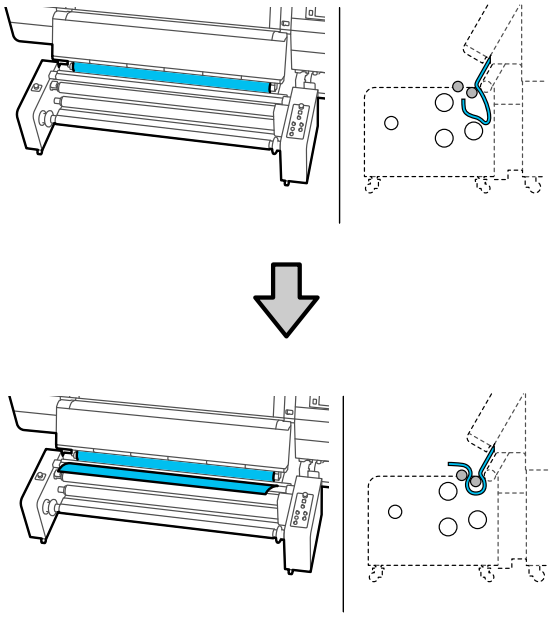


2 Pull out the media by hand while creating slack until the leading edge of the media is below the tension bar.

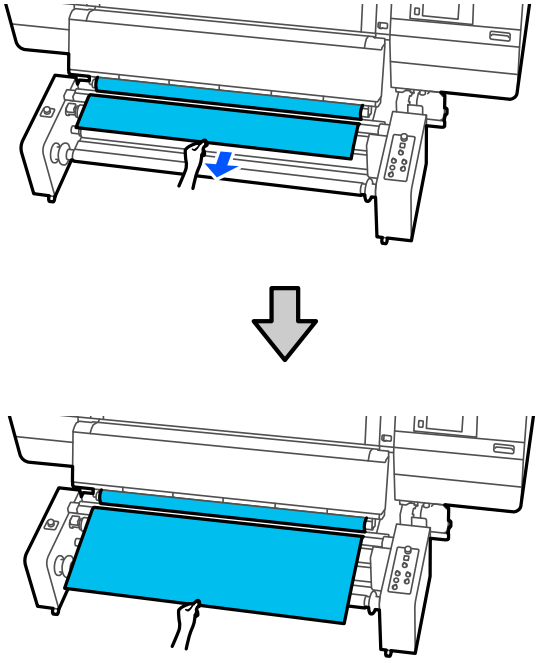
“Pulling Out Media Manually when Using the Large Capacity Roll Models/Large Capacity Reel Models” on page 71



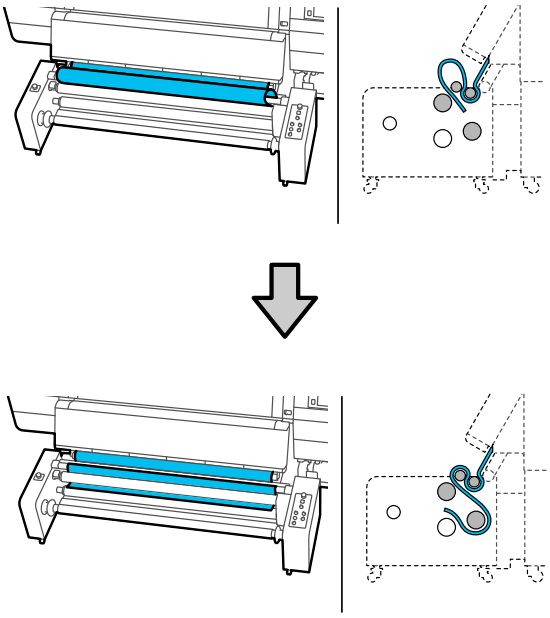
3 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



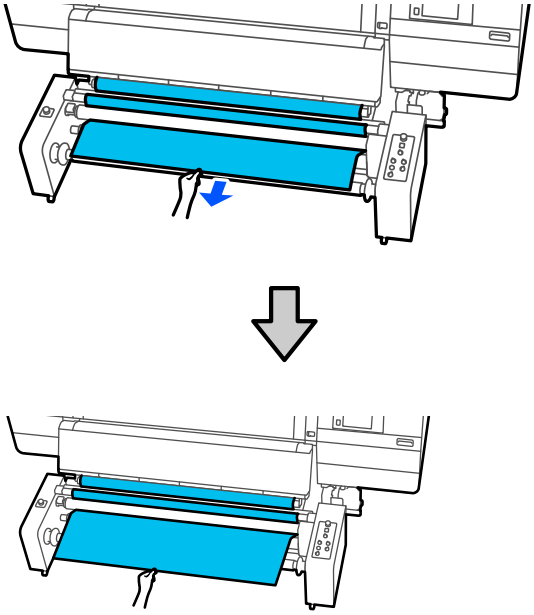
4 Hold the leading edge of the media and pull out the media by hand while creating slack until it reaches the front of the spindle.



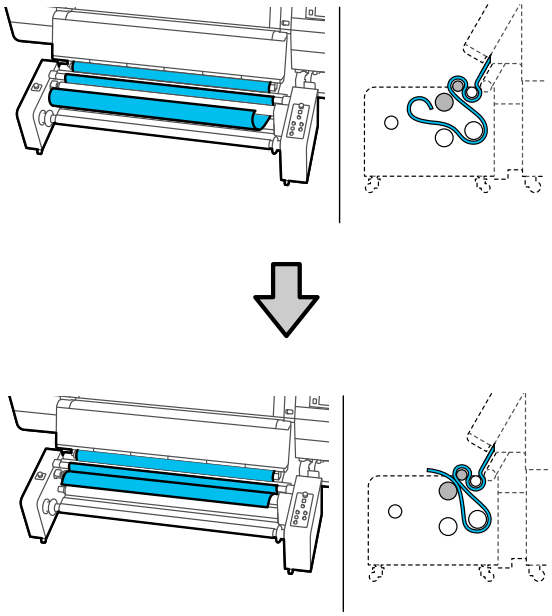
5 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



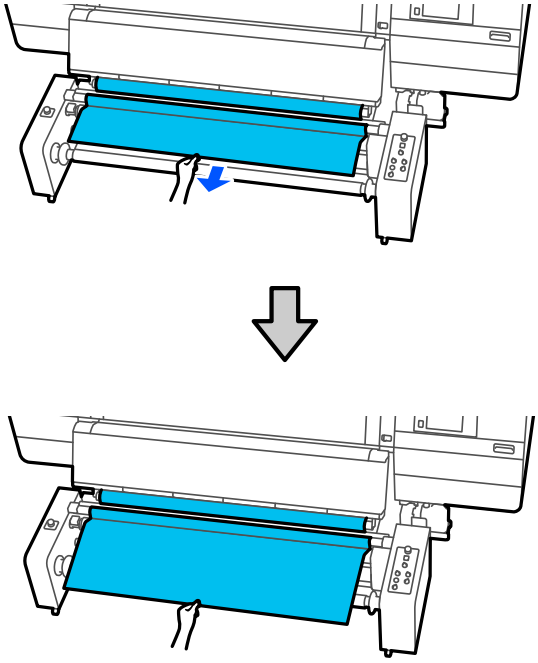
6 Hold the leading edge of the media and pull out the media by hand while creating slack until it reaches the front of the spindle.



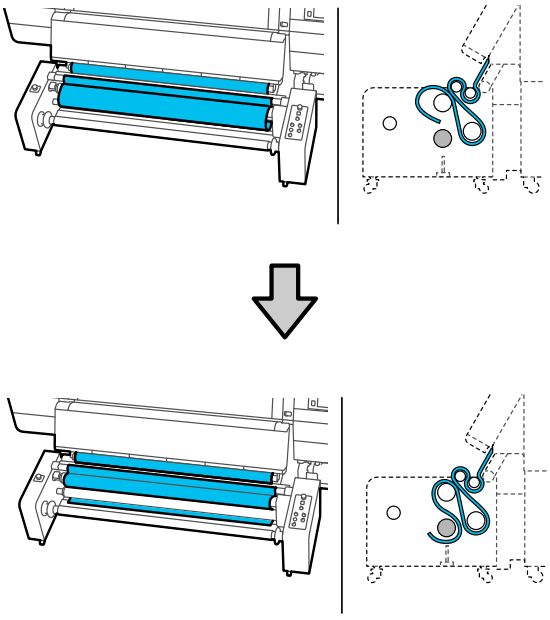
7 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



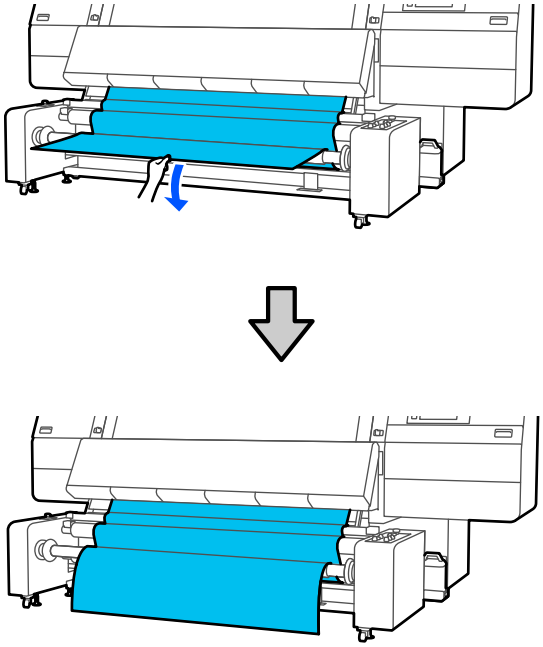
8 Hold the leading edge of the media and pull out the media by hand while creating slack until it reaches the front of the spindle.



9 Pass the media between the rollers as shown in the illustration.



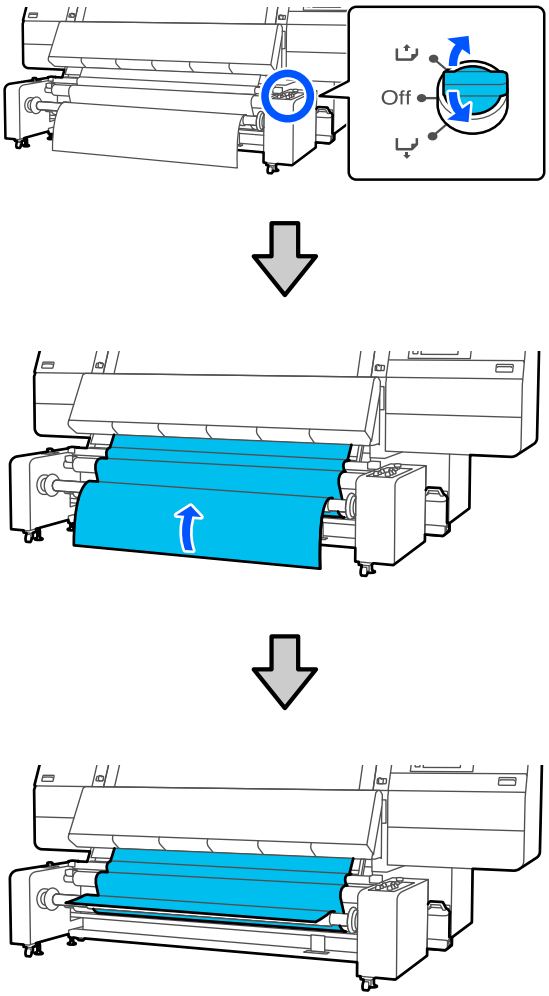
10 Hold the leading edge of the media and pull it out by hand while creating slack until the leading edge of the media reaches the floor.



11 Use the media feed switch to take up the media until the leading edge is in front of the spindle.

Turn the media feed switch in the take-up direction.

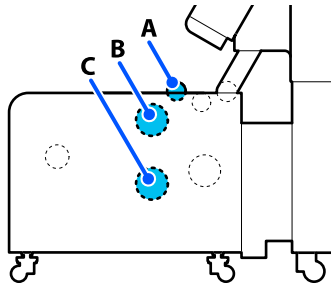
This operation prevents the media from skewing.



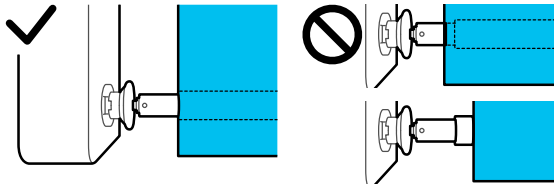

***Note:***

*If you cannot take-up the media by operating the switch, you can create a little slack in the media around the rollers to take it up.*

*Pull out the media further by the amount needed to create slack, so that it is slack around rollers A, B, and C as shown in the illustration.*



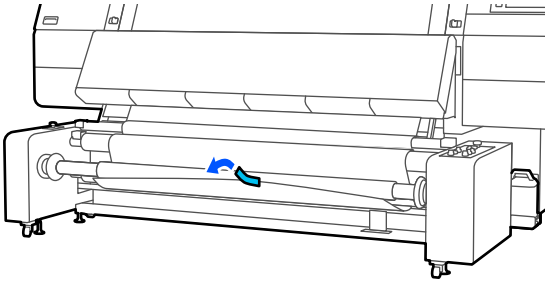
12 Check that the roll core and the edge of the media are aligned.



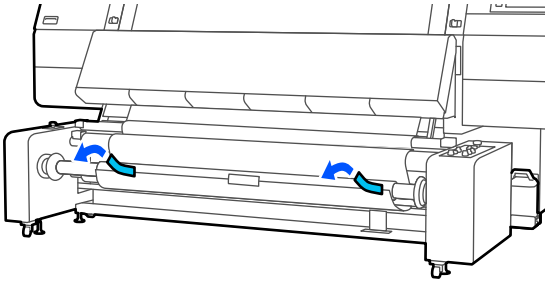
> **Important:**
> *If the edges of the media are misaligned, the media cannot be taken up correctly. If it is misaligned, start again from the procedure for attaching the spindle to the roll core.*

### *Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side in*

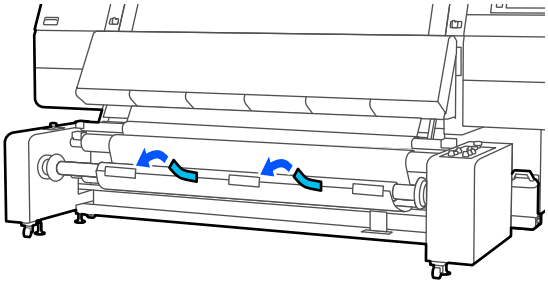
1 Wrap the media from the back of the roll core to the front, and while pulling the center section of the leading edge of the media, affix it to the roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.



2 Attach the left and right ends.

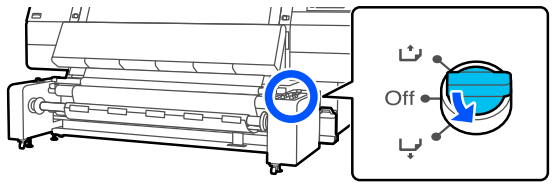


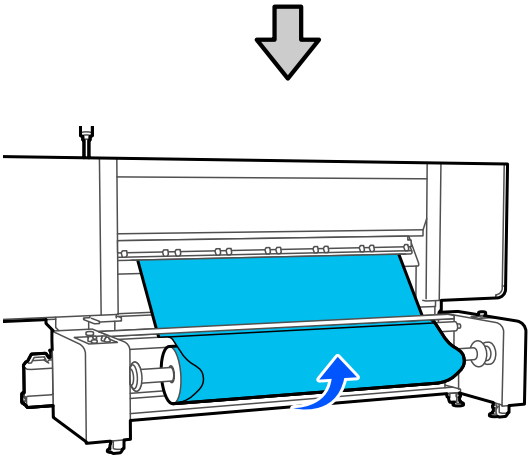
3 Attach the section between the center and the left and right ends.



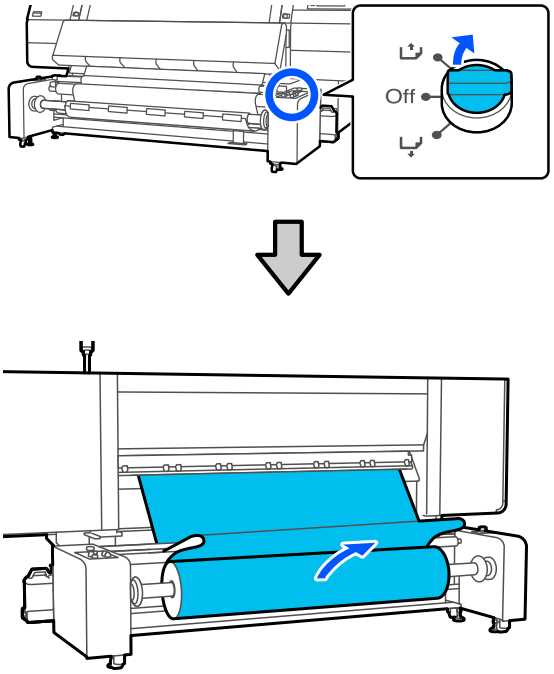
4 Use the media feed switch to create enough slack in the media for approximately two wraps around the take-up roll core.

**When the media is printable side in**



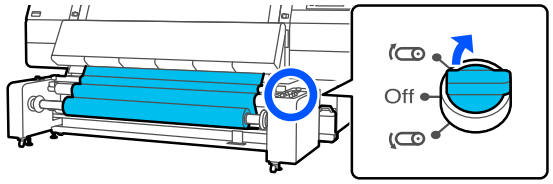



**When the media is printable side out**

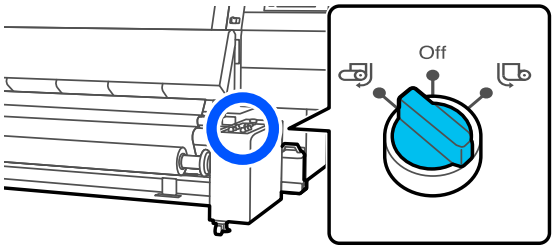



5 Use the Manual switch to take-up the slack media around the core.

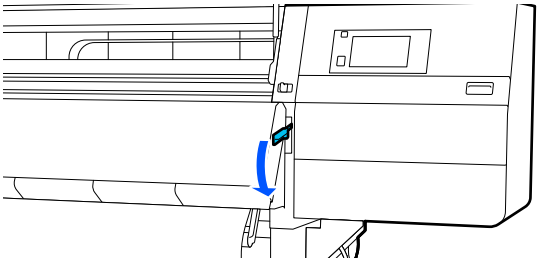
Turn the Manual switch in the take-up direction.




6 Check that the Auto switch is set according to the take-up direction.



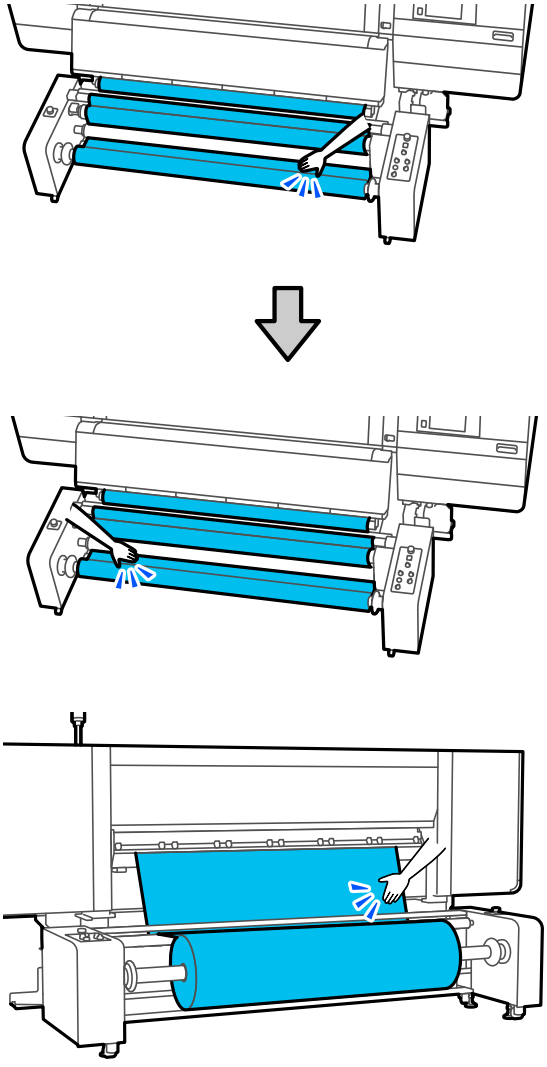

7 Lower the media loading lever.

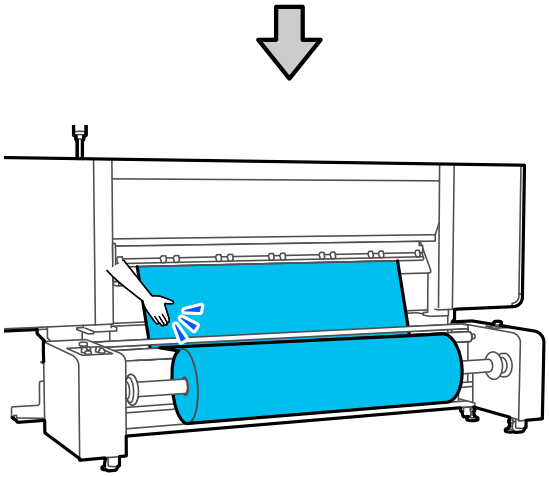


8 Confirm that the media is attached without looseness on the front and back sides.

If the tension on the left and right of the media is different, the media will not be taken up correctly. If either side is loose, start again from the procedure for attaching the media to the roll core.

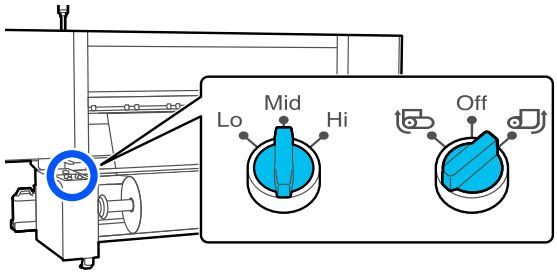
You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the following illustration.





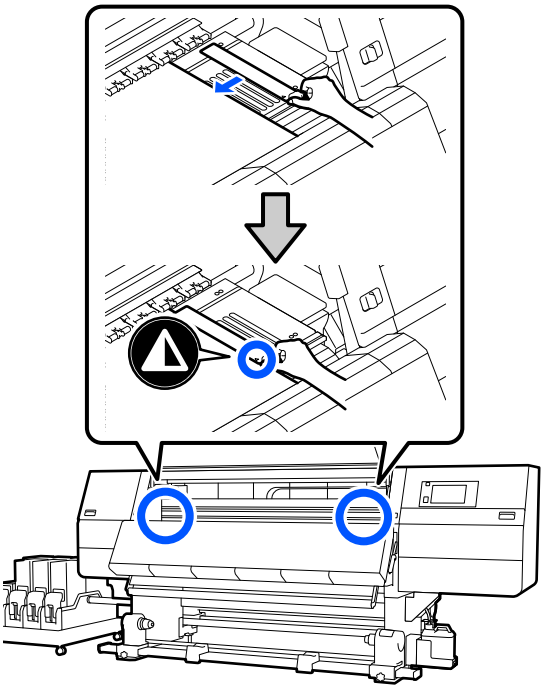
9 Confirm that the Auto switch and the load switch on the media feeding unit are set according to the loaded media.

The load switch is normally set to Mid. Switch to Hi to increase tension if wrinkles appear in the media during printing.

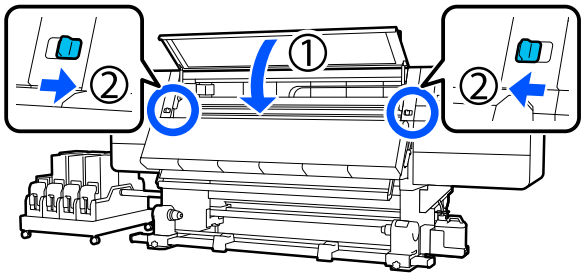



10 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.

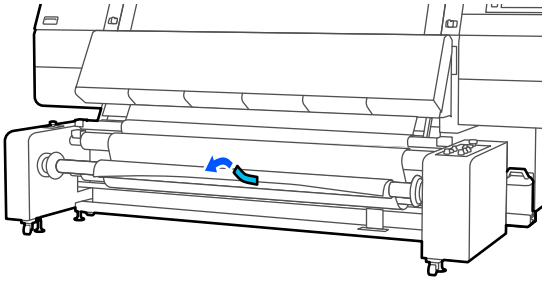


11 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.

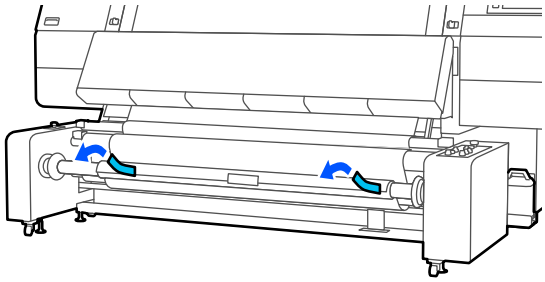


### *Attaching media to the roll core - Printed side out*

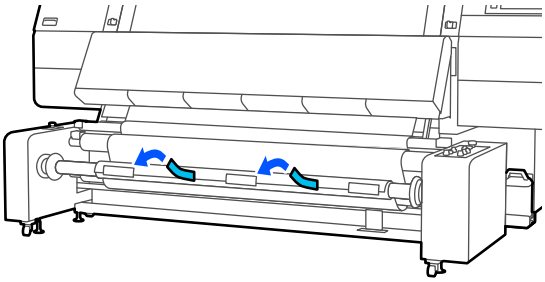
1 Pull the center section of the leading edge of the media, and affix it to the roll core with commercially available adhesive tape.



2 Attach the left and right ends.

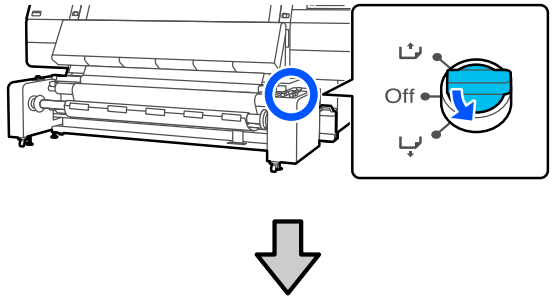


3 Attach the section between the center and the left and right ends.

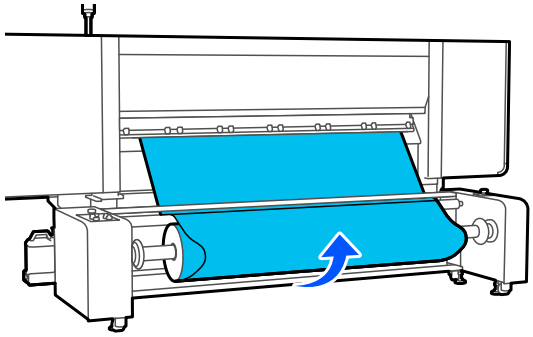


4 Use the media feed switch to create enough slack in the media for approximately two wraps around the take-up roll core.

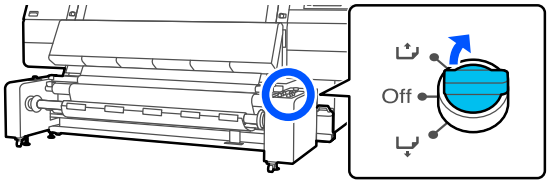
**When the media is printable side in**



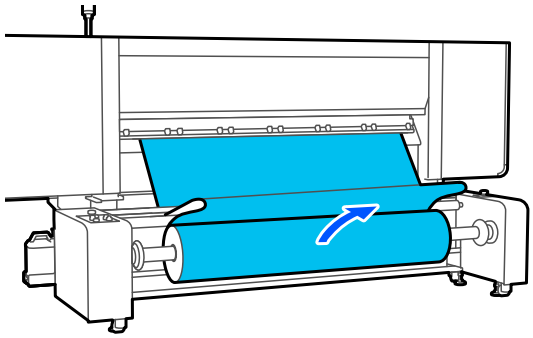


**When the media is printable side out**

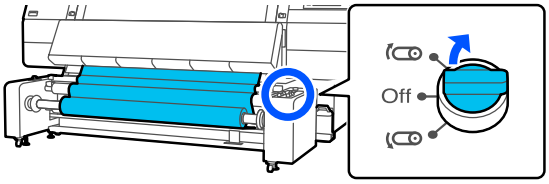




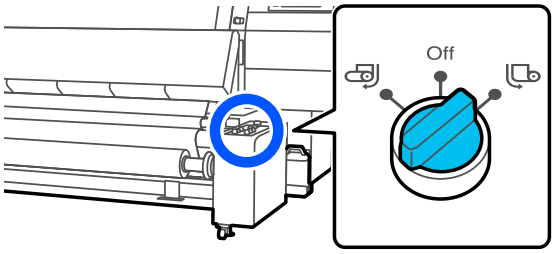



5 Use the Manual switch to take-up the slack media around the core.

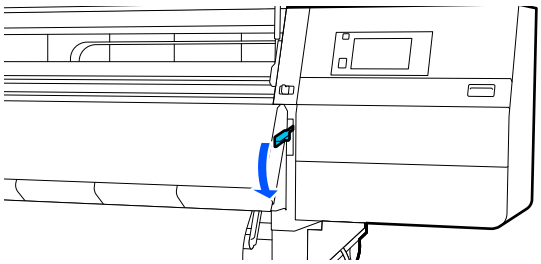
Turn the Manual switch in the take-up direction.




6 Check that the Auto switch is set according to the take-up direction.



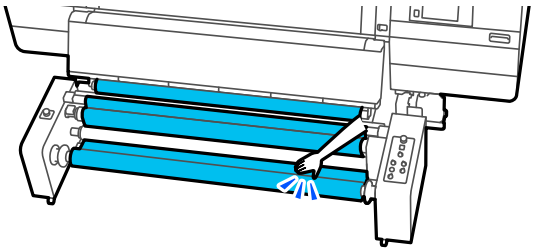

7 Lower the media loading lever.



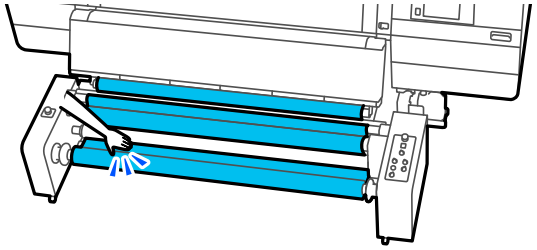
8 Confirm that the media is attached without looseness on the front and back sides.

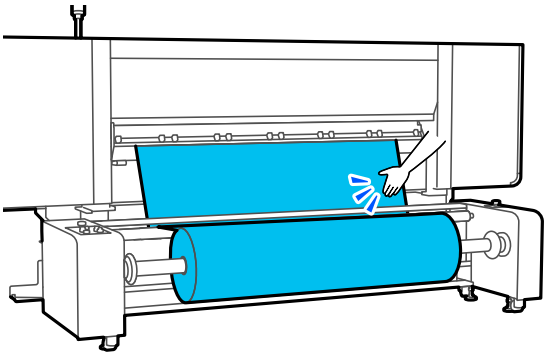
If the tension on the left and right of the media is different, the media will not be taken up correctly. If either side is loose, start again from the procedure for attaching the media to the roll core.

You can confirm differences in tension by lightly tapping both edges of the media as shown in the following illustration.

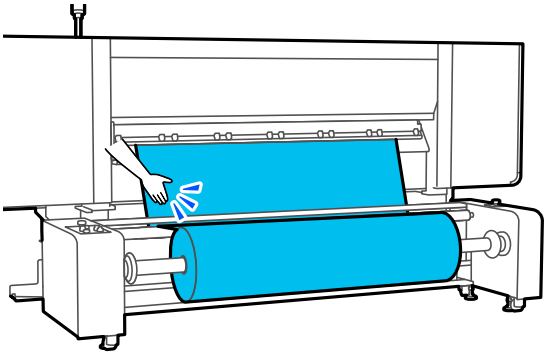






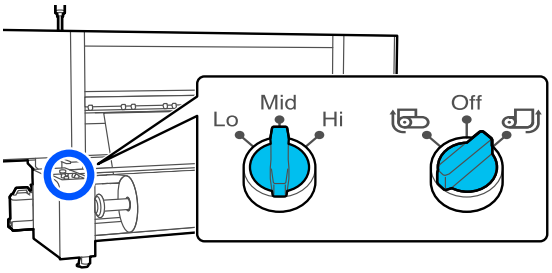






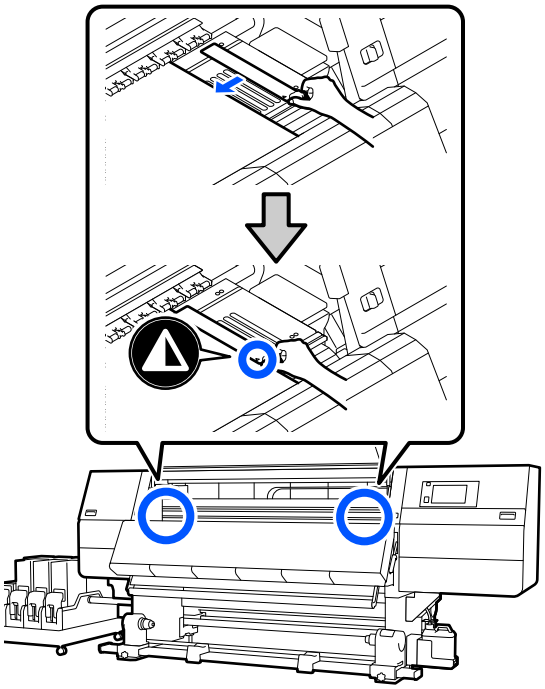
9 Confirm that the Auto switch on the media feeding unit and the load switch are set according to the loaded media.

The load switch is normally set to Mid. Switch to Hi to increase tension if wrinkles appear in the media during printing.

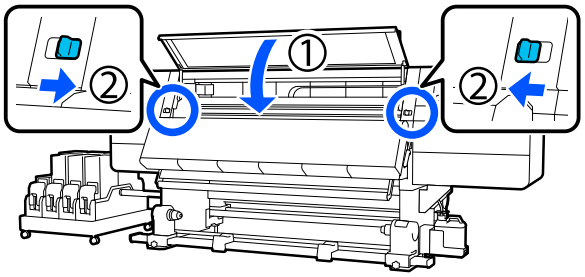


10 Move to the front side, and while holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the top edge of the media. Adjust so that the edges of the media are aligned with the center of the triangular holes in the media edge plates.

The media edge plates prevent the media from riding up and keep fibers on the cut edge of the media from touching the print head. Load correctly.



11 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




### *Setting the media information, load switch, and heater temperature*

The recommended settings for the load switch and the temperature when using the large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit are shown in the following table.

"Media Settings List for Each Media Type" on page 271

1 Set the media information on the screen.

Do the following settings here.

- ❏ Media: Set the media to use for printing
- ❏ Media Length: Length of the loaded media
- ❏ Media Detection: How to detect the width of the media

**Media** is set in the following way.

**When there are no registered media settings for the loaded media**

First, select an unregistered number.

There is no Media Type set for an unregistered number, so the screen to select Media Type appears. Select the Media Type using the paper weight of the loaded media as a guideline as shown below. The paper weights of each Media Type shown in the screen are typical values.

| Media Type | Paperweight (g/m²) |
|---|---|
| Ultra-Thin | 39 or under |
| Thin | 40 to 56 |
| Med-Thick | 57 to 89 |
| Thick | 90 or over |

**When there are registered media settings/EMX file is downloaded and registered for the loaded media**

Choose a registered media number.

In **Media Detection**, set **Width Detection**. Normally, leave this **On**.

See the following for details about Media Detection.

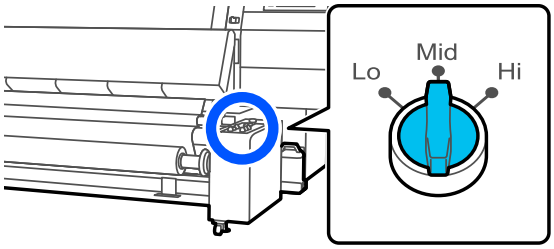
"General Settings menu" on page 201

2 Press **OK**.

The printer starts detecting the loaded media and performing related operations.

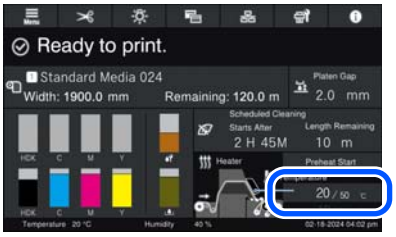
3 Check the load switch setting.

Check the table and set it according to the media you are using.




4 Set the heater's temperature setting.

Check the current temperature setting from the home screen, and if it differs from the temperature setting in the table, reset it to the temperature in the table.




# Removing the Take-up Roll

Follow the steps below when replacing the media.

**1. Set Information Printing at Media Cut.**

↓

**2. Cut the media.**

↓

**3. Remove the media.**

## Setting Information Printing at Media Cut

Setting **Information Printing at Media Cut** in advance is useful because information that is helpful when managing media is printed whenever media is cut.

For example, when **Paper Remaining Information** is turned **On**, the length of media that is remaining is printed. By printing the remaining amount on the media being removed, you can check this value the next time the media is loaded and enter the media length. This is useful for accurate management of the amount of media remaining.

Additionally, when media cutting information is printed, lines indicating the cutting position are also printed, enabling precise cuts.

See the following for details about Information Printing at Media Cut.

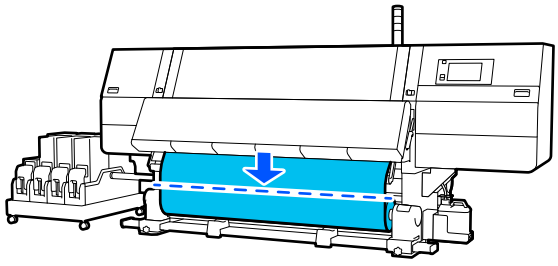
☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

## Cutting Media

### Standard type auto take-up reel unit

1 On the control panel screen, press the ✂ and then **Forward**.

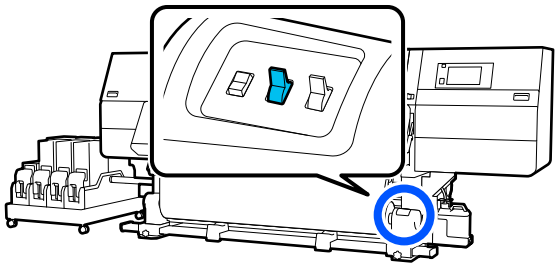
The media is fed to the cut position.



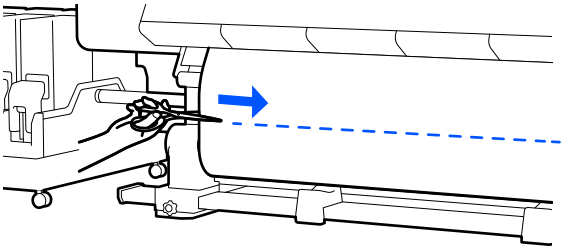
If you want to adjust the cut position, change the value of the position.



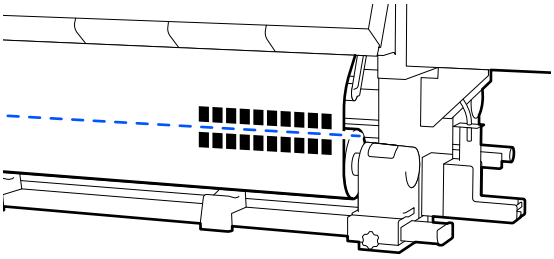
2 Set the Auto switch on the auto take-up reel unit to Off.



3 Cut the media at the bottom of the media guide bar using scissors.

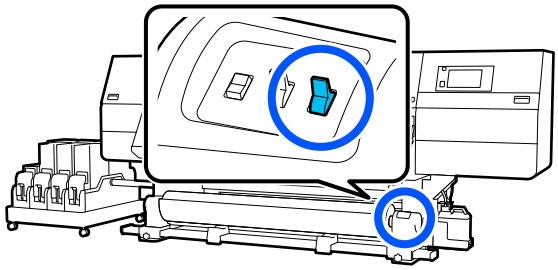


When information, such as the remaining amount of media, is printed, a line is printed at the cut position. Print Information is printed on the printed side of the cut position, and Paper Remaining Information is printed on the unused side, so cut along that line.



> **Important:**
> *When you cut the media, check that it does not rise up inside the front cover or has not come free from the media edge plate before printing.*

4 Take up the cut media completely by operating the Manual switch according to how the media is rolled.



## Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit

1 On the control panel screen, press ✂.

2 When printing media cutting information, set the cut position to -60 mm on the screen.

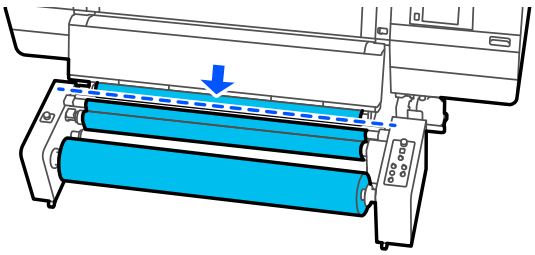
If you want to adjust the cut position, change the value of the position in the field shown in the screen illustration.

Setting the cut position to -60 feeds the media to a position where the line indicating the cut position is easily visible.



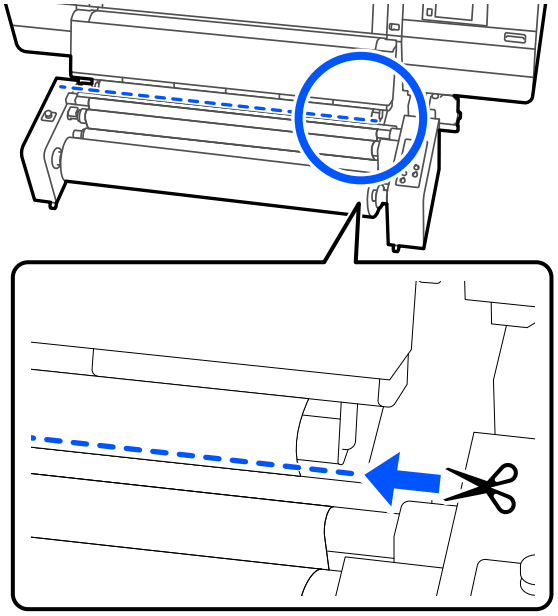

3 Press **Forward** on the screen.

The media is fed to the cut position.

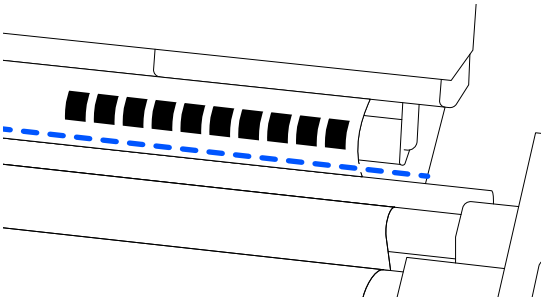


When the media has been fed, set the Auto switch on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit to Off.

4 Cut the media at the bottom of the media guide bar using scissors.



When information, such as the remaining amount of media, is printed, a line is printed at the cut position. Print Information is printed on the printed side of the cut position, and Paper Remaining Information is printed on the unused side, so cut along that line.



**Important:**

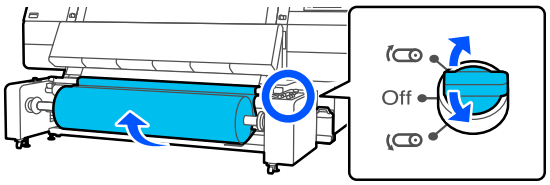
*When you cut the media, check that it does not rise up inside the front cover or has not come free from the media edge plate before printing.*

**Note:**

*If you use the media feed switch to feed or take-up the media after feeding it to the cut position, the tension bar will rise and apply tension to the media.*

*In this case, press the Release button to lower the tension bar before cutting the media.*

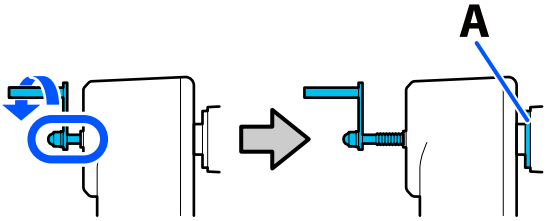
5 Take up the cut media completely by operating the Manual switch according to how the media is rolled.




# Removing the Media

## Standard type auto take-up reel unit

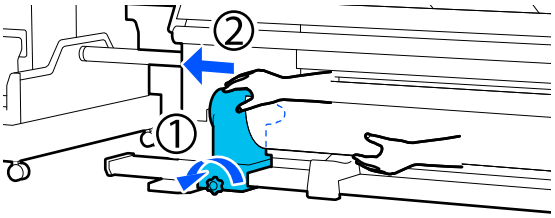
1 Rotate the left media holder handle to the far side until it stops.



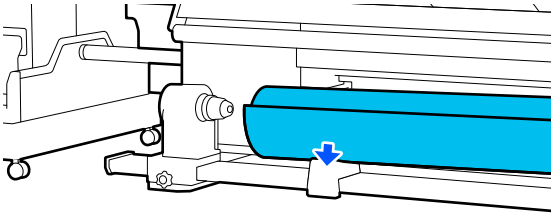

The part A on the illustration and the shaft of the handle will be visible.

2 To prevent the media from sliding off the roll, support the roll at its left end.

3 Loosen the left media holder fixing screw and remove the media holder.



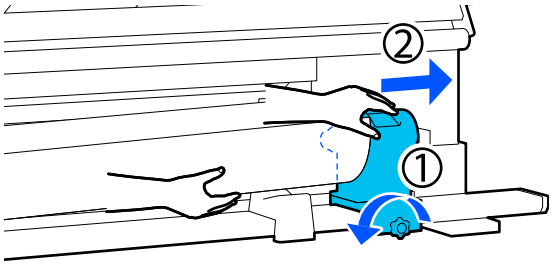

4 Lower the roll onto the roll support.



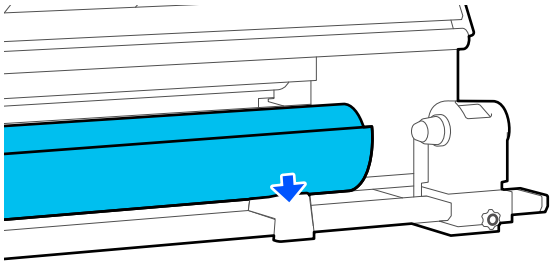
Be careful not to trap your hands between the roll and the roll support.

5 To prevent the media from sliding off the roll, support the roll at its right end.

6 Loosen the right media holder fixing screw and remove the media holder.




7 Lower the roll onto the roll support.



Be careful not to trap your hands between the roll and the roll support.

## Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit

### *Necessary items*

**Lifter (available in the market)**

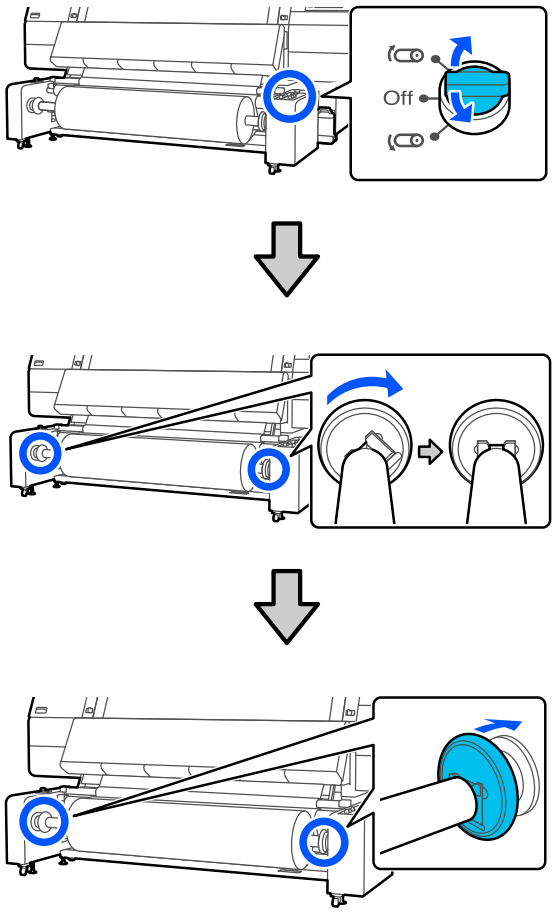
Use this to transport media. Prepare a lifter with a load capacity greater than the combined weight of the media and spindle to be loaded.

**Hex wrench (small) (included only with models with type B gap adjustment screws)**



### *How to remove*

1 Use the Manual switch to rotate the spindle to face as shown in the illustration, then lower the handles on both sides outward.



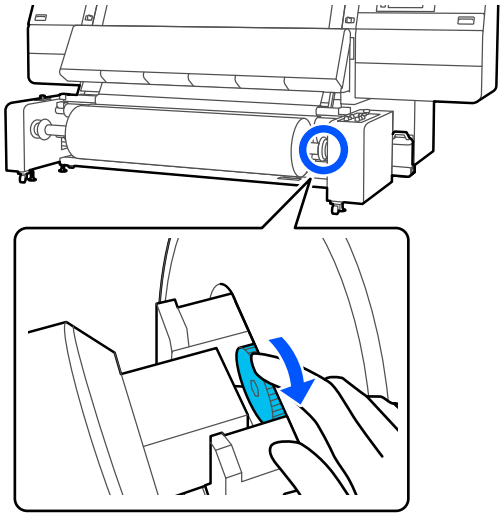

If you have not closed the gaps at the ends of the spindle, go to step 3.

2 If you have closed the gaps at the ends of the spindle, turn the screw inside the handle on the opposite side to where the spindle was moved clockwise until it stops.

The explanation here uses media with printable side in as an example.

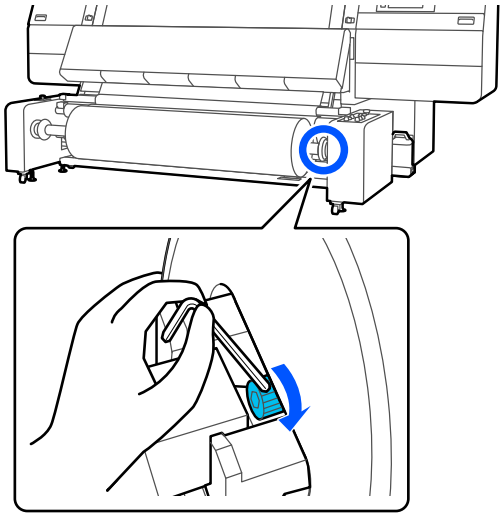
**Type A gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw by hand.



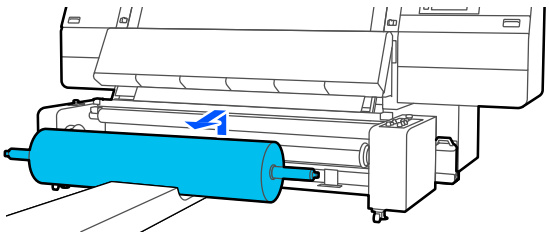
**Type B gap adjustment screw**

Insert a hex wrench into the gap between the handle and the spindle, and slowly turn the screw while hooking the tip of the hex wrench onto the side of the screw head.

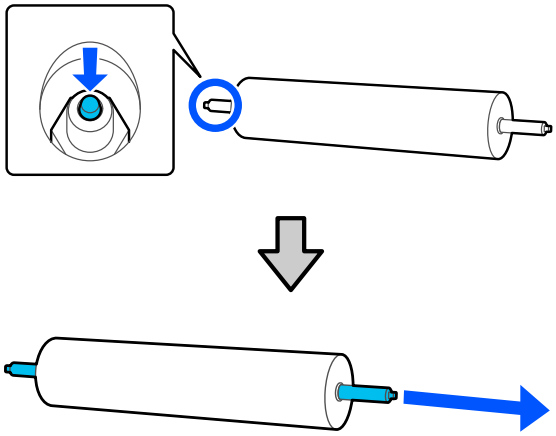


3 Remove the roll.

Make sure the tip of the lifter does not hit the unit.



4 Press on the center of the valve to release the air in the spindle, then remove the spindle.



# Removing the Loaded Media

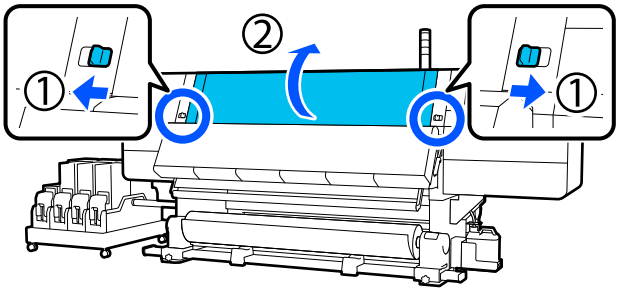
Follow the steps below when removing the media that is loaded on the back side during replacement and so on.

## Removing from the standard type Media Feeding Unit

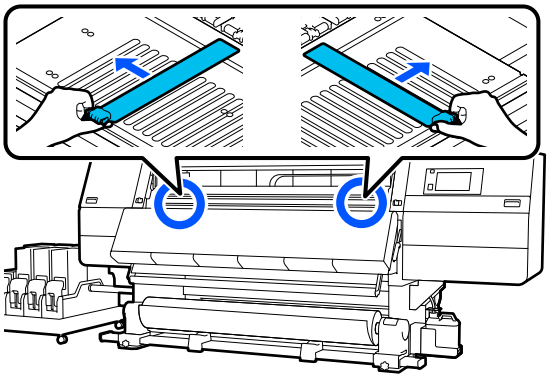
1 Cut the media.

“Cutting Media” on page 130

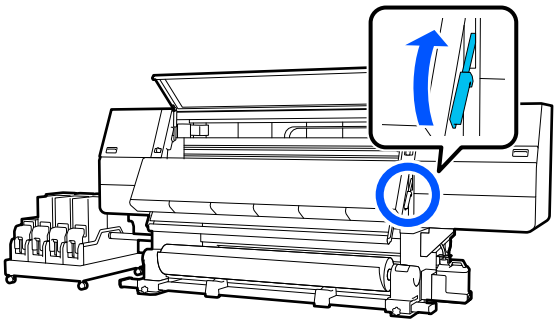
2 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



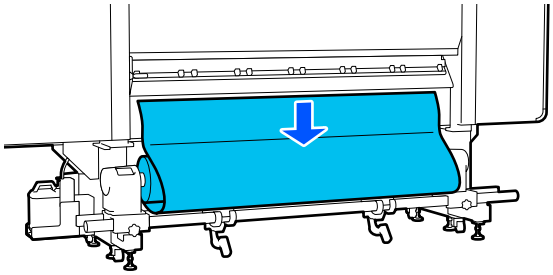
3 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate out of the way toward both edges of the platen.



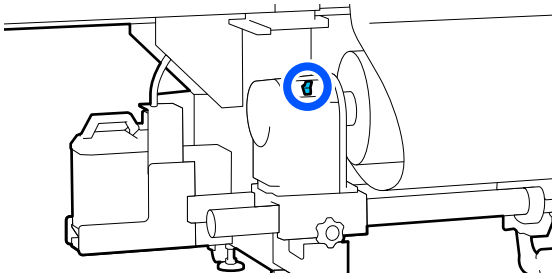
4 Raise the media loading lever.



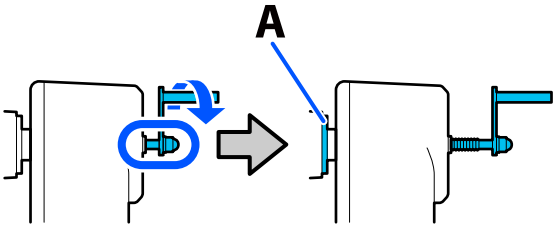
5 Move to the back side, and remove the media toward the rear.



6 Take up the media by operating the drive switch according to how the media is rolled.

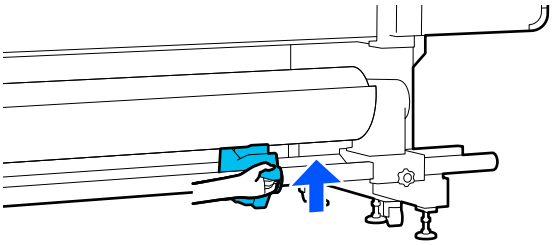


7 Rotate the right media holder handle to the near side until it stops.

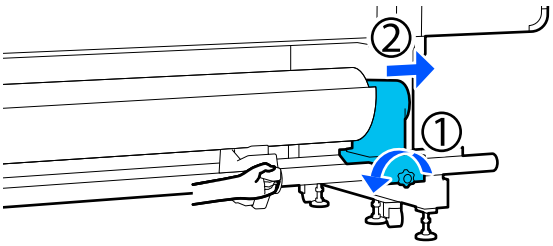



The part A on the illustration and the shaft of the handle will be visible.

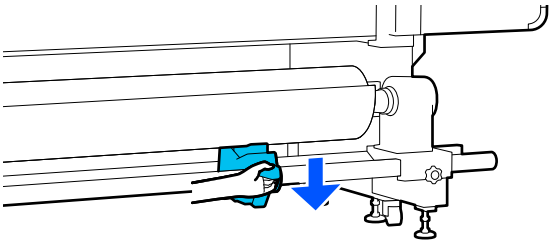
8 To prevent the media from dropping, lift up the right lift lever to support media.



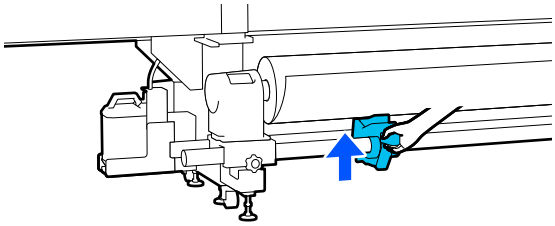
9 Loosen the right media holder fixing screw and remove the media holder.



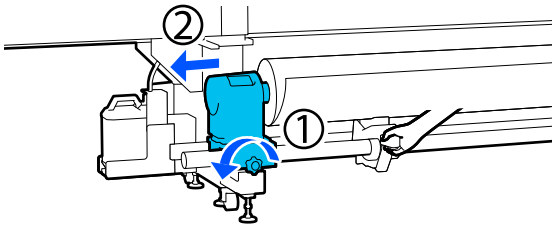

10 Lower the lift lever and lower the media onto the roll support.



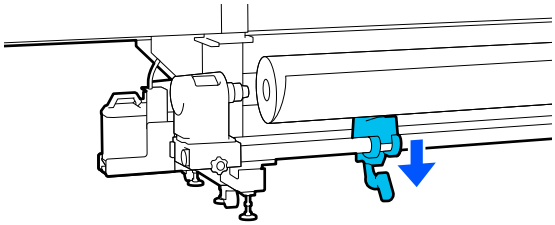
11 To prevent the media from dropping, lift up the left lift lever to support media.



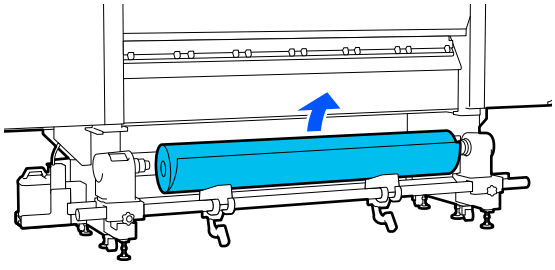
12 Loosen the left media holder fixing screw and remove the media holder.




13 Lower the lift lever and lower the media onto the roll support.

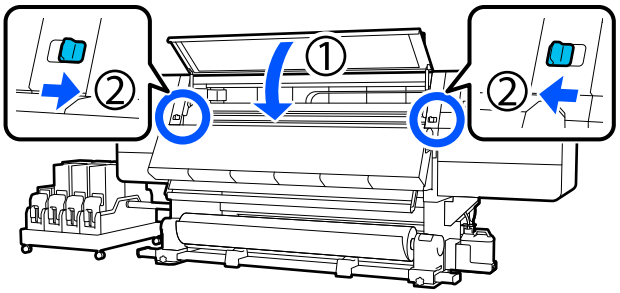


14 Remove the media.

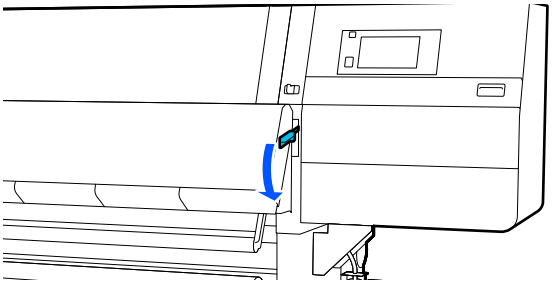


If the weight of the media is 40 kg (88.18 lb.) or more, then remove it using the lifter.

15 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




16 Lower the media loading lever.



# Removing from the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit

## Necessary items

**Lifter (available in the market)**

Use this to transport media. Prepare a lifter with a load capacity greater than the combined weight of the media and spindle to be loaded.

**Hex wrench (small) (included only with models with type B gap adjustment screws)**

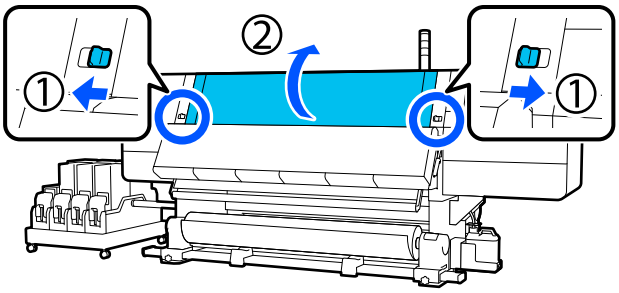


## How to remove

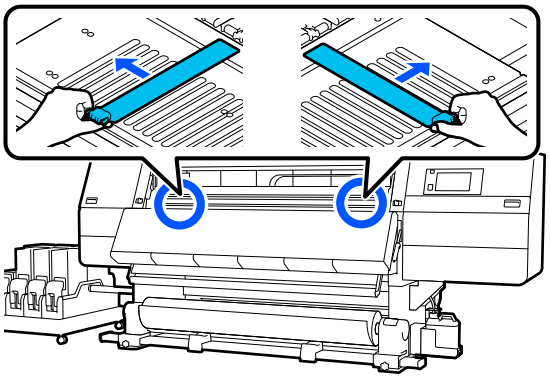
1 Cut the media.

“Cutting Media” on page 130

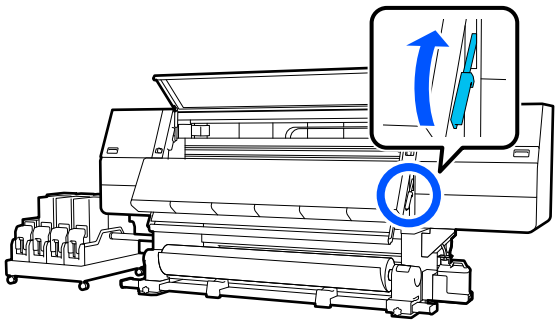
2 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



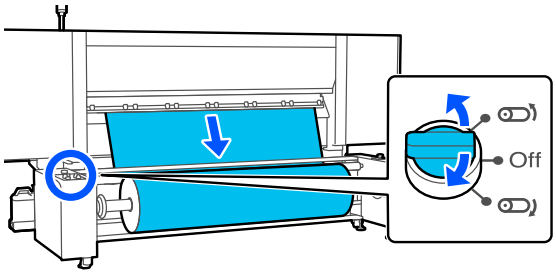

3 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate out of the way toward both edges of the platen.



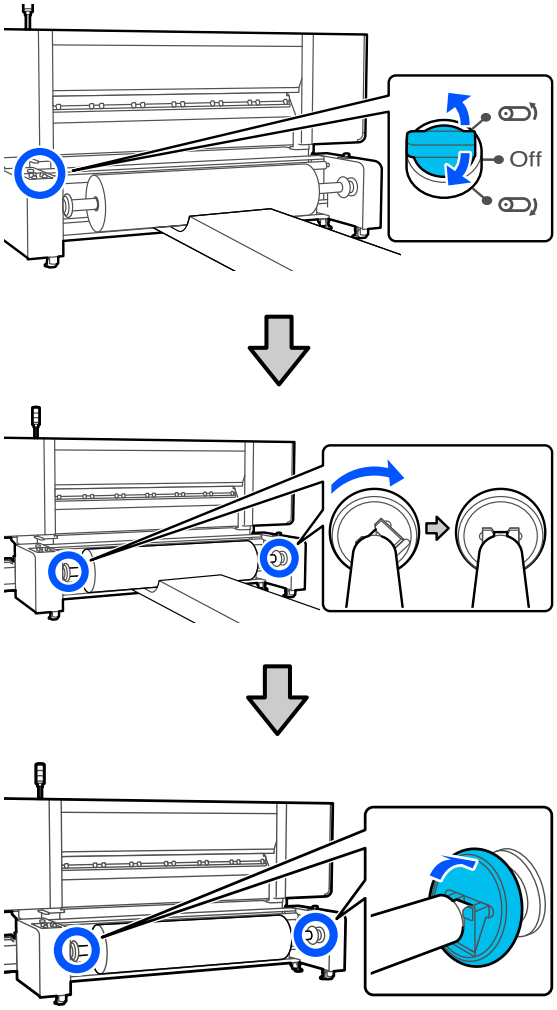
4 Raise the media loading lever.



5 Move to the back side, and take up the media by operating the Manual switch.




6 Use the Manual switch to rotate the spindle to face as shown in the illustration, then lower the handles on both sides outward.

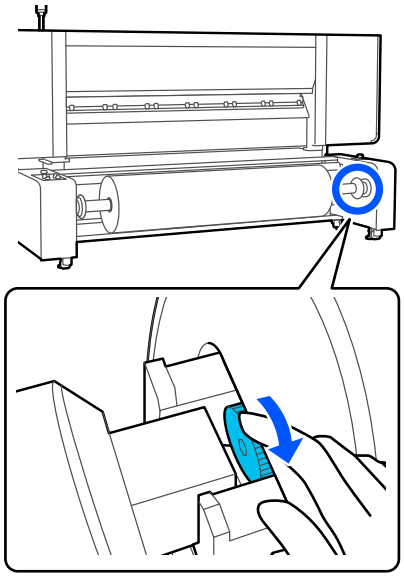



7 If you have closed the gaps at the ends of the spindle, turn the screw inside the handle on the opposite side to where the spindle was moved clockwise until it stops.

The explanation here uses the example of media with the printable side out.

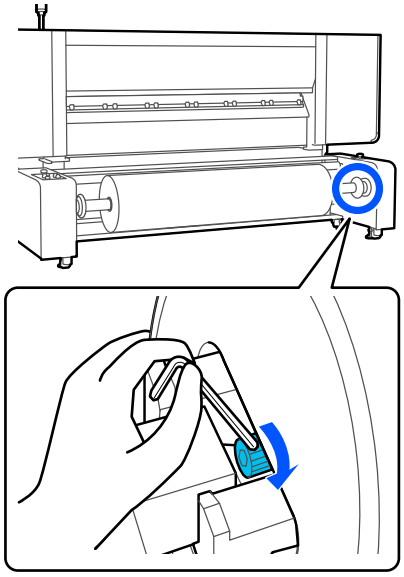
**Type A gap adjustment screw**

Turn the screw by hand.

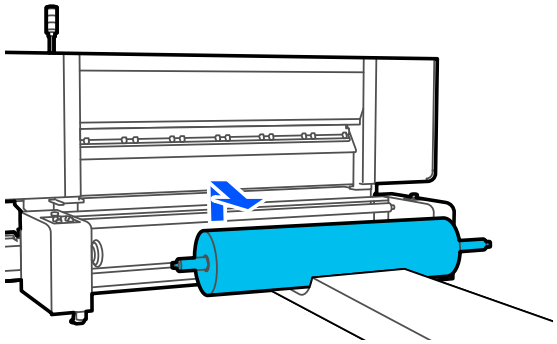


**Type B gap adjustment screw**

Insert a hex wrench into the gap between the handle and the spindle, and slowly turn the screw while hooking the tip of the hex wrench onto the side of the screw head.

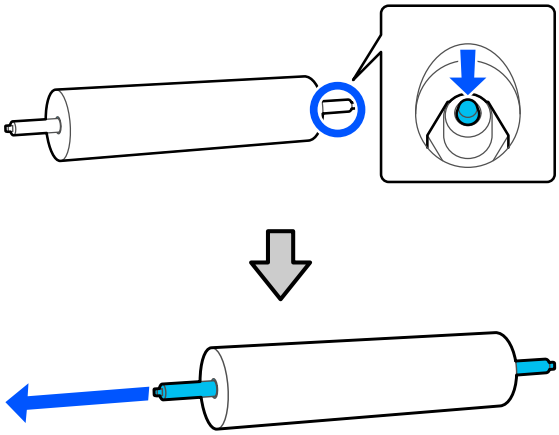


8 Remove the media.

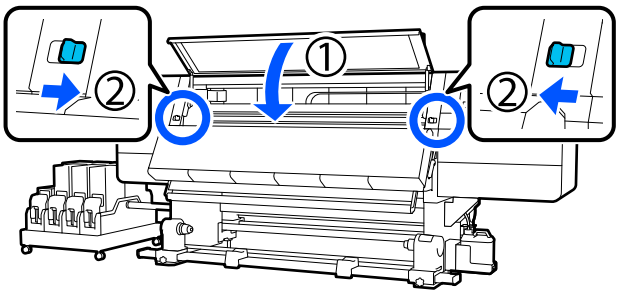


9 Press on the center of the valve to release the air in the spindle, then remove the spindle.

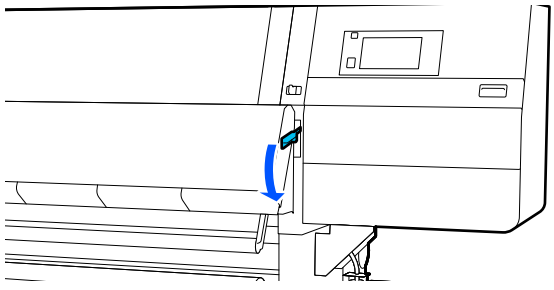
Use the tip of something hard to press on the center of the valve.



10 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.



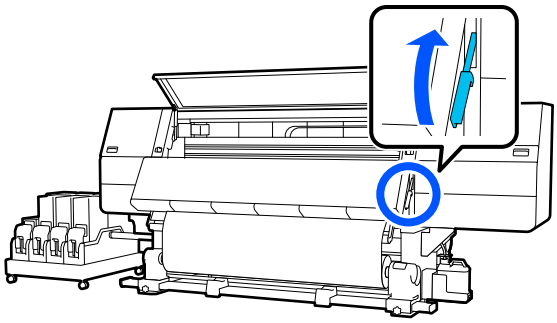

11 Lower the media loading lever.



# When the Remaining Media Runs Out

When the remaining media runs out during printing, a message is displayed on the display screen of the control panel. Follow the on-screen instructions and continue printing by replacing the media using the following procedure.

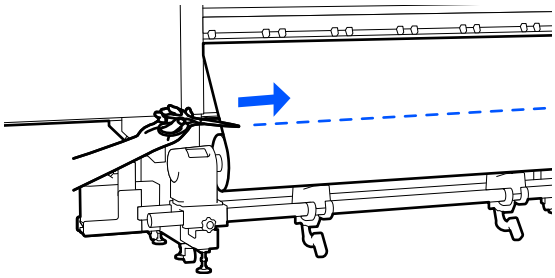
1 Raise the media loading lever.



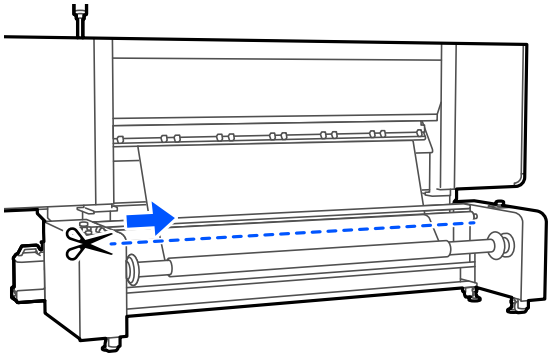
2 Move to the back side and check the condition of the media.

If the media is affixed to the roll core, then cut it apart using scissors as seen in the illustration, and move on to the next procedure.
If it is not affixed, then move on to the next procedure straight away.

**For the standard type Media Feeding Unit**



**For the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit**



3 Follow the procedure below to remove the roll core.

**For the standard type Media Feeding Unit**

Steps 6 to 14 in "Removing from the standard type Media Feeding Unit"

"Removing from the standard type Media Feeding Unit" on page 134

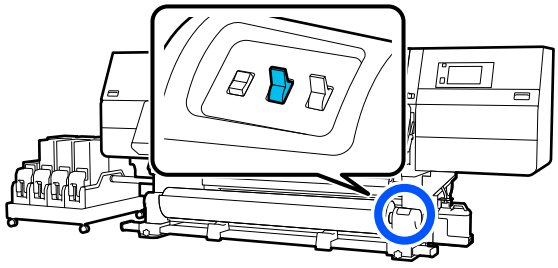
**For the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit**

Steps 6 to 9 in "Removing from the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit"

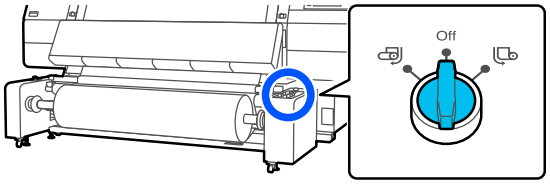
"Removing from the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit" on page 136

4 Move to the front, and set the Auto switch on the auto take-up reel unit to Off.

**For the standard type Auto Take-up Reel Unit**

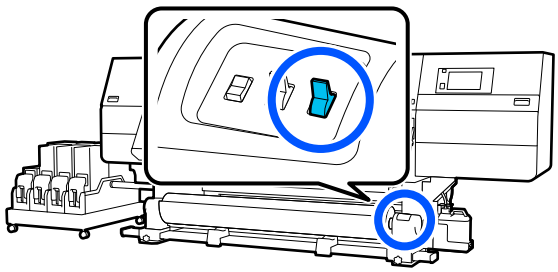


**For the large capacity Type Auto Take-up Reel Unit**

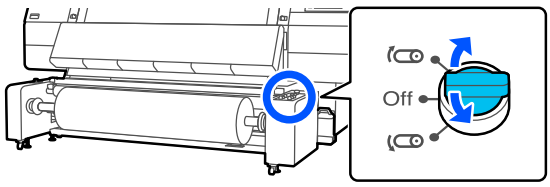



5 Take up the media completely by operating the Manual switch as necessary.

**For the standard type Auto Take-up Reel Unit**



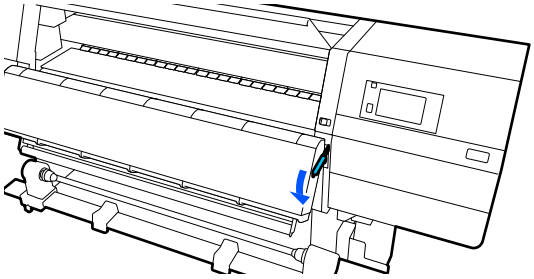
**For the large capacity Type Auto Take-up Reel Unit**




6 Follow the procedure on "Removing Media" to remove the roll.

“Removing the Media” on page 132

7 Lower the media loading lever.



Follow the on-screen instructions to load a new media, and attach it to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit to resume printing.

“Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit” on page 81

“Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit” on page 99

# Before Printing

To maintain print quality, perform the following inspection before starting work each day.

**Check the amount of ink remaining:**

Check the amount of ink remaining, and replace the old ink cartridge if ink is expended. If ink is expended during printing, the printer automatically switches to the other ink cartridge and continues printing.

You can replace the expended ink cartridge while printing continues.

You can check the ink level on the Home screen. “Understanding and Operating the Display” on page 27

Replacing Ink Cartridges “Replacement procedure” on page 168

**Print head nozzle check**

Perform a print head nozzle check to check for clogged nozzles.

Perform print head cleaning if parts of the printed pattern are faint or missing.

Print head nozzle check “Printing nozzle check patterns” on page 186

Head cleaning “Print Head Cleaning” on page 186

# Print Adjustments

Use this menu in the following cases.

**Using new media not registered to the printer**

Perform **Automatic Adjustment** after loading media to the printer.

**When banding or graininess is found in the print results even after Automatic Adjustment is performed**

Perform **Print Head Alignment** and **Media Feed Adjustment** manually.

**When changing Advanced Settings after saving media settings**

**When switching the load switch on the large capacity type media feeding unit or auto take-up reel unit**

## Automatic Adjustment

Print head position and media feed are adjusted while printing the pattern.

The approximate maximum length of the media required to print the test pattern is given below.

SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series:
Approx. 600 mm (23.62 in.)

SC-F20000 Series:
Approx. 730 mm (28.74 in.)

1 Check that the printer is ready, and load the media according to the actual usage conditions.

When using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, attach the media to the roll core.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

2 Press Menu, and then press in the order of **Media Settings** - **Print Adjustments** - **Automatic Adjustment**.

3 Press **Start**.

Auto adjust starts, and an adjustment pattern is printed. Wait until adjustment is complete.

# Print Head Alignment

## Auto

The same adjustment as Print Head Alignment of Automatic Adjustment is performed.

The approximate maximum length of the media required to print the test pattern is given below.

SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series:
Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.)

SC-F20000 Series:
Approx. 430 mm (16.92 in.)

1 Check that the printer is ready, and load the media according to the actual usage conditions.

When using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, attach the media to the roll core.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

2 Press Menu, and then press in the order of **Media Settings** - **Print Adjustments** - **Print Head Alignment** - **Auto**.

3 Press **Start**.

Auto adjust starts, and an adjustment pattern is printed. Wait until adjustment is complete.

## Manual

You can select **Manual(Simple)** or **Manual(Standard)** to make adjustments.

### Manual(Simple)

Select this when Auto adjustment has failed or when you want to perform quick and simple adjustment by visually inspecting the pattern.

### Manual(Standard)

Select this when you want to perform adjustment equivalent to Auto adjustment by visually inspecting the pattern.

The approximate maximum length of the media required to print the test pattern is given below.

Manual(Simple): Approx. 50 mm (1.96 in.)

Manual(Standard): Approx. 150 mm (5.9 in.)

### Adjustment Procedure

1 Check that the printer is ready, and load the media according to the actual usage conditions.

When using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, attach the media to the roll core.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

2 Press Menu, and then press in the order of **Media Settings** - **Print Adjustments** - **Print Head Alignment**.

3 Select **Manual(Simple)** or **Manual(Standard)**, and then press **Start**.

An adjustment pattern is printed. Wait until printing is complete.

4 Check the printed adjustment pattern.

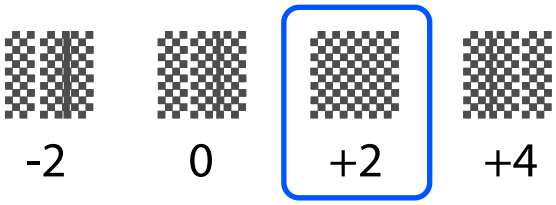
Adjustment pattern blocks are printed as shown below according to the type of manual adjustments.

Manual(Simple): 4 blocks, A to D

Manual(Standard): 31 blocks, A to Z and a to e

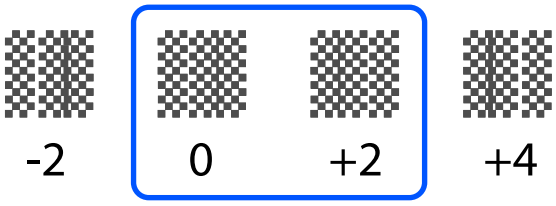
Select the pattern with the least tint unevenness for each block.

Select "+2" in the cases shown below.




If there are patterns where unevenness is the same, set an intermediate value in Step 5.

Set "+1" in the cases shown below.




5 The screen for entering confirmation results for the adjustment pattern is displayed.

On the entry screen of each block, set the number confirmed in Step 4 by pressing −/+, and then press **OK**.

The Media Settings menu is displayed when you finish the adjustments.

# Media Feed Adjustment

This menu is used when banding (horizontal banding, tint unevenness, or stripes) is detected in printing results.

You can select Auto or Manual to make adjustments.

## Auto

You can select **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Details)** to make adjustments.

**Auto(Standard)**

Select this when you want to perform quick and simple adjustment, such as for readjustment before the roll is used up.

The same adjustment as Media Feed Adjustment of Automatic Adjustment is performed.

**Auto(Details)**

Select this when you want to make highly precise adjustments, such as for improving the print quality of characters or ruled lines.

The approximate maximum length of the media required to print the test pattern is given below.

Auto(Standard): Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.)

Auto(Details):

SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | : | Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.) |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | : | Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.) |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | : | Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.) |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | : | Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.) |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | : | Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.) |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | : | Approx. 250 mm (9.84 in.) |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | : | Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.) |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | : | Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.) |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | : | Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.) |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | : | Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.) |

1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD : Approx. 150 mm (5.90 in.)

SC-F20000 Series:

600x600dpi 1.0passHS : Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.)

600x600dpi 1.1passHS : Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.)

600x600dpi 1.5passHS : Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.)

600x600dpi 2.1passHS : Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.)

600x600dpi 1.1pass : Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.)

600x600dpi 1.5pass : Approx. 450 mm (17.71 in.)

600x600dpi 2.1pass : Approx. 300 mm (11.81 in.)

600x1200dpi 3.1pass : Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.)

1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD : Approx. 200 mm (7.87 in.)

1 Check that the printer is ready, and load the media according to the actual usage conditions.

When using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, attach the media to the roll core.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

2 Press Menu, and then press in the order of **Media Settings** - **Print Adjustments** - **Media Feed Adjustment**.

3 Select **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Details)**, and then press **Start**.

Auto adjust starts, and an adjustment pattern is printed. Wait until adjustment is complete.

Selecting **Auto(Details)** displays the pass mode selection screen. Check that a pass mode to be used for printing is selected, and then press **OK**.

## Manual

You can select **Manual(Standard)** or **Manual(Measurement)** to make adjustments.

### Manual(Standard)

Make a selection in the following cases.

- ❏ When Auto adjustment has failed
- ❏ When you want to perform quick and simple adjustment by visually inspecting the pattern

### Manual(Measurement)

Make a selection in the following cases.

- ❏ When Auto and Manual(Standard) adjustments have failed
- ❏ When banding can be seen in the print results even after doing the adjustments for Manual(Standard)
- ❏ When it is difficult to check the patterns for Manual(Standard) due to bleeding ink, etc.
- ❏ When you want to print with accurate length

The approximate maximum length of the media required to print the test pattern is given below.

Manual(Standard): Approx. 100 mm (3.93 in.)

Manual(Measurement): Approx. 600 mm (23.62 in.)

### Adjustment Procedure

1 Check that the printer is ready, and load the media according to the actual usage conditions.

When using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, attach the media to the roll core.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

2 Press , and then press in the order of **Media Settings** - **Print Adjustments** - **Media Feed Adjustment** - **Manual(Standard)**.

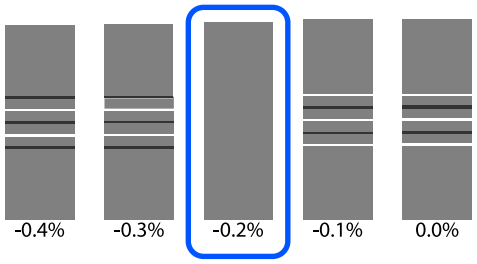
3 Press **Start**.

An adjustment pattern is printed. Wait until printing is complete.

4 Check the printed adjustment pattern.

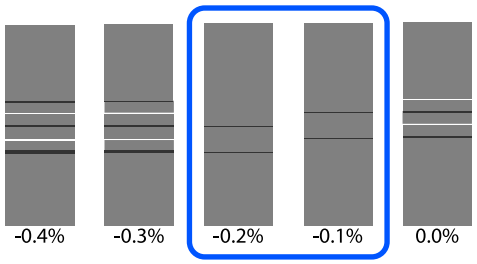
**When Manual(Standard) is selected**

Two groups of adjustment patterns, A and B, are printed. Select the pattern with the least amount of overlapping or gaps for each group. Select “-0.2%” in the cases shown below.




If there are patterns where the overlapping or gaps are the same, enter the middle value in Step 5.

Enter “-0.15%” in the cases shown below.



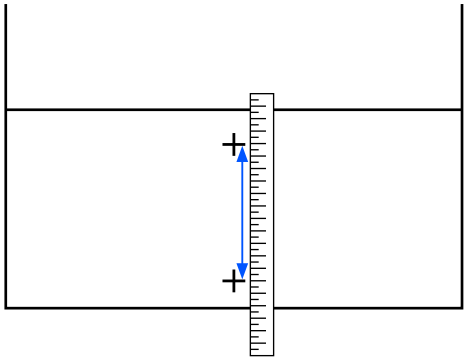

If all of the adjustment patterns contain overlaps or gaps, and you cannot narrow it down to 1, select the pattern with the least overlaps and gaps. Perform Steps 2 to 5 again, and repeat them until a pattern with no overlaps or gaps is printed.

If the pattern is difficult to check, such as if the ink bleeds, input "0.0%" one time.

In this situation, the media feed is not adjusted. Do the following steps to complete Manual(Standard), and then perform Manual(Measurement) again.

**When Manual(Measurement) is selected**

Measure the space between patterns using a scale of up to 0.5 mm (0.02 in.).



5 The screen for entering confirmation results for the adjustment pattern is displayed.

**When Manual(Standard) is selected**

Set the values printed under the patterns selected in A and B, and then press **OK**.

**When Manual(Measurement) is selected**

Set the value measured in Step 4, and then press **OK**.

When adjustments are complete, the Home screen is displayed.

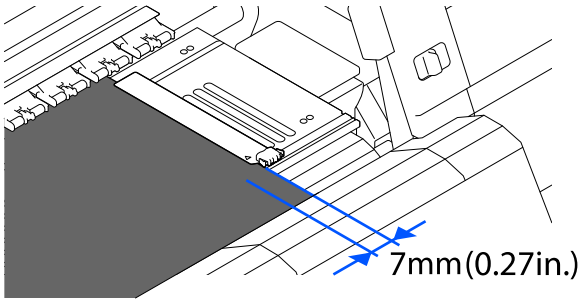
# Printable Area

## Width Detection and Media Edge Position

The media edge position recognized by the printer differs as follows depending on the Width Detection settings.

Width Detection **On** : The printer automatically detects the left and right edges of the loaded media.

When media edge plates are attached, the edge of the media is recognized as within 7 mm (0.27 in.) of the left and right edges of the media.



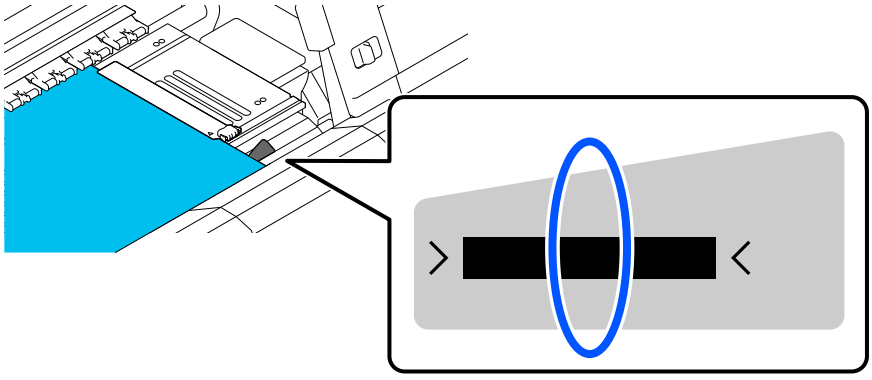

The edges of the media are not detected correctly if the media edge plates are not attached correctly.

"Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

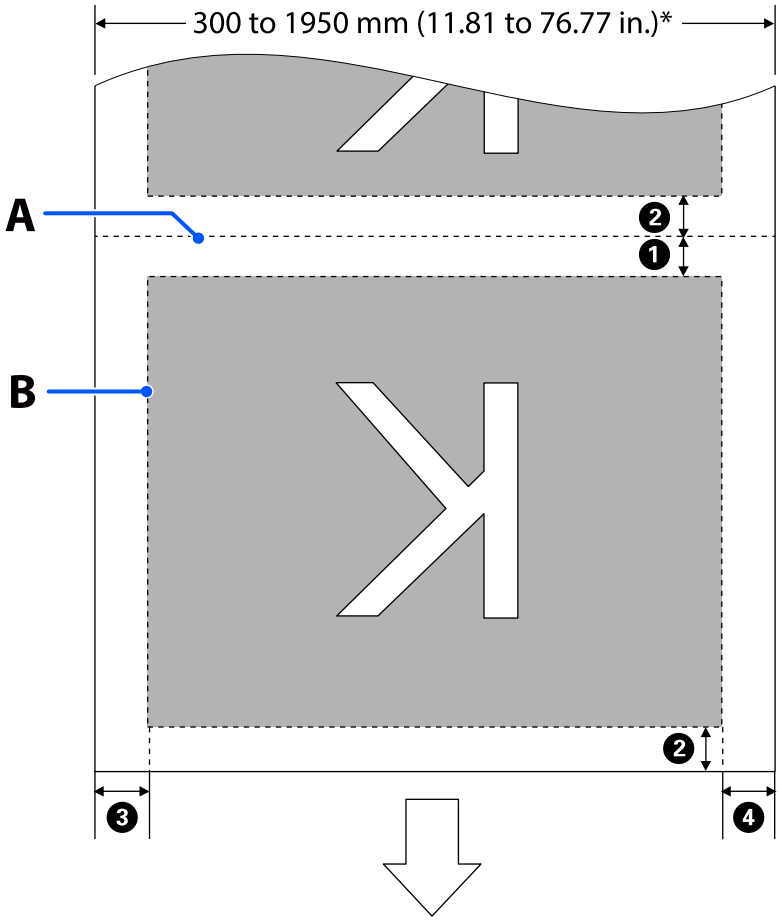
Width Detection **Off** : The center of the black rectangle on the label in front of the platen (shown in the illustration below) is recognized as the media edge, which serves as the media width reference position.

The printer recognizes the position at the value set when Width Detection is set to **Off**, measured from the media width reference position, as the media edge for the media width.



# Printable area and image print area

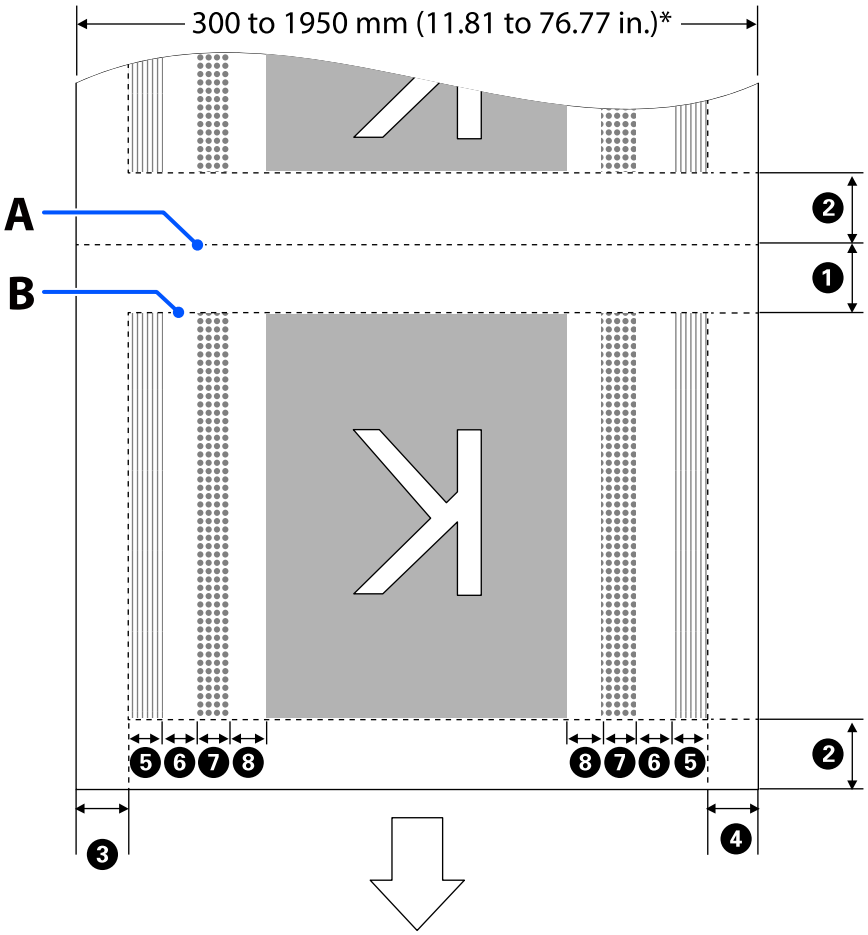
❏ When not using the Information Printing function
As shown in the illustration, the printable area can be used as an image print area for all jobs.



❏ When using the Information Printing function
As shown in the illustration, the size of the left and right sides of the image print area is reduced by the amount of information to print.
Areas to be used to print information vary according to the settings. Here, an example of the smallest image print area for the following settings is shown.

❏ Print position for the Event Marking of the Information Printing function: Left and right

❏ Print position for the nozzle check patterns of the Information Printing function: Left and right




A Media cut position

B Printable area

Image print area

Print area of nozzle check patterns

Event Marking area

* When **Width Detection** is set to **Off**, the set value (300 to 1950 mm [11.81 to 76.77 in.]) is applied.

The arrow indicates the feed direction.

The following shows the details for ❶ to ❽.

| Position | Explanation | Available Setting Range |
|---|---|---|
| ❶ *1, *3 | Half the value selected for **Margin Between Pages** in the printer's setup menu. To maintain media feeding accuracy, if the settings are less than 10 mm (0.39 in.), the settings are switched to 5 mm (0.19 in.). | 5 to 499.5 mm (0.19 to 19.66 in.) |
| ❷ *1, *2, *3 | Half the value selected for **Margin Between Pages**.<br>If the settings are less than 10 mm (0.39 in.), the settings are switched to "the setting -5".<br>When **Skip Wrinkled Media** is set to On, the settings are switched to 300 mm (11.81 in.) if the settings are less than 600 mm (23.62 in.). | 5 mm (0.19 in.) or more |
| ❸ *3, *4 | The value selected for **Side(Right)**. The default setting is 7 mm (0.27 in.).<br>When media edge plates are used, a value to which 7 mm (0.27 in.) is added is applied as the actual margin since within 7 mm of the edge is recognized as the media edge. | 3 to 25 mm (0.11 to 0.98 in.) |
| ❹ *3, *4 | The total of the values selected for Print Start Position and **Side(Left)**.<br>The default setting for Print Start Position is 0 mm and Side(Left) is 7 mm (0.27 in.).<br>When media edge plates are used, a value to which 7 mm (0.27 in.) is added is applied as the actual margin since within 7 mm of the edge is recognized as the media edge. | 3 to 1025 mm (0.11 to 40.35 in.) |
| ❺ | **Nozzle check pattern printing width**<br>16 mm (0.62 in.) when **Normal** is selected in **Pattern Selection**.<br>4 mm (0.15 in.) when **Paper Width Saving** is selected. | - |
| ❻ | **Space between nozzle check patterns and Event Marking**<br>Fixed to 3 mm (0.11 in.). | - |
| ❼ | **Event Marking width**<br>Fixed to 20 mm (0.78 in.). | - |
| ❽ | **Space between nozzle check patterns / Event Marking and image**<br>When **Print Position** is set to **Next to the Image**, the margin on the right side of the image represents the value selected for **Margin Between Images**.<br>When it is set to **Media End**, the value varies according to images and other settings. | 0 to 999 mm (0 to 39.33 in.) |

*1 The set margin and the actual print results may differ depending on the RIP being used. Contact the RIP manufacturer for more information.

*2 With **Width Adjustment** in the settings menu for the printer, you can adjust the margins in a range between -10 mm and +10 mm (-0.39 in. and 0.39 in.).

*3 This may be available in the RIP depending on the RIP software being used. Contact the RIP manufacturer for more information.

*4 Note the following points when setting margins.

- ❏ Leave margins of 10 mm (0.39 in.) or more when using media edge plates. Narrower margins could result in printer printing over the plates.
- ❏ If the total of the print data width and set left and right margins exceeds the printable area, a portion of the data will not be printed.

***Note:***
*If the following points are not observed when Width Detection is* ***Off****, printing may occur outside the left and right edges of the media. Ink used outside the edges of the media will stain the inside of the printer.*

- ❏ *Ensure that the print data width does not exceed the loaded media width.*
- ❏ *When media is loaded shifted toward the center from the media width reference position, set the amount of shift in* ***Print Start Position****.*
  ☞ *"General Settings menu" on page 201*

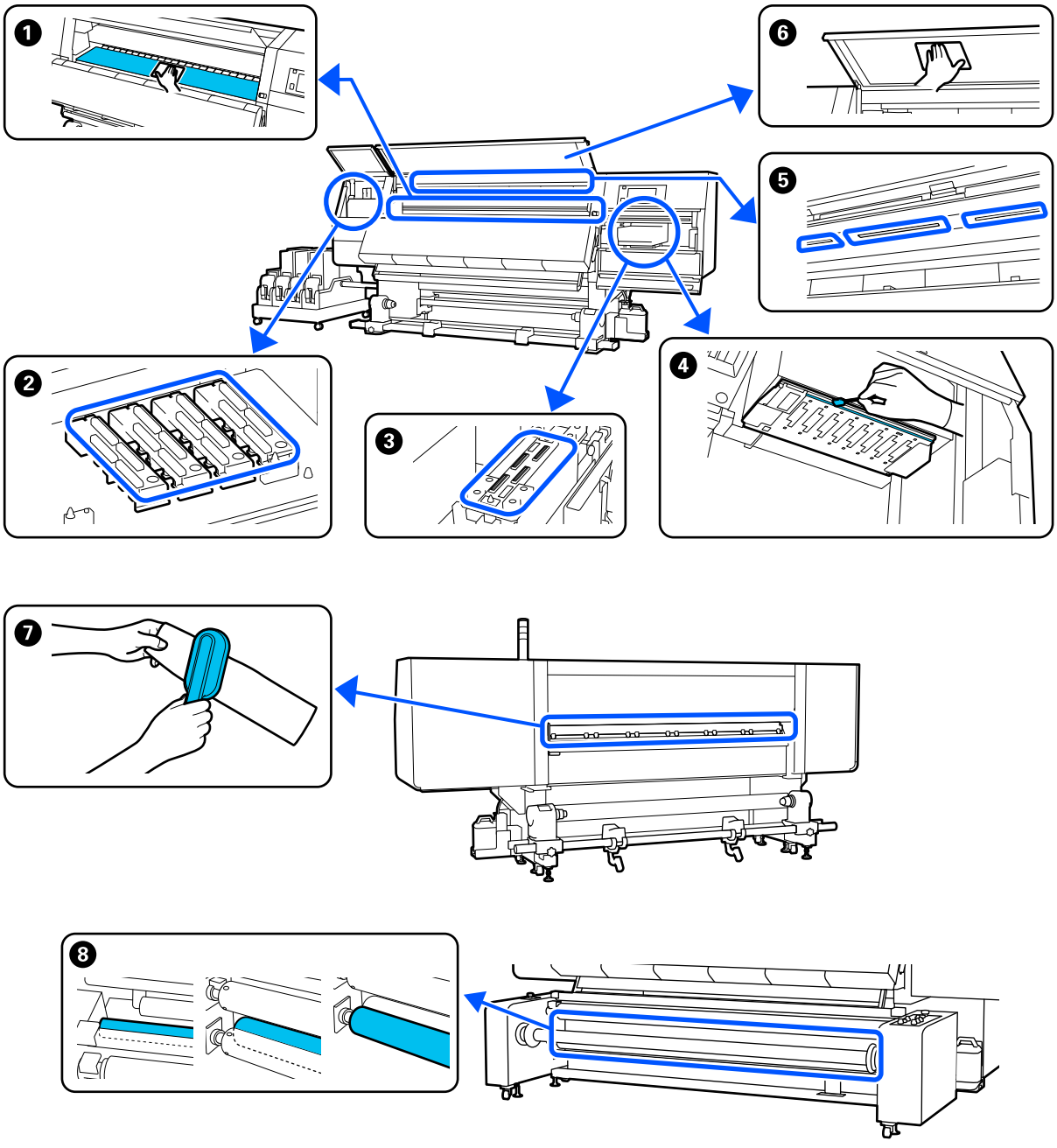
# Maintenance

## When to Perform Various Maintenance Operations

Cleaning and replacement of consumables must be performed to ensure the print quality of the printer.

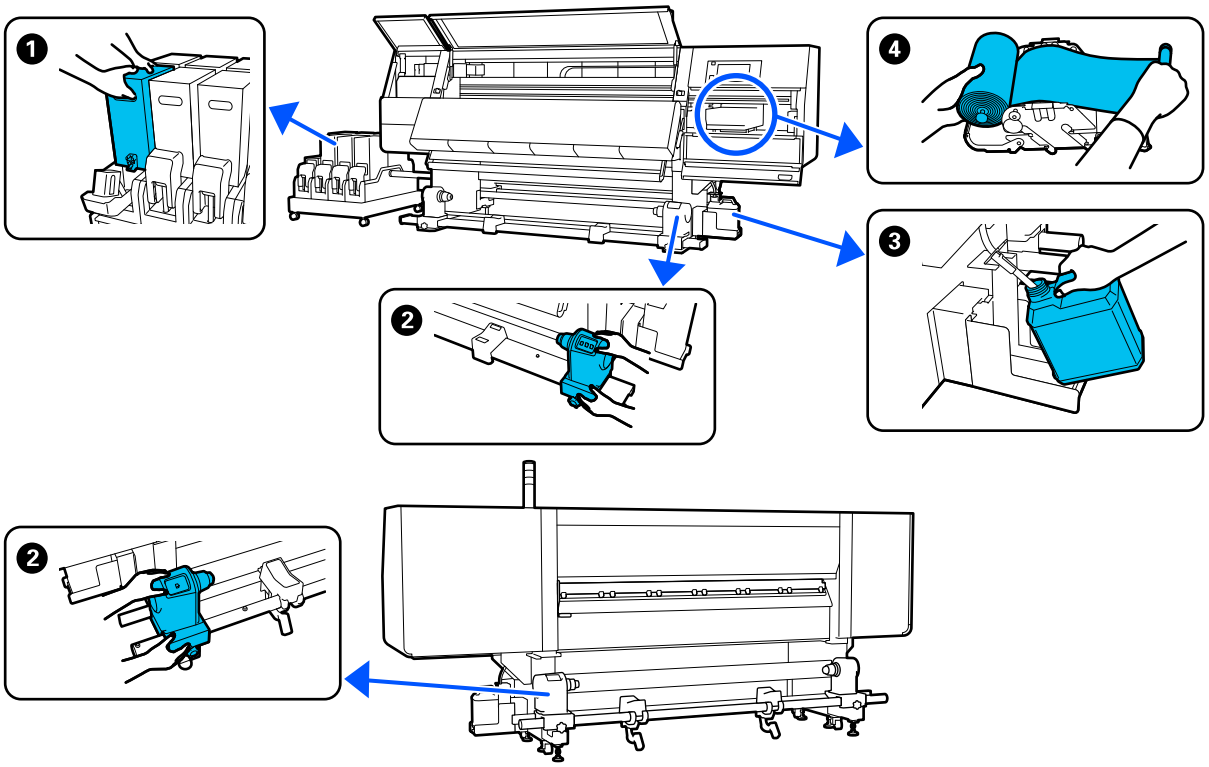
Failure to perform appropriate maintenance could result in reduced print quality. Read the following to perform appropriate maintenance.

### Cleaning



| When to perform | Component to be cleaned |
|---|---|
| When starting work every day | ❶ Platen, media edge plates, around dryer<br>❽ Roller<br>☞ "Daily cleaning" on page 155 |
| When a cleaning message is displayed on the control panel | ❷ Anti-drying caps<br>☞ "Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160<br><br>You can check the procedure in a video on YouTube.<br>Epson Video Manuals<br><br>❼ Media cleaner<br>☞ "Cleaning the media cleaners" on page 159 |
| When dirt is found on the print head in the following cases<br>❑ Media jams<br>❑ Print head striking occurs<br>❑ Print results are dirty | ❹ Around the print head<br>☞ "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164<br><br>You can check the procedure in a video on YouTube.<br>Epson Video Manuals |
| When it is hard to see inside the printer | ❻ Front cover<br>☞ "Cleaning the front cover" on page 167 |
| When internal lamp seems to be dark | ❺ Internal lamp<br>☞ "Cleaning the inside light" on page 166 |
| When executing Print Head Refresh | ❸ Cleaning suction caps<br>☞ "Cleaning the suction caps" on page 163<br><br>You can check the procedure in a video on YouTube.<br>Epson Video Manuals |

# Replacing consumables




| When to perform | Component to be replaced |
|---|---|
| When ink low warning is displayed on the control panel display | ❶ Ink cartridges<br>☞ "Replacement procedure" on page 168 |
| When a prepare and replacement message is displayed on the control panel screen | ❸ Waste ink bottle<br>☞ "Disposing of waste ink" on page 175<br><br>❹ Wiper roll<br>☞ "Replacing the wiper roll" on page 173 |
| When a prepare and replacement message is displayed on the control panel screen (Standard roll/Reel models, Large capacity roll models only) | ❷ Media holder<br>☞ "Replacing the media holder" on page 177 |

# Other maintenance

| When to perform | Operation |
|---|---|
| When a shake message is displayed on the control panel screen | Shaking ink cartridges<br>☞ "Periodic shaking of ink cartridges" on page 181 |

| When to perform | Operation |
|---|---|
| ❏ When checking if nozzles are clogged<br>❏ When checking which colors are clogged<br>❏ Horizontal stripes or tint unevenness (banding) have appeared | Checking for clogged nozzles<br>☞ "Checking for clogged nozzles" on page 185 |
| When a clog is found after checking for clogged nozzles | Cleaning the print head<br>☞ "Print Head Cleaning" on page 186 |
| Once a month | Checking the circuit breaker's performance<br>☞ "Checking the circuit breaker's performance" on page 187 |

# Necessary Items

Ready the following items before beginning cleaning and replacement.

When the supplied parts have been completely used, purchase new consumables.

Prepare genuine parts when replacing ink cartridges or performing maintenance.

☞ "Options and Consumable Products" on page 231

If your gloves have worn out, prepare commercially available nitrile gloves.

**Protective eyeglasses (available in the market)**

Protects your eyes from ink and cleaning fluid.

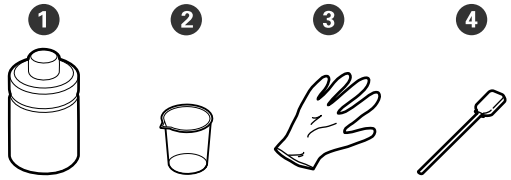
**Mask (available in the market)**

Protects your nose and mouth from ink and cleaning fluid.

**Cleaning kit (supplied with the printer)**

Use these when wiping up ink stains.

The following accessories are in the kit.




❶ Cleaning fluid (x1)

❷ Cup (x1)

❸ Gloves (x16)

❹ Cleaning stick (x50)

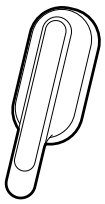
How to use ☞ "Using Cleaning liquid" on page 159

**Metal or plastic (PP or PE) tray (available in the market)**

Use when putting cleaning utensils, removed consumables, or cleaning fluid moved to the container supplied with the printer.

**Media Cleaner Brush (supplied with the printer)**

Use when cleaning with media cleaner.



**Soft cloth (available in the market)**

Use when cleaning inside the front cover and the bottom of the dryer. Use material that is not likely to generate lint or static electricity.

# Precautions Regarding Maintenance

Note the following points when cleaning and replacing parts.

***Caution:***

- ❏ *Store ink cartridge, cleaning fluid, and waste ink in a location out of the reach of children.*
- ❏ *During maintenance, wear protective clothing, including protective eyewear, gloves, and a mask.*
  *If ink, waste ink, cleaning fluid, or grease contacts your skin or enters your eyes or mouth, take the following actions:*
  - ❏ *If fluid adheres to your skin, immediately wash it off using large volumes of soapy water. Consult a physician if the skin appears irritated or is discolored.*
  - ❏ *If fluid enters your eyes, rinse immediately with water. Failure to observe this precaution could result in bloodshot eyes or mild inflammation. If problems persist, consult with a physician.*
  - ❏ *If fluid enters your mouth, consult a physician immediately.*
  - ❏ *If fluid is swallowed, do not force the person to vomit, and consult with a physician immediately. If the person is forced to vomit, fluid may get caught in the trachea which can be dangerous.*
  - ❏ *Do not drink the ink.*

- ❏ Remove the media from the printer before proceeding with cleaning or replacing the media holder.
- ❏ Never touch the belts, circuit boards, or any parts that do not require cleaning. Failure to observe this precaution could result in malfunction or reduced print quality.
- ❏ Use only the supplied cleaning sticks or sticks contained in a maintenance kit. Other types of sticks that produce lint will damage the print head.
- ❏ Always use fresh cleaning sticks. Re-using sticks can make stains even harder to remove.
- ❏ Do not touch the tips of the cleaning sticks. Oil from your hands could damage the print head.
- ❏ Do not use anything other than the specified cleaning fluid when cleaning around the print head, caps, etc. Using anything else could result in malfunction or reduced print quality.
- ❏ Touch a metallic object before starting work to discharge any static electricity.

# Cleaning

## Daily cleaning

When lint, dust, or ink adheres to the platen or the media edge plates, it could cause clogged nozzles or ink drops to occur.
Dirt on the media path around the dryer could make the printouts dirty.
To maintain optimum printing quality, we recommend cleaning before starting work every day.

***Caution:***

- ❏ *The dryer may be hot; observe all necessary precautions. Failure to observe the necessary precautions could result in burns.*
- ❏ *Do not put your hand inside the dryer. Failure to observe the necessary precautions could result in burns.*
- ❏ *Be careful not to trap your hands or fingers when opening or closing the front cover or the maintenance cover. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*

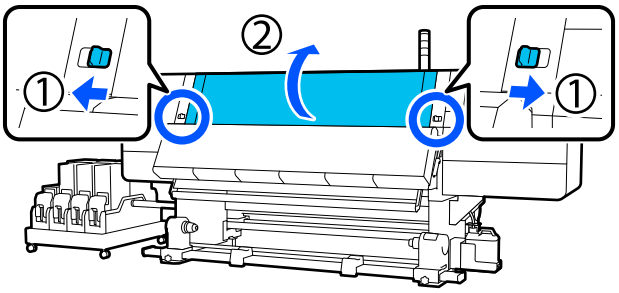
1. Make sure the printer is turned off and the screen has turned off, and then unplug the power cable from the outlet.

   Unplug both power plugs from the printer.

   If you are using a large capacity reel model, also turn off the auto take-up reel unit and unplug the power plug from the outlet.

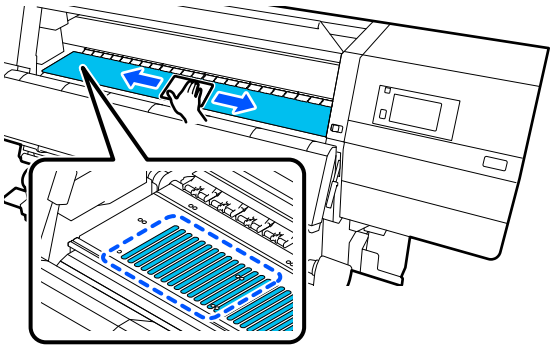
2. Wait for one minute after unplugging the power plug.

3 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.

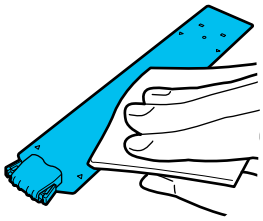



4 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe off any ink, lint, or dust that has adhered to the platen.

Carefully remove lint and dust stuck in the groove of the platen.



5 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe off any lint, or dust that has adhered to the media edge plates.

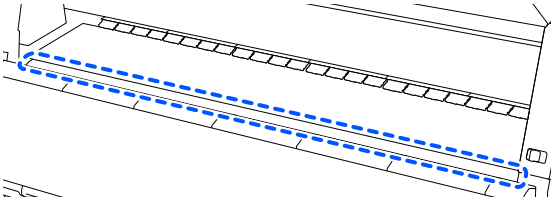


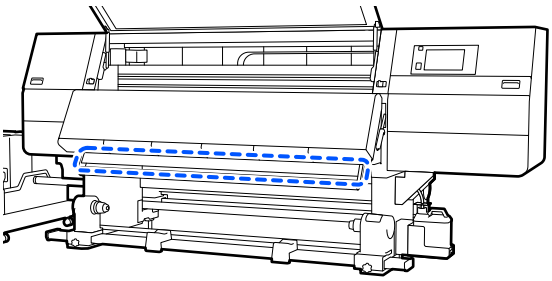
**Important:**

*When media with glue has been used or when ink has adhered to the media edge plates, follow the procedure in the "Cleaning the media edge plates when media with glue has been used or when ink has adhered" in the next section to clean the front and back of the plates. If you continue printing while glue is stuck to the rear, it may rub against the print head.*

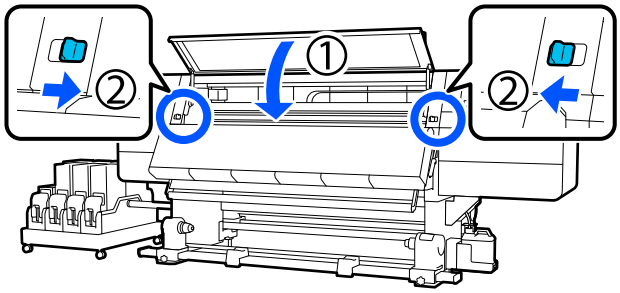
6 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe off any ink, lint, or dust that has adhered to the upper and lower parts of the dryer.

Wipe the area shown in the illustration below.



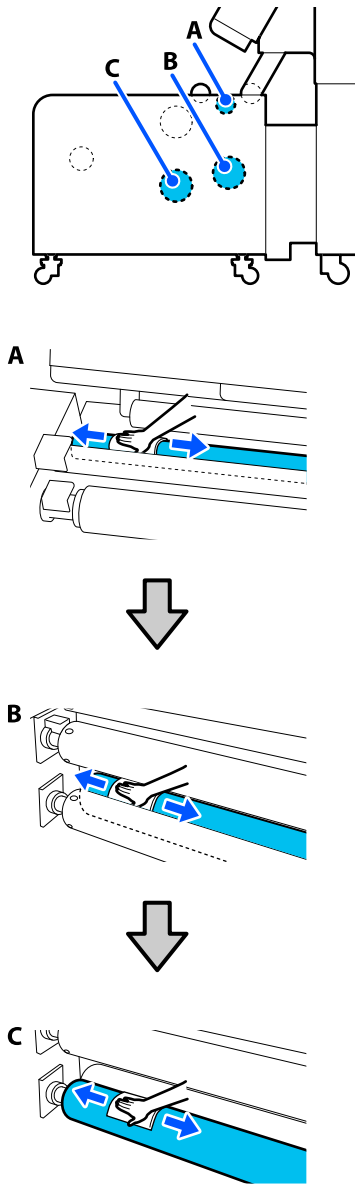


7 After wiping off stains, close the front cover and move the left and right lock levers inwards.



8 If you are using a large capacity reel model, check that there are no stains on the roller surfaces at points A, B, and C shown in the illustration.

If there are stains, soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe away any stains. When wiping, rotate the rollers by hand to wipe the dirt from the entire circumference.




9 Plug all power plugs for the printer into outlets and turn on the power.

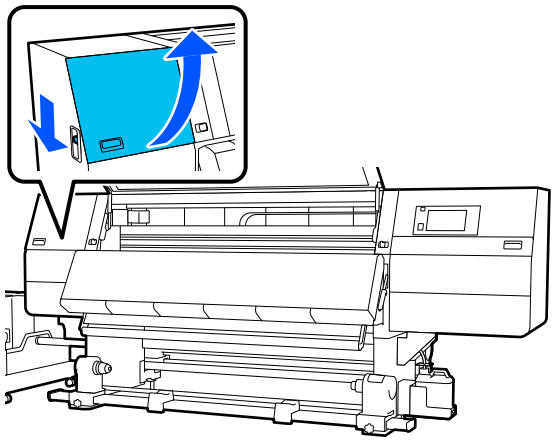
If you are using a large capacity reel model, turn on the auto take-up reel unit first, and then turn on the printer.

**Cleaning the media edge plates when media with glue has been used or when ink has adhered**

Remove the media edge plates from the printer, and clean the front and back of the plates using a diluted neutral detergent.

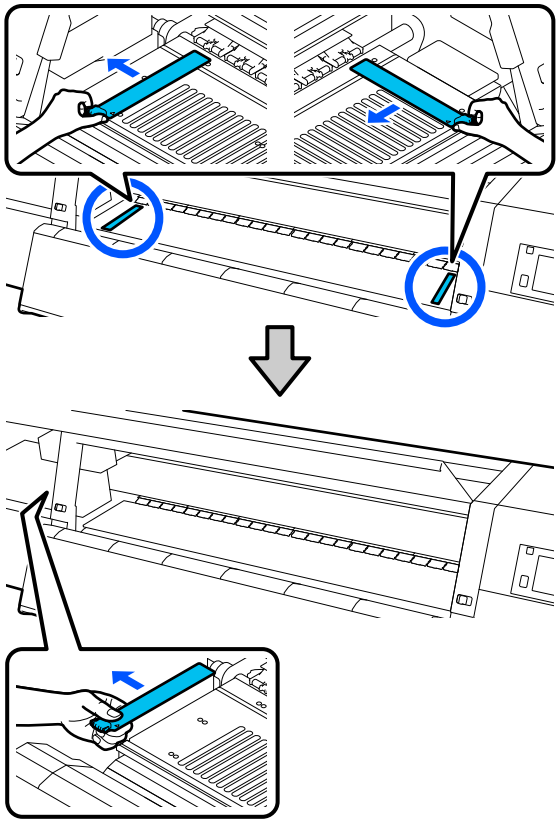
When stains are removed, attach the plates to their original positions.

1 Open the left-side maintenance cover while lowering the lock release levers.

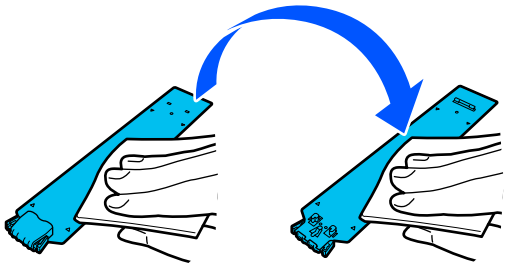


2 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate to the left edge of the platen to remove it.

Remove the right media edge plate also from the left side.

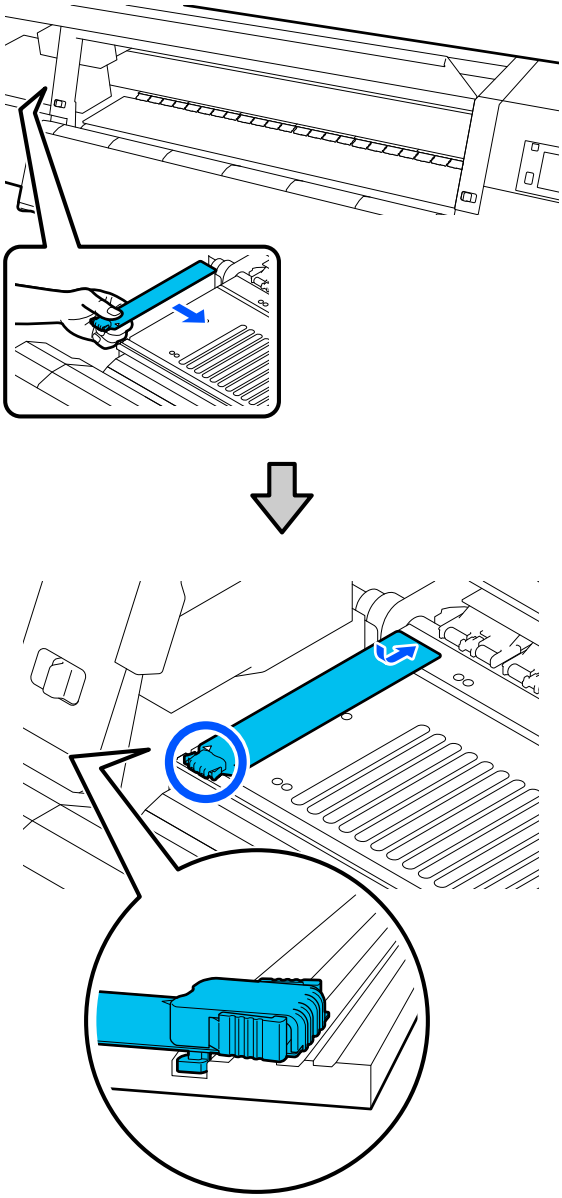


3 Soak a soft cloth in diluted neutral detergent, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe off any glue or ink that has adhered to the front and back of the media edge plates.



4 After wiping off stains, insert the media edge plate from the left side of the platen.

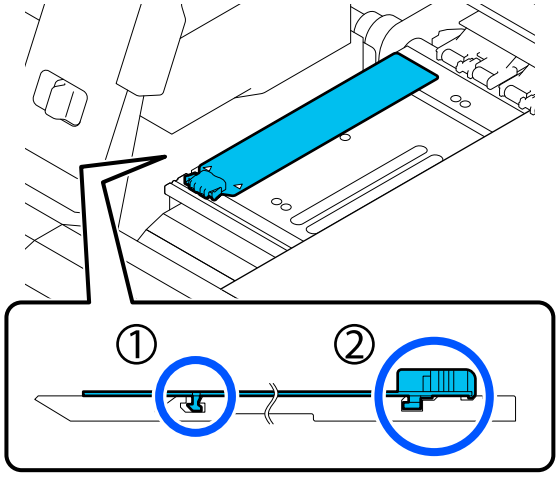
Insert the right media edge plate also from the left side.
When inserting the plate, attach the hooked sections to the front corner of the platen while pressing the tip of the metallic plate against the platen.



5 Check that two hooked sections at the rear of the media edge plate are securely applied as shown below and that they are attached with no gap between the platen and media edge plate.

(1) Hook into the tip: Corners of the platen

(2) Hook into the rear of tab: Front corner of the platen

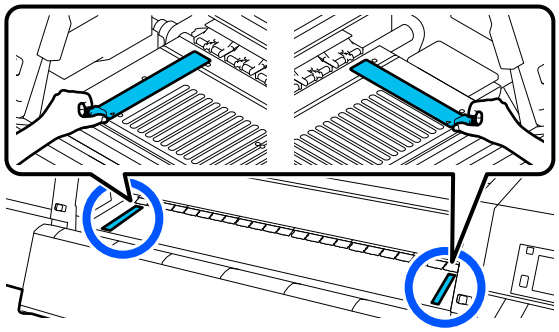



**Important:**

*If hooked sections are not positioned correctly, return to Step 4 to attach them again. Otherwise, the head may be damaged.*

6 While holding the tabs of each media edge plate on both sides, move both the plates to the left and right edges of the platen respectively.

Releasing the tab fixes the media edge plate.



7 Close the left-side maintenance cover.

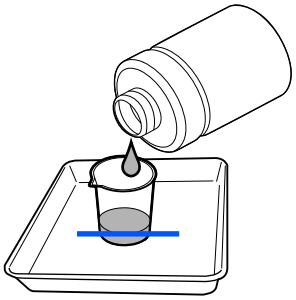
## Using Cleaning liquid

Only use Cleaning liquid to clean the parts indicated in the manual.

Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

"Precautions Regarding Maintenance" on page 154

1 Put the cup supplied with the Cleaning Kit on the tray, and pour approximately 10 ml of Cleaning liquid into the cup.



2 Dampen the cleaning stick with Cleaning liquid.

When doing this, do not allow Cleaning liquid to drip from the cleaning stick.



**Important:**

- ❏ *Do not use Cleaning liquid that you have used for cleaning to clean the next time. Using dirty Cleaning liquid will make staining worse.*
- ❏ *Tightly close the lid of the Cleaning liquid and store it at room temperature out of direct sunlight and away from high temperatures or humidity.*
- ❏ *Used Cleaning liquid and cleaning sticks are industrial waste. Dispose of them in the same way as for waste inks.*

"Disposing of Used Consumables" on page 189

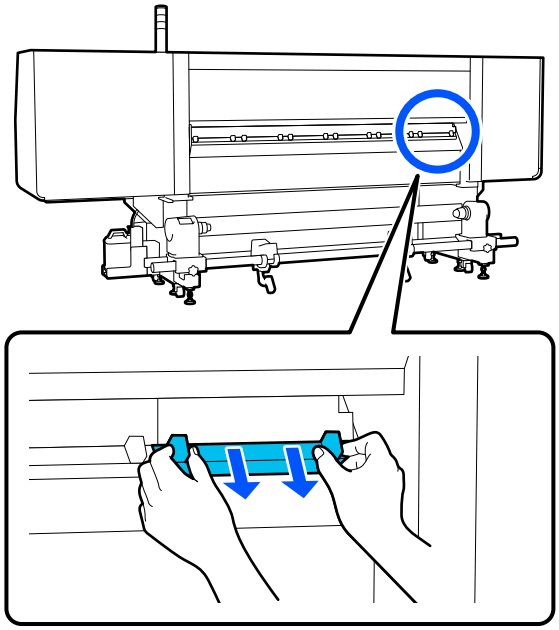
## Cleaning the media cleaners

If the media cleaners are dirty, they cannot sufficiently wipe dirt and dust off the surface of the media, so there is a risk that problems may occur, such as clogged nozzles.

If the **Clean the media cleaner. After cleaning is complete, press [OK].** message appears on the control panel's screen, use the supplied media cleaner brush to clean them.

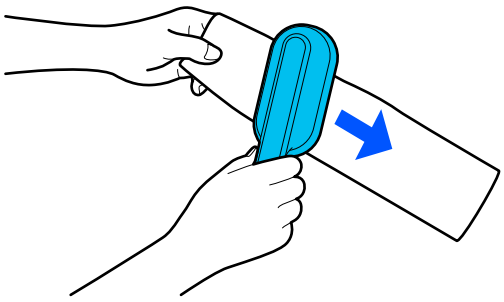
1 Check the on-screen message, move to the back, and remove the media cleaners.

While pressing the tabs on both sides, pull it off.



2 Use the supplied brush to wipe dirt and dust from the surface.

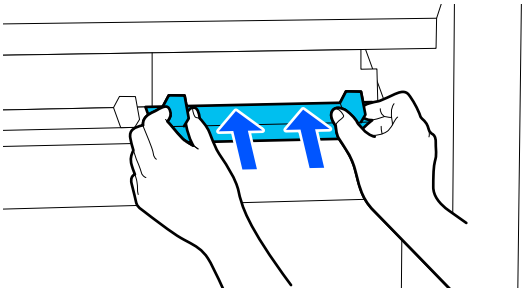
Since the brush's surface has a direction in which to wipe, move it in the direction that wipes off the dirt and dust.



***Note:***
*You can switch the direction in which to wipe.*

3 When you finish cleaning a media cleaner, install it to the printer.

Hold the tabs as you insert the media cleaner until you hear a click.



4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to clean all of the media cleaners.

5 On the screen, press **Done**.

## Cleaning anti-drying caps

When an anti-drying cap needs to be cleaned, the **Cleaning the Anti-Drying Caps.** message appears on the screen, and the cap that needs to be cleaned is indicated.

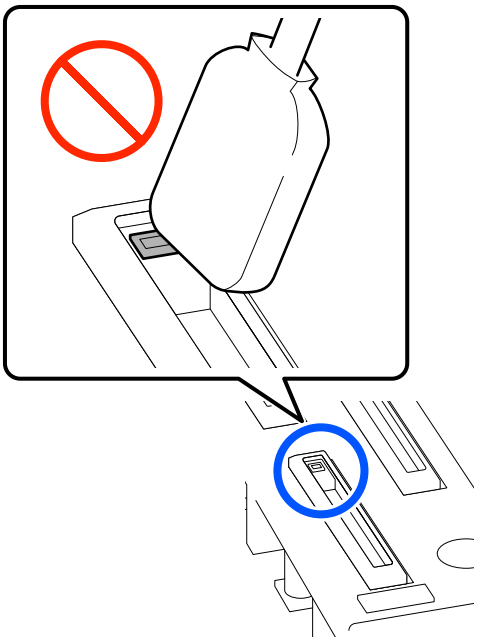
When this message is displayed, follow the steps below to clean only the indicated cap.

Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

“Precautions Regarding Maintenance” on page 154

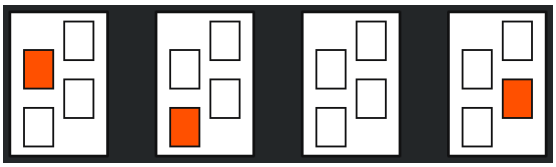
**Important:**

*When using a cleaning stick to wipe a cap, do not wipe the area around the hole inside the cap. The cleaning fluid may get into the hole, causing the cap to not function correctly.*



1 If **Cleaning the Anti-Drying Caps.** appears on screen, confirm which cap to clean.

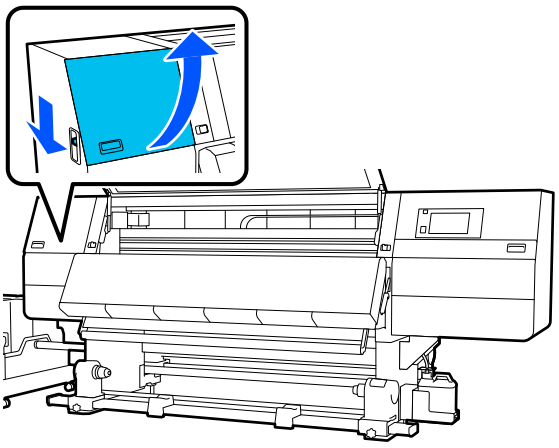
The cap that needs to be cleaned is highlighted, as shown in the illustration.



2 Press **Start**.

The print head moves to the right side.

3 Lower the lock release lever to open the left-side maintenance cover.

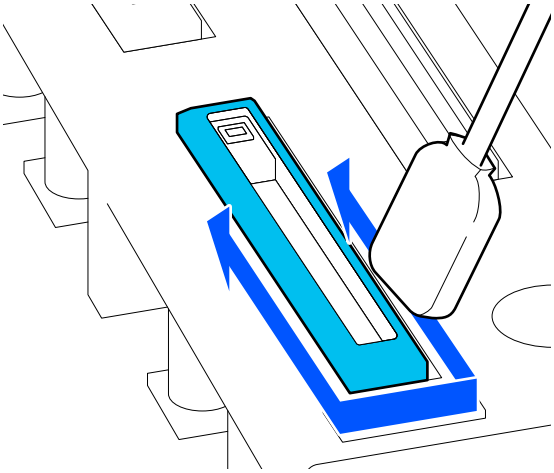


4 Dampen the cleaning stick with cleaning fluid.

"Using Cleaning liquid" on page 159

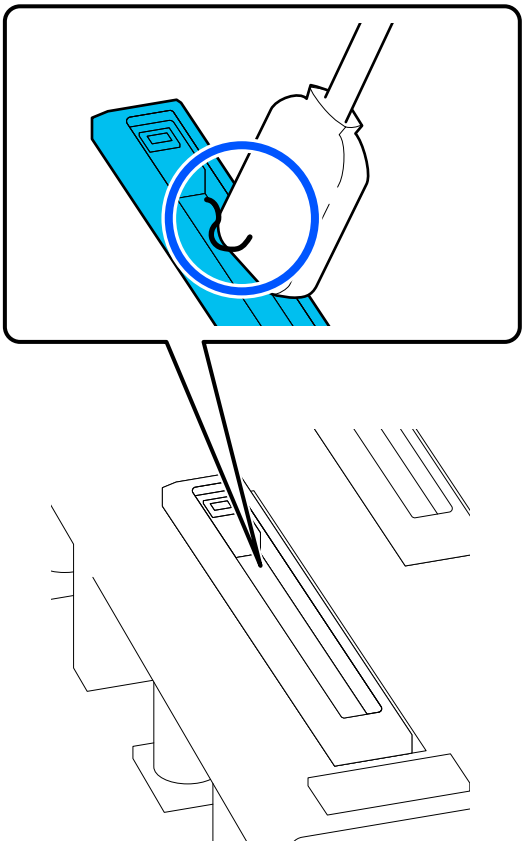
5 Hold the cleaning stick in a perpendicular orientation, and wipe the outer area of the cap that needs to be cleaned.

While wiping, avoid the area around the hole inside the cap.



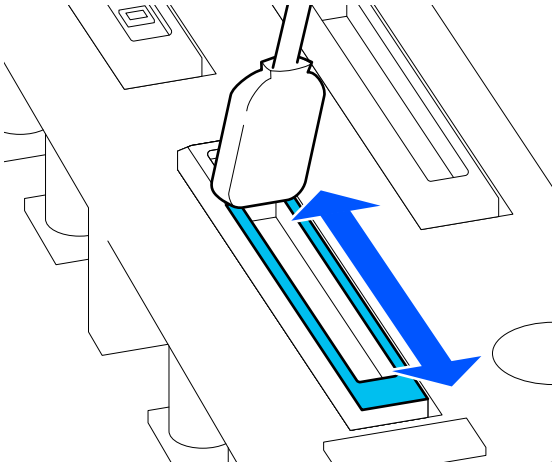
**When there is lint or dust on the cap**

Remove it by using the tip of the cleaning stick.



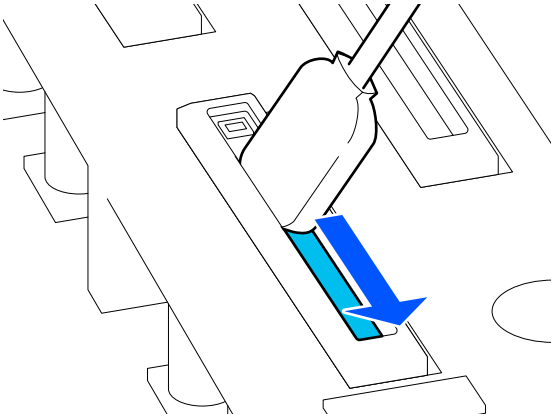
6 Hold the cleaning stick flat and wipe the edges of the cap.

While wiping, avoid the area around the hole inside the cap.

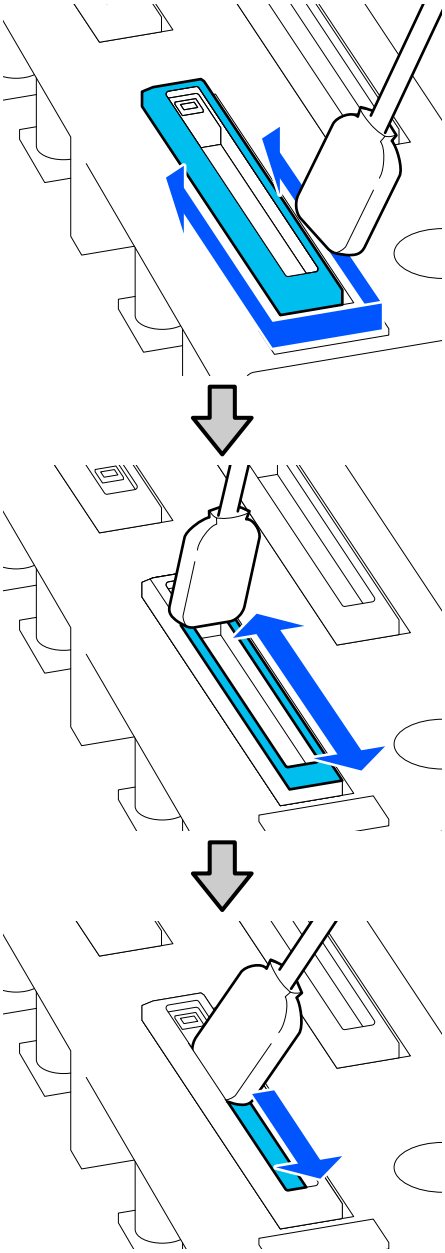


7 Hold the cleaning stick in a perpendicular orientation, and wipe the inside of the cap.

While wiping, avoid the area around the hole inside the cap and move the cleaning stick only in the direction away from the hole.



8 Use a new dry cleaning stick to wipe up all the ink and cleaning fluid on the inside, edges, and area around the cap.



Wipe up all the ink and cleaning fluid, leaving no residue, as shown in the illustration below. If any ink or cleaning fluid is left over, it could clog the nozzles.



9 Close the maintenance cover, and then press **Done**.

The print head returns to its normal position.

When the print head returns to its normal position, the screen for checking if the print head is dirty appears.

If necessary, clean the print head.

☞ "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

Disposing of used ink cleaner and cleaning sticks

☞ "Disposing of Used Consumables" on page 189

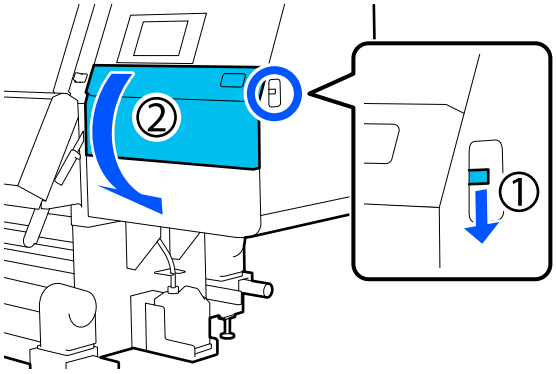
## Cleaning the suction caps

Clean the suction caps before doing Print Head Refresh. If you do not clean the suction caps, doing Print Head Refresh is not fully effective. Before doing Print Head Refresh, use the following procedure to clean the suction caps.

1 On the Home screen, press , and then press in the order of **Cleaning the Maintenance Parts** - **Suction Cap**.

2 Check the on-screen message, and then press **Start**.

3 Lower the lock release lever to open the right-side maintenance cover.

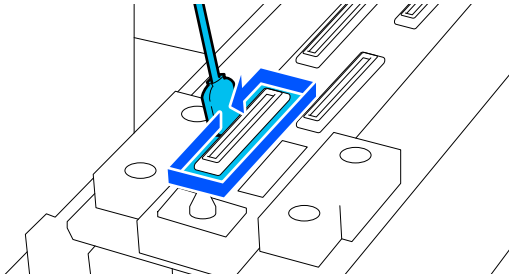



4 Dampen the cleaning stick with cleaning fluid.

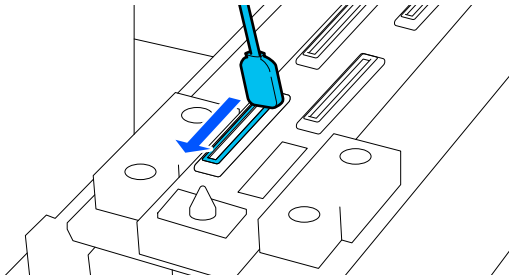
Use new cleaning sticks and cleaning fluid.

"Using Cleaning liquid" on page 159

5 Hold the cleaning stick in a perpendicular orientation, and wipe the outer areas of all the caps.



6 Hold the cleaning stick flat and wipe the edges of all the caps.

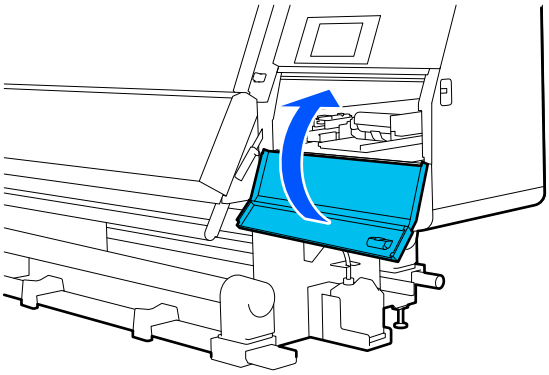


7 Check that there are no ink stains, lint, or dust attached to the edges or outer area of the cap.

If they are not dirty, cleaning is complete.

If any dirt remains, repeat Steps 5 and 6 to wipe off any dirt.

8 Close the maintenance cover.



9 On the control panel screen, press **Done**.

## Cleaning around the print head

If any of the following problems occur, check the print head and clean it if there are any ink clots, lint, or dust.

- ❏ Media jams
- ❏ Print head striking
- ❏ Print results are dirty

Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

"Precautions Regarding Maintenance" on page 154

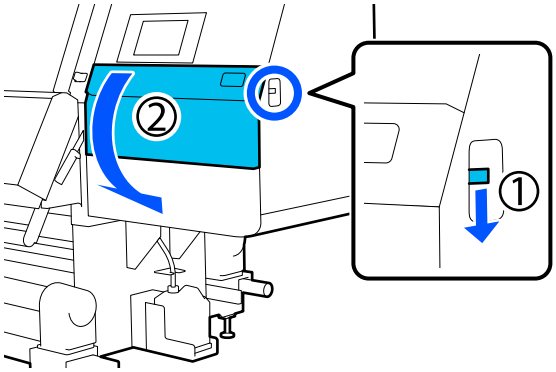
1 Move the print head to the cleaning position.

If the media has jammed, remove the jammed media, and when **Open the Maintenance Cover and clean around the print heads if they are dirty.** appears, press **Confirmation**.

For problems other than jammed media, press on the Home screen, and then press in the order of **Cleaning the Maintenance Parts** - **Around the Head**.

2 Check the on-screen message, and then press **Start**.

3 Confirm that the print head has moved to the right side, and then press the lock release lever to open the right-side maintenance cover.

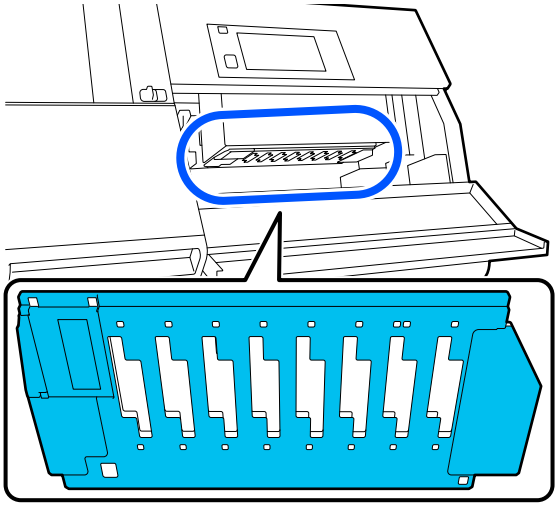



4 Check for dirt on the print head.

Check that there is no ink, lint, or dust stuck to the area shown in the illustration.

If it is dirty, then move on to the next procedure.

If it is not dirty, then move on to Step 7.

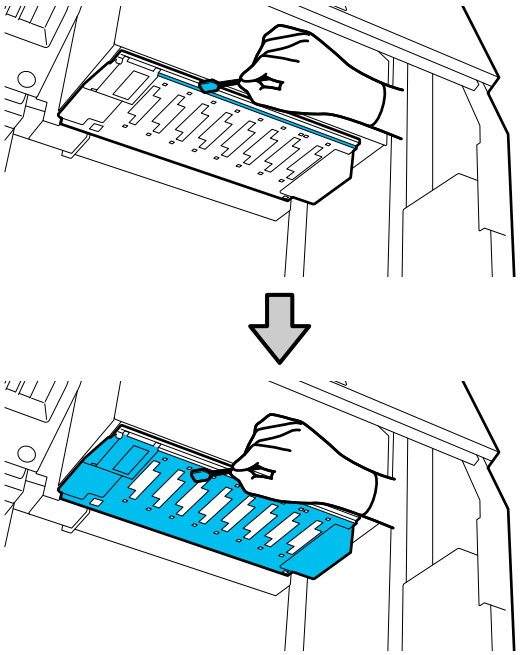


5 Dampen the cleaning stick with cleaning fluid.

Use new cleaning sticks and cleaning fluid.

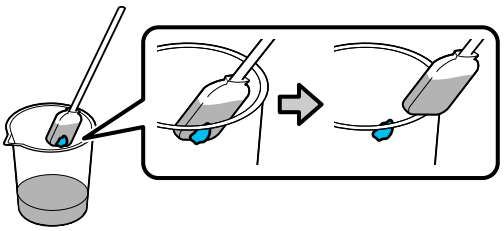
"Using Cleaning liquid" on page 159

6 Wipe off any ink, lint, or dust that is stuck to the area shown in the illustration.

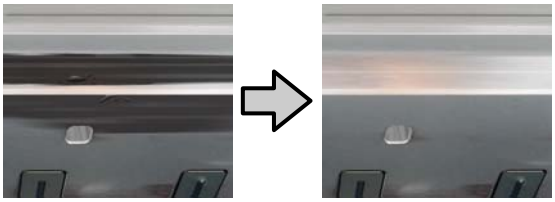


**Important:**

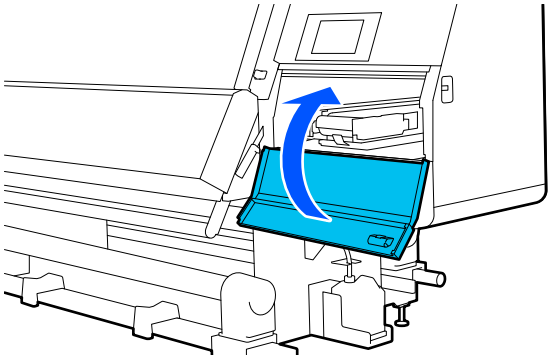
- *If the cleaning stick becomes dirty, rinse it with cleaning fluid as you wipe.*
- *After removing a clot of ink with a cleaning stick, wipe the cleaning stick against the edge of the cup to remove the clot.*



Wipe off the ink stains until you can see the metal surface of the print head, as shown in the illustration.



7 Close the maintenance cover.



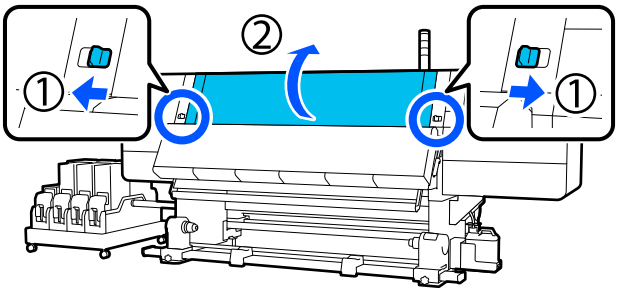
8 On the control panel screen, press **Done**.

## Cleaning the inside light

The printer has an inside light inside the front cover and maintenance covers to make it easy to check print results and areas for maintenance. If ink mist makes the surface of the inside light dirty, it becomes dim so checking becomes difficult. If it seems dim, follow the steps below to clean it.

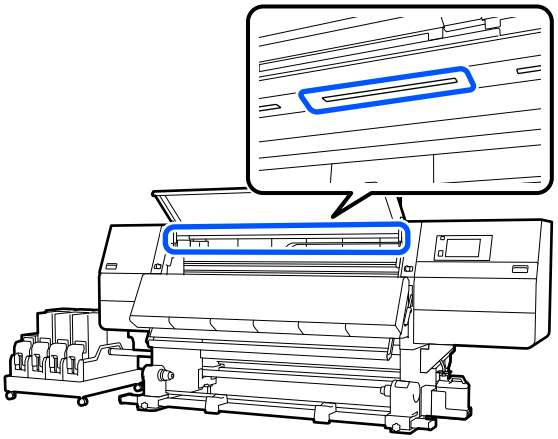
> ***Caution:***
> *Be careful not to trap your hands or fingers when opening or closing the front cover or the maintenance cover. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*

1 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



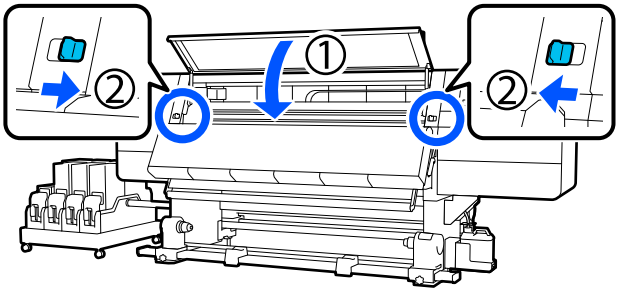

2 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe any dirt off the inside light surfaces shown in the illustration.

There are a total of 4 inside lights inside the front cover. Wipe the dirt from all these surfaces.

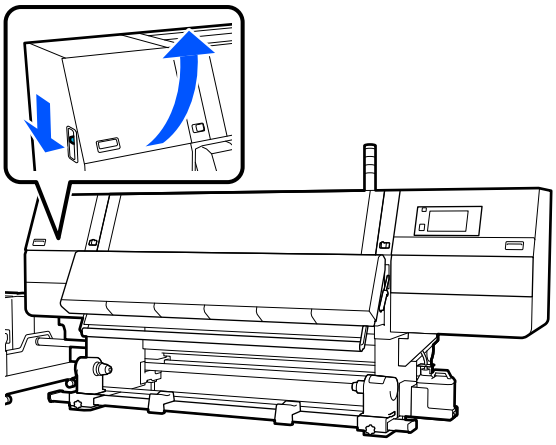


For anything that cannot be removed with a damp cloth, dip a cloth in neutral detergent, squeeze it out, and then wipe the stubborn stain.

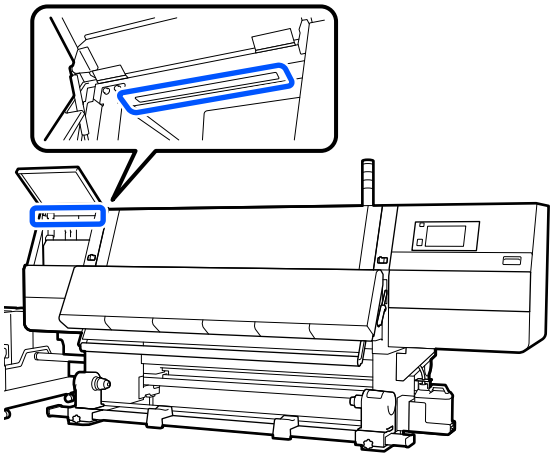
3 After wiping off stains, close the front cover and move the left and right lock levers inwards.




4 Lower the lock release lever to open the left-side maintenance cover.



5 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe any dirt off of the inside light surfaces shown in the illustration.



For anything that cannot be removed with a damp cloth, dip a cloth in neutral detergent, squeeze it out, and then wipe the stubborn stain.

6 After wiping off the dirt, close the maintenance cover.

## Cleaning the front cover

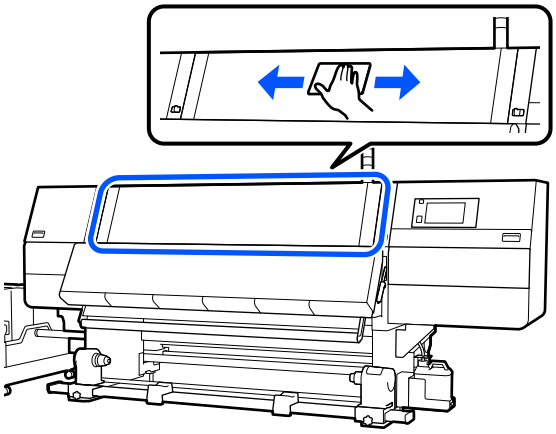
The front cover becomes dirty from dust and ink mist, etc., if you continue to use the printer in this condition, the inside of the printer becomes difficult to see. If it is dirty, follow the steps below to clean.

> ***Caution:***
> *Be careful not to trap your hands or fingers when opening or closing the front cover or the maintenance cover. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*

1 Make sure the printer is turned off and the screen has turned off, and then unplug the power cable from the outlet.

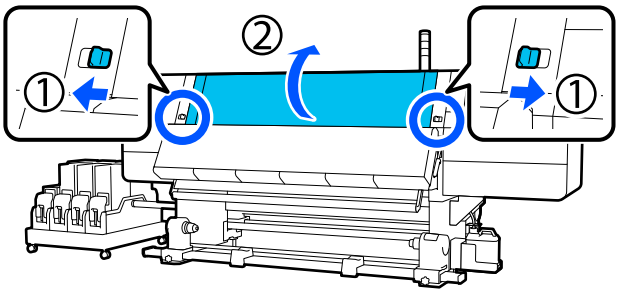
Disconnect both of the power cables.

2 Soak a soft cloth in water, wring it out thoroughly, and then wipe any dirt off the window on the front cover.

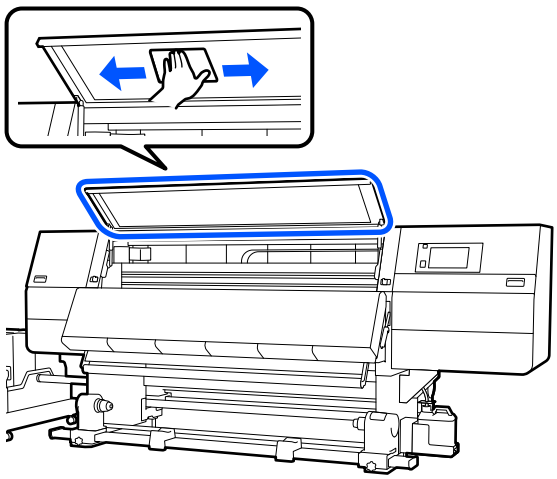


For anything that cannot be removed with a damp cloth, dip a cloth in neutral detergent, squeeze it out, and then wipe the stubborn stain.

3 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.

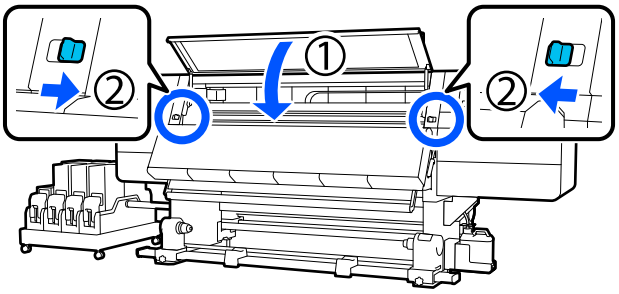



4 Wipe the inside of the window.



For anything that cannot be removed with a damp cloth, dip a cloth in neutral detergent, squeeze it out, and then wipe the stubborn stain.

5 After wiping off stains, close the front cover and move the left and right lock levers inwards.




# Replacing Consumables

## Replacing ink cartridges

If ink is expended, replace the ink cartridge immediately with a new one. You can check the ink level on the Home screen.

"Home screen" on page 27

Two ink cartridges for each color are loaded into the ink supply unit, so the cartridge not in use can be replaced during printing.

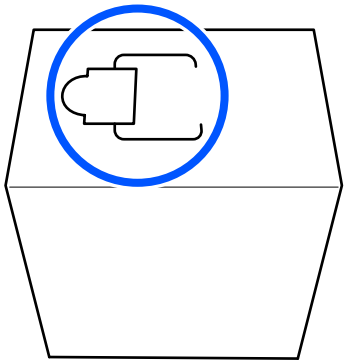
### Replacement procedure

**Important:**

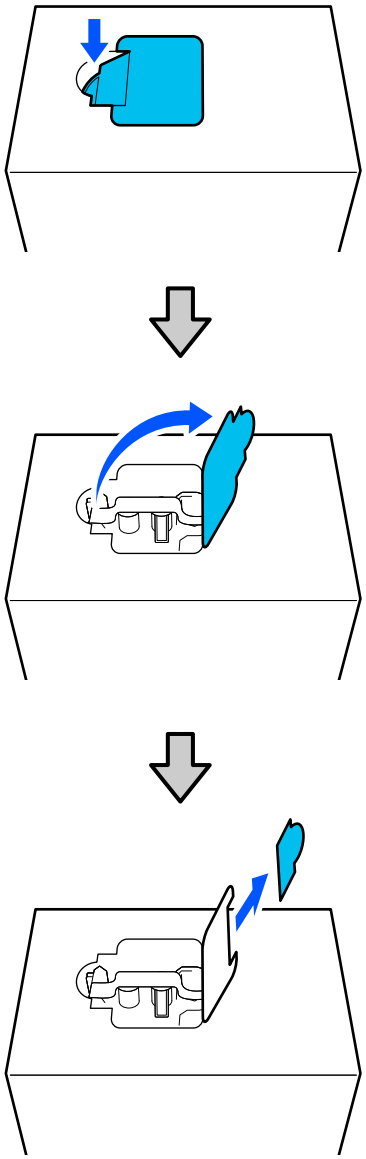
- *Epson recommends the use of genuine Epson ink cartridges. Epson cannot guarantee the quality or reliability of non-genuine ink. The use of non-genuine ink may cause damage that is not covered by Epson's warranties, and under certain circumstances, may cause erratic printer behavior.*
  *Information about non-genuine ink levels may not be displayed, and use of non-genuine ink is recorded for possible use in service support.*
- *Due to ink characteristics, the ink cartridges of this printer are prone to sedimentation (components settling to the bottom of the liquid). If ink settles, tint unevenness and nozzle clogs occur.*
  *Shake a new ink cartridge before installing it. After installing it in the printer, remove and shake it periodically.*

#### Opening and shaking

1 Place a new ink cartridge on a flat surface with the ink supply outlet slot facing up.



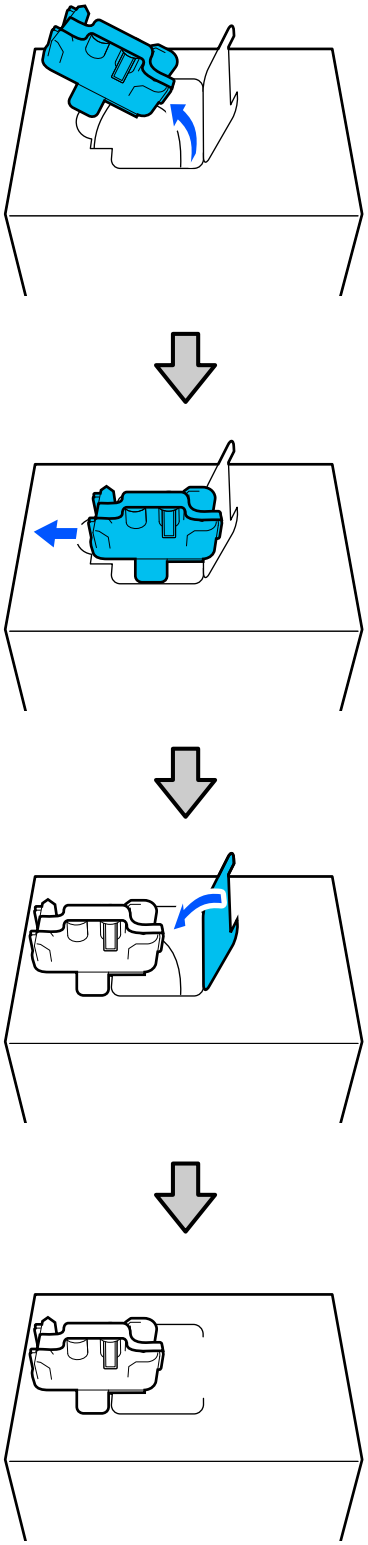
2 Use your hands to cut along the dashed lines of the slot to remove the portion shown in the illustration.

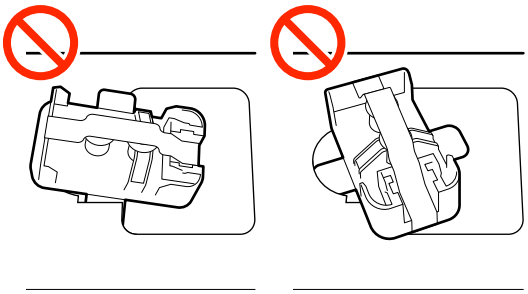


**Important:**

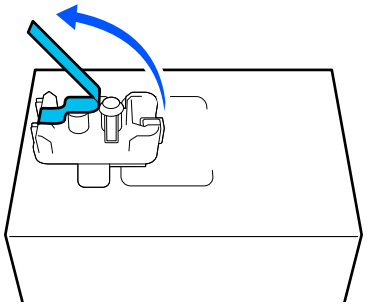
*Do not use a cutter to cut along the dashed lines. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the internal parts and cause ink to leak.*

3 Take out the ink supply outlet from inside and fix it as shown in the illustration.





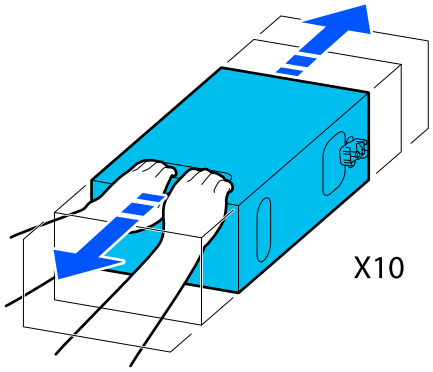
4 Remove tape from the surface of ink supply outlet.



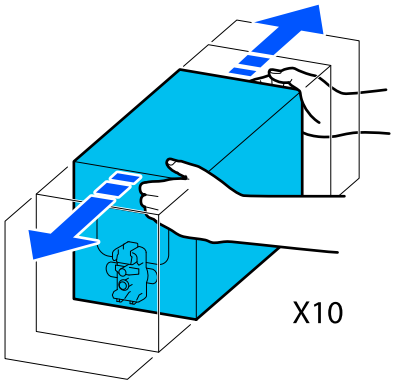
5 Place the ink cartridge with the ink supply outlet facing the side, and slide the ink cartridge back and forth longitudinally within the range of approximately 10 cm (3.93 in.) for ten times.

Move the ink cartridge at a rate of one back-and-forth cycle per second.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge



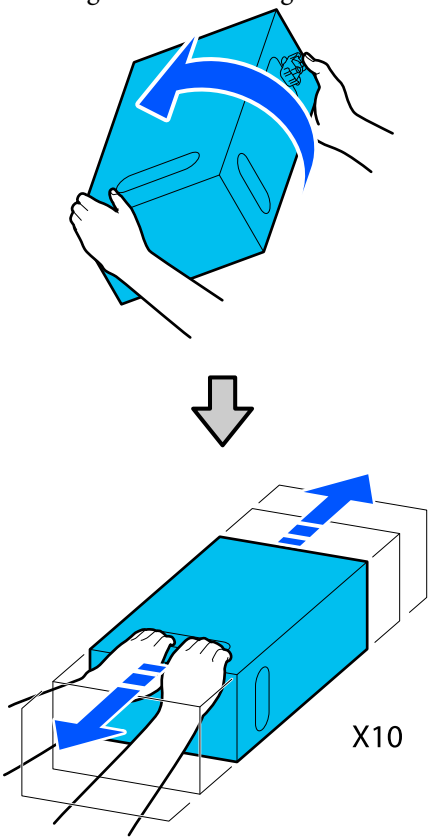

❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge



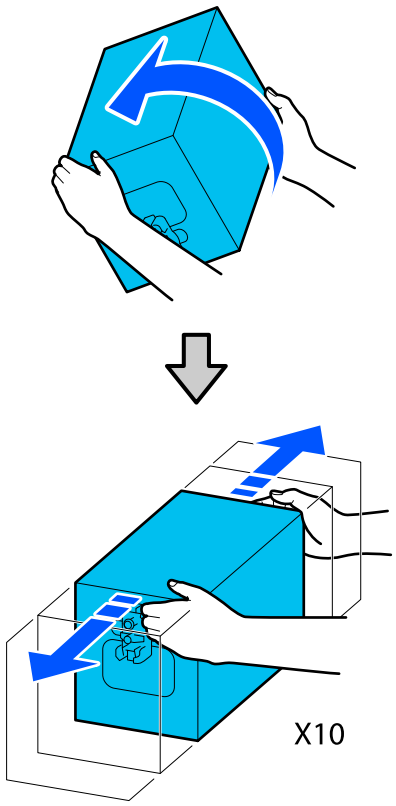

6 Turn over the ink cartridge and repeat the same cycle for ten times.

Move the ink cartridge at a rate of one back-and-forth cycle per second.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge



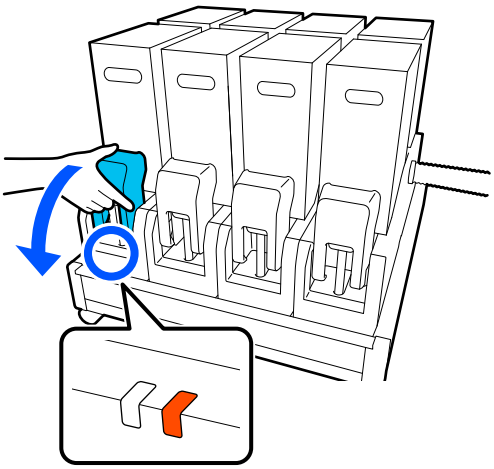
❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge



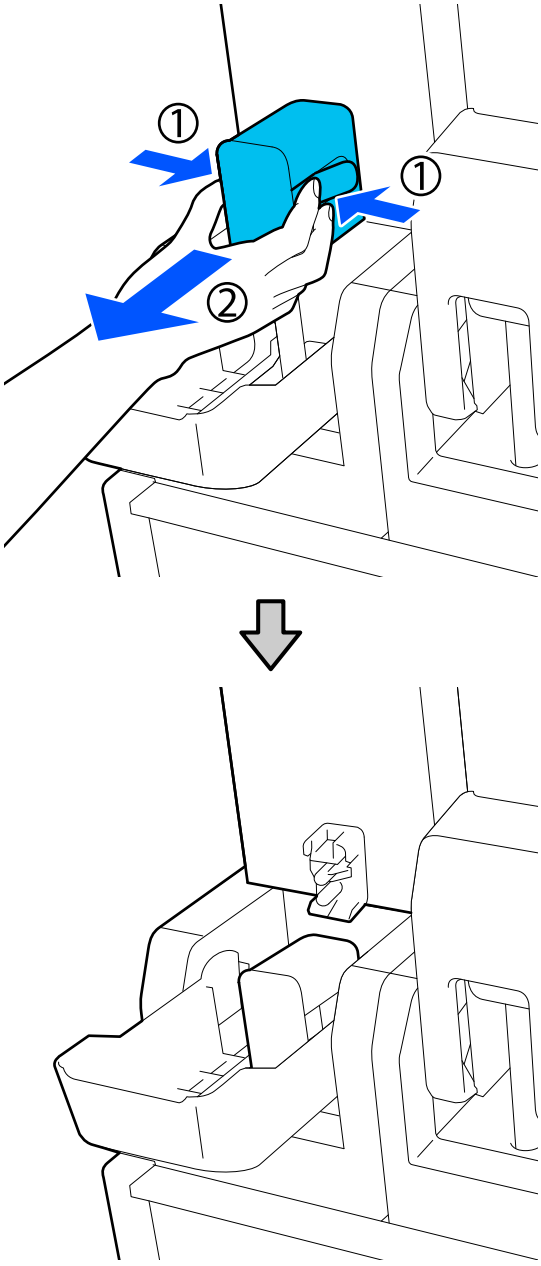

**Replacement**

1 Make sure the printer is on, and then lower the ink cartridge cover of the used ink cartridge toward you.

The ink cartridge with a lit right (orange) lamp is the one that needs to be replaced.



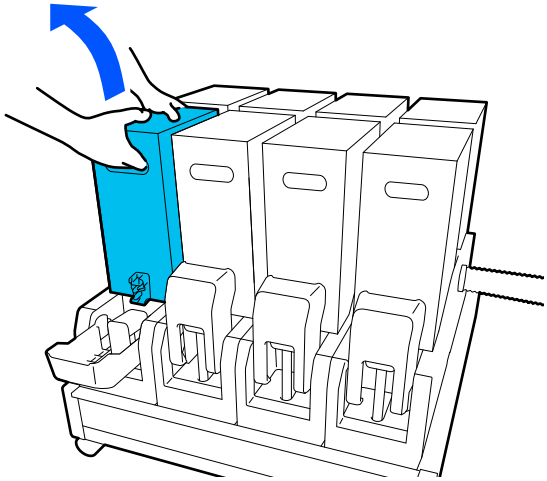
2 While pressing the levers on both sides of the connector, pull the connector toward you to remove it, and place the connector on the rear surface of the ink cartridge cover.




**Important:**

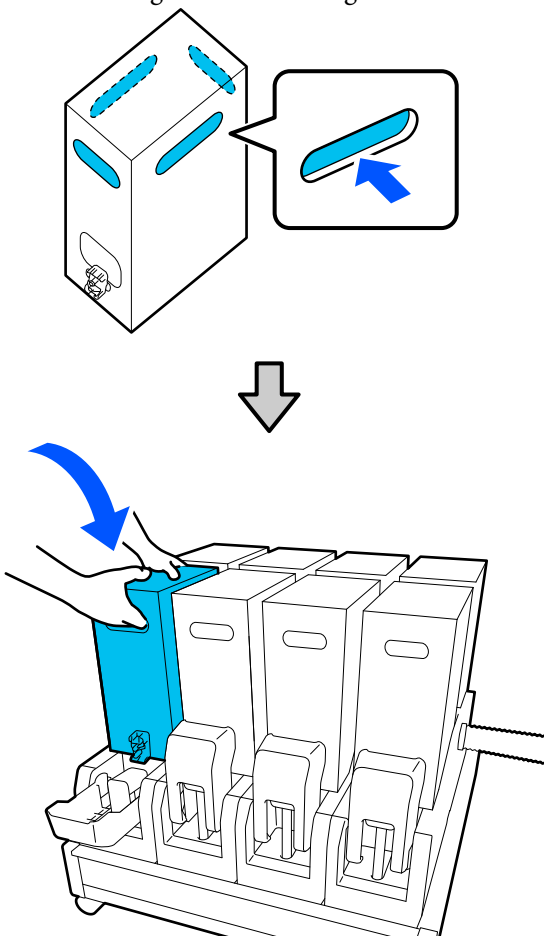
*Do not leave the connector removed from the ink cartridge for more than 30 minutes. Otherwise, the ink will dry out and the printer may not function as expected.*

3 Remove the used ink cartridge from the ink supply unit.

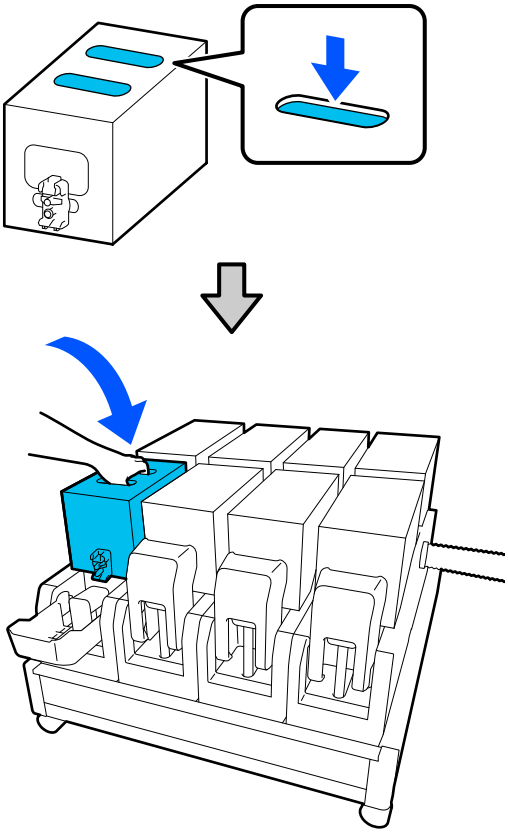


4 Open and hold the handle holes of shaken ink cartridge and place the ink cartridge such that the ink supply hole faces the connector.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge

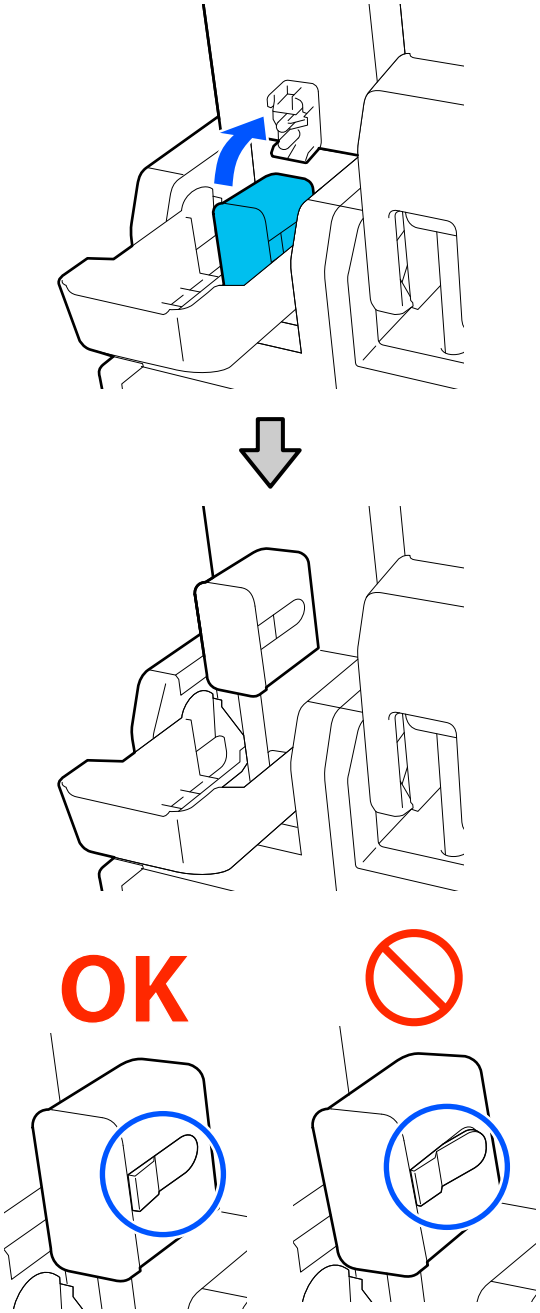


❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge

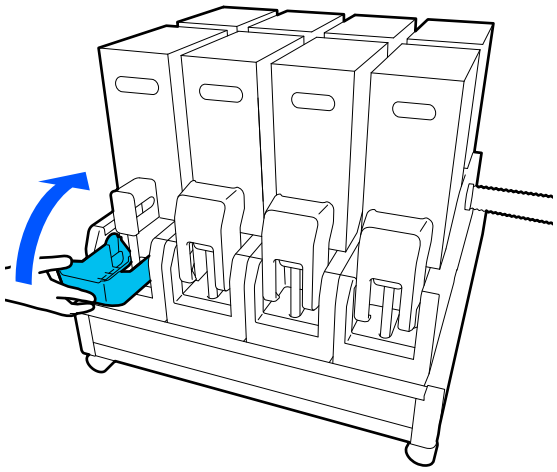


5 Install the connector to the ink supply outlet.

Insert the connector until you hear a click.




6 Raise the ink cartridge cover.



Repeat the opening, shaking and replacement procedures to replace other ink cartridges.

# Replacing the wiper roll

## Preparing and Replacement Timing

**When a message is displayed indicating the time to replace the wiper roll is approaching**

Prepare a new wiper roll as soon as possible.

When you want to replace the parts at this stage, such as due to night operations, execute **Maintenance** - **Replace Maintenance Parts** - **Replace Wiper Roll**, and then do the replacement work. If you replace it without selecting **Replace Wiper Roll**, the wiper roll counter will not operate correctly.

Maintenance “Maintenance menu” on page 219

**When a message is displayed indicating it is time to replace the wiper roll**

See the following section, and replace the wiper roll. Printing cannot be performed if the parts are not replaced.

Make sure you use a replacement wiper roll for this printer.

“Options and Consumable Products” on page 231

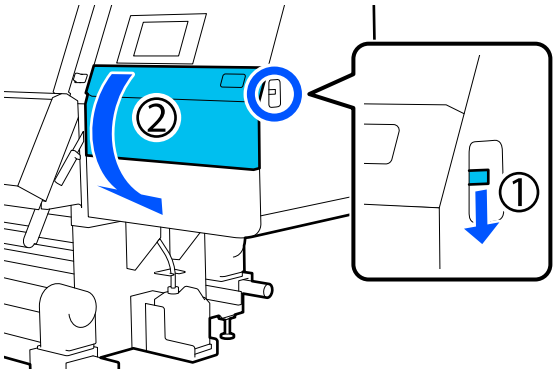
Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

“Precautions Regarding Maintenance” on page 154

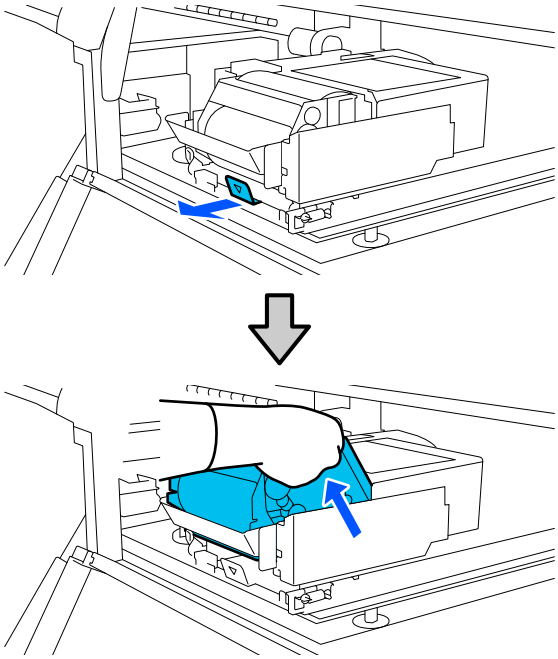
## Replacement procedure

1 Check the on-screen message, and then press **Start**.

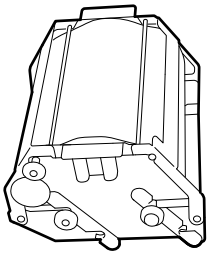
2 Lower the lock release lever to open the right-side maintenance cover.



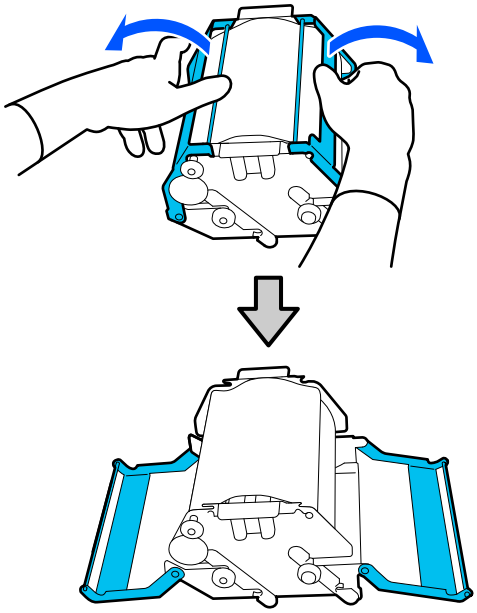

3 Pull the lock lever, and then pull the wiper unit out at an upward angle.



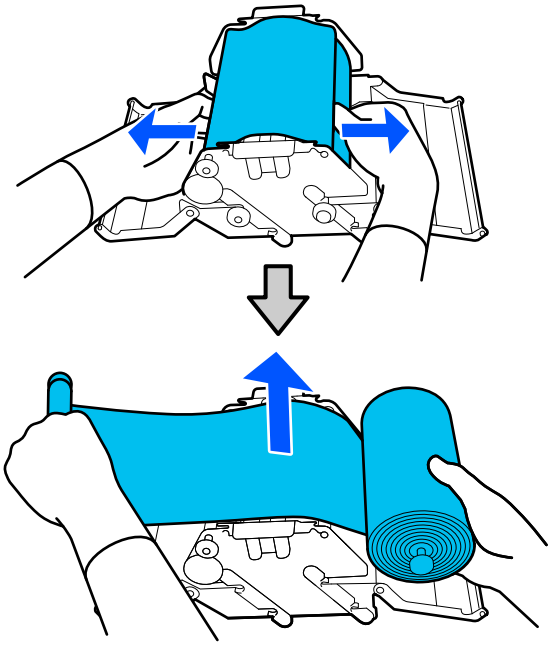
4 Place the wiper unit on a flat place oriented as shown in the illustration.



5 Open the left and right covers outwards.

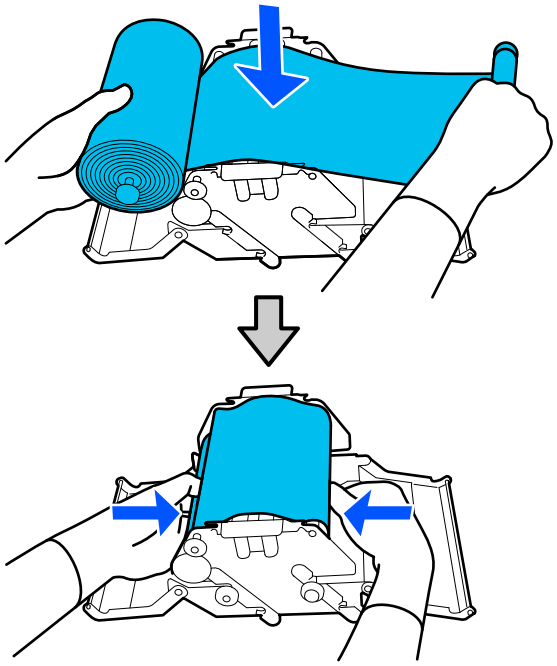


6 Hold the shaft and roll and pull them out, and remove the wiper roll.



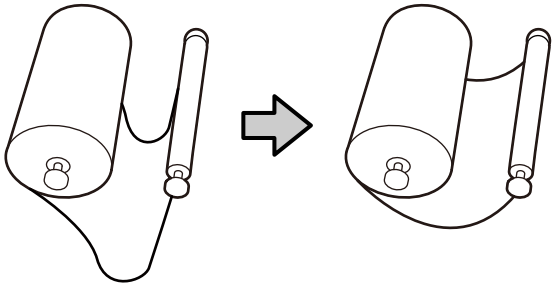
7 Install a new wiper roll.

Insert the shaft into the groove on the wiper unit, and press inward until you hear a click.

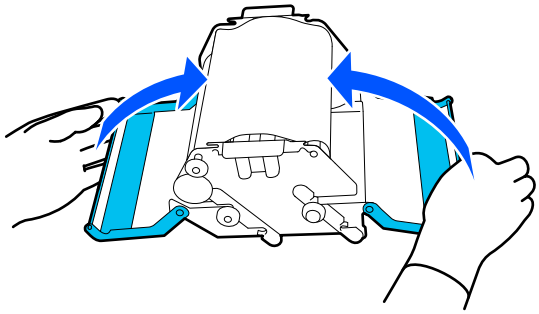


Install the wiper roll so it does not sag.

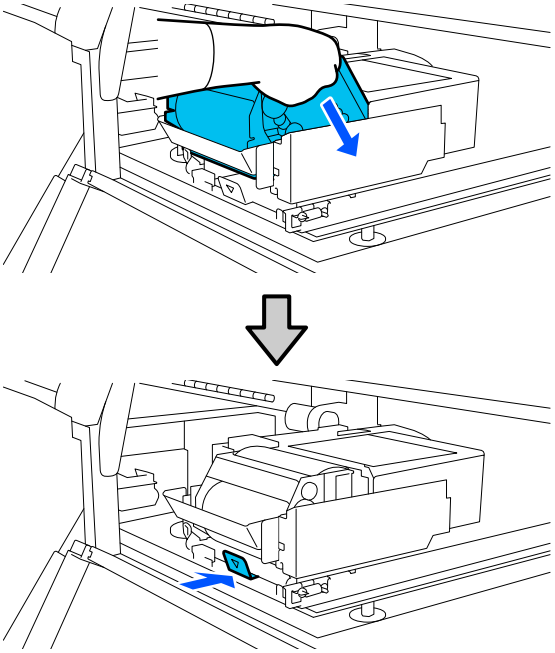
If it sags excessively, eliminate the sag.



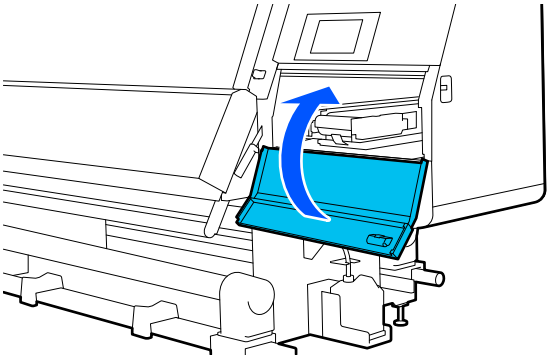
8 Close the left and right covers.



9 Install the wiper unit at an angle from above the printer, and then press the lock lever.



10 Close the maintenance cover.



11 Check the on-screen message, and then press **Yes**.

# Disposing of waste ink

## Preparing and Replacement Timing

### When a message is displayed indicating the time to replace the waste ink bottle is approaching

Prepare a new waste ink bottle as soon as possible. When you want to replace the waste ink bottle at this stage, such as due to night operations, select **Replace Waste Ink Bottle** from the setup menu, and then replace the bottle. If you replace it without selecting **Replace Waste Ink Bottle**, the waste ink counter will not operate correctly.

Maintenance menu "Maintenance menu" on page 219

Waste ink counter "Waste ink counter" on page 176

> **Important:**
> *Never remove the waste ink bottle while printing or while the heads are being cleaned, unless there are on-screen instructions. Failure to observe this precaution could cause ink to leak.*

**When a message is displayed indicating it is time to replace the waste ink bottle**

Replace the waste ink bottle with a new bottle immediately.

Replacement procedure "Replacing the waste ink bottle" on page 176

## Waste ink counter

The printer uses the waste ink counter to track waste ink and displays a message when the counter reaches the warning level. Replace the waste ink bottle with a new one according to the message indicating it is time to replace the waste ink bottle, and the counter is cleared automatically.
If you need to replace the waste ink bottle before this message is displayed, execute **Replace Waste Ink Bottle** from the setup menu.

Maintenance menu "Maintenance menu" on page 219

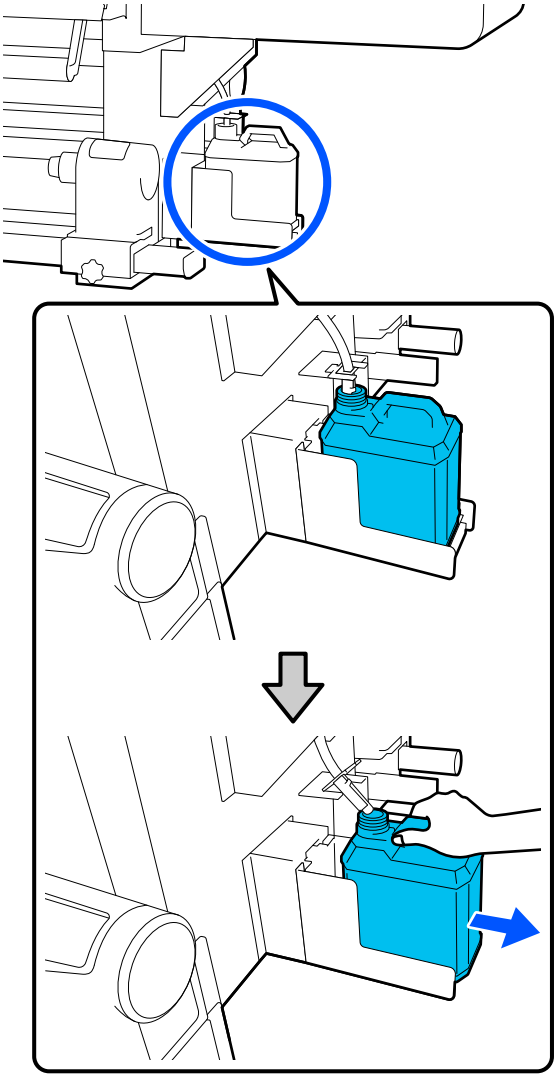
## Replacing the waste ink bottle

Follow the procedure below to replace the parts. Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

"Precautions Regarding Maintenance" on page 154

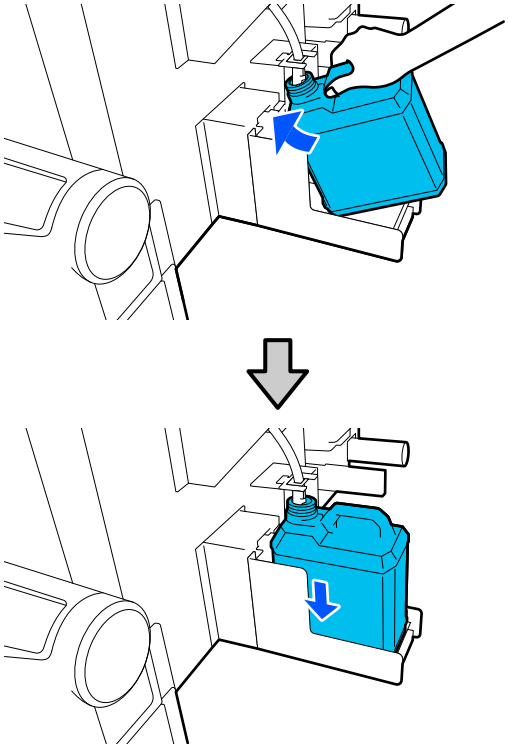
1 Remove the waste ink bottle from the holder.

Remove the waste ink bottle sideways, without tipping it, as shown in the illustration.



2 Remove the lid of the new waste ink bottle.

3 Insert the waste ink tube into the mouth of the new waste ink bottle and place it in the holder.



Tightly seal the lid on the used waste ink bottle.

> ***Important:***
>
> ❏ *Be sure to confirm that the waste ink tube is inserted in the mouth of the waste ink bottle. Ink will spill onto the surrounding area if the tube is not inserted in the bottle.*
>
> ❏ *You will need the lid for the new waste ink bottle when disposing of waste ink. Keep the lid in a safe place; do not throw it out.*

4 On the screen, press **Done**.

Leave the waste ink in the waste ink bottle for disposal; do not transfer it to another container.

# Replacing the media holder

## Preparing and Replacement Timing

When a message appears on the control panel screen indicating the service life of the media holder, prepare a new media holder, and then replace the media holder according to the next section.

Replace the media holders that have switches, for feeding and the media holders for take-up. Make sure you use a replacement media holder for this printer.

☞ "Options and Consumable Products" on page 231

Before starting this procedure, be sure to read the following.

☞ "Precautions Regarding Maintenance" on page 154

If you want to replace these parts regardless of the on-screen messages, execute **Maintenance** - **Replace Maintenance Parts** - **Replace Take In Media Holder** or **Replace Take Up Media Holder**, and then do the replacement work. If you do a replacement without executing it from the settings menu, the media holder counter will not operate correctly.

### Necessary items

❏ New media holder

❏ Hex wrench supplied with the printer (when replacing the Take In Media Holder)

❏ Commercially available Phillips head screwdriver (when replacing the Take Up Media Holder)

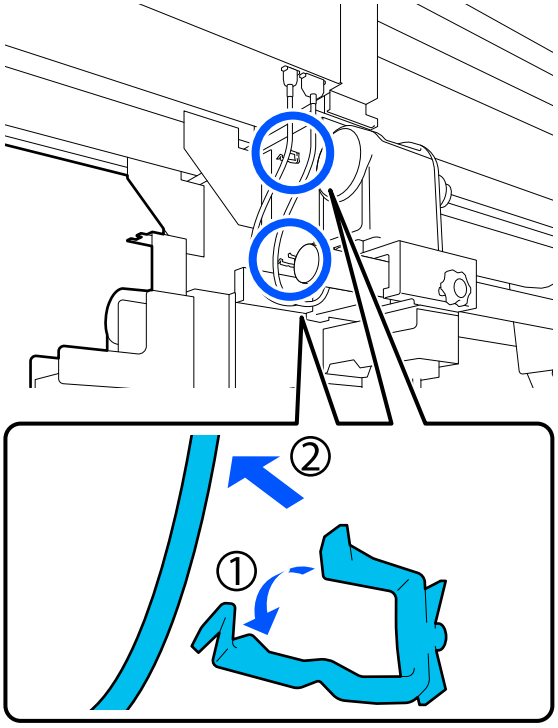
## How to replace the Take In Media Holder

1 Check that no media is loaded on the Media Feeding Unit.

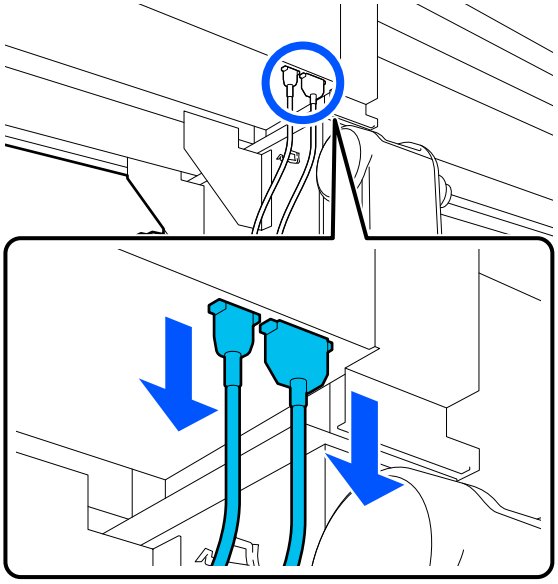
If any media is loaded, remove it.

☞ "Removing the Loaded Media" on page 134

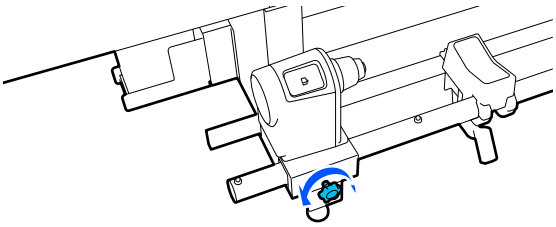
2 Remove the cables from the clamps.



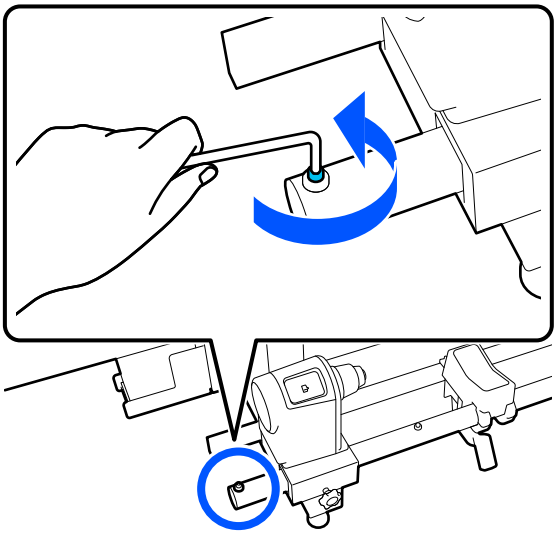

3 Remove the 2 cables from the printer.



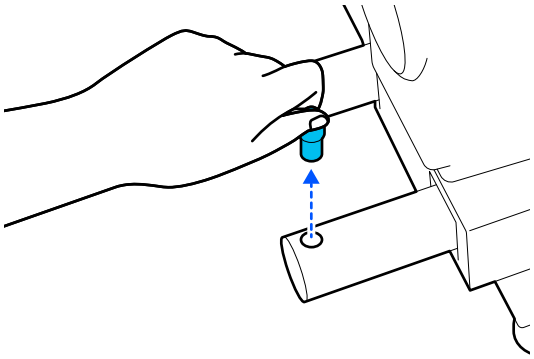
4 Loosen the fixing screw on the media holder.



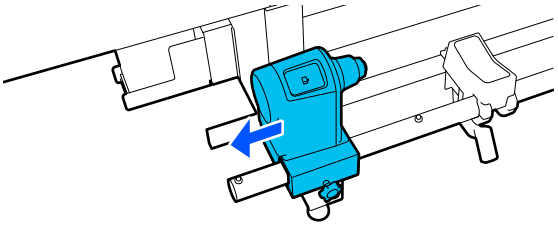
5 Use the hex wrench to loosen the head of the screw so it rises up about 5 mm (1.96 in.) as shown in the illustration.



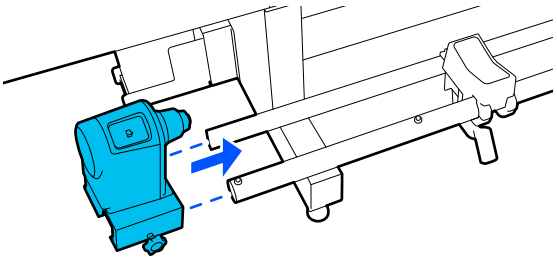
6 Pull the screw out upward together with the rubber part around it.



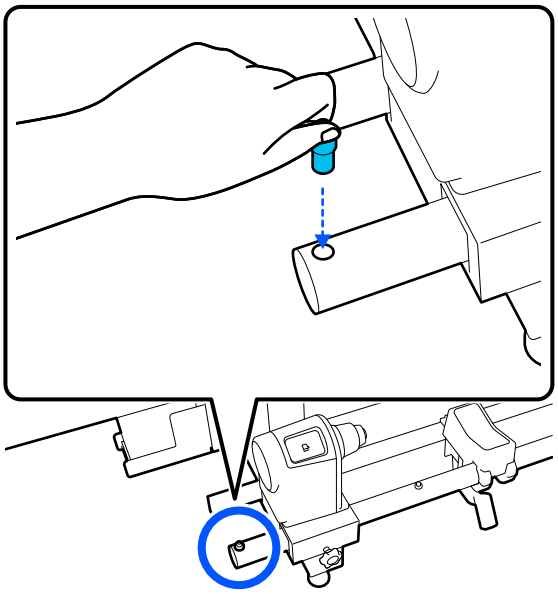
7 Pull the media holder toward the outer side.



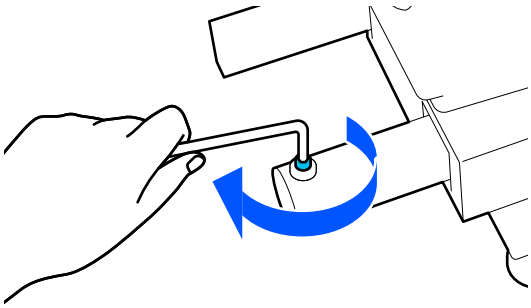
8 Insert the new media holder from the outer side.



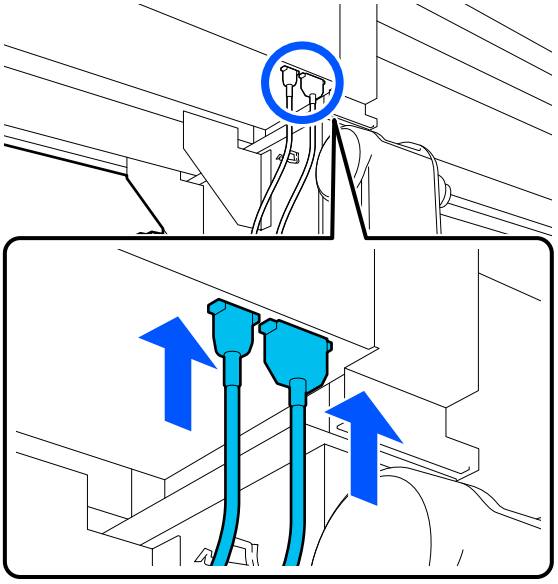
9 Insert the parts you pulled out in Step 6.



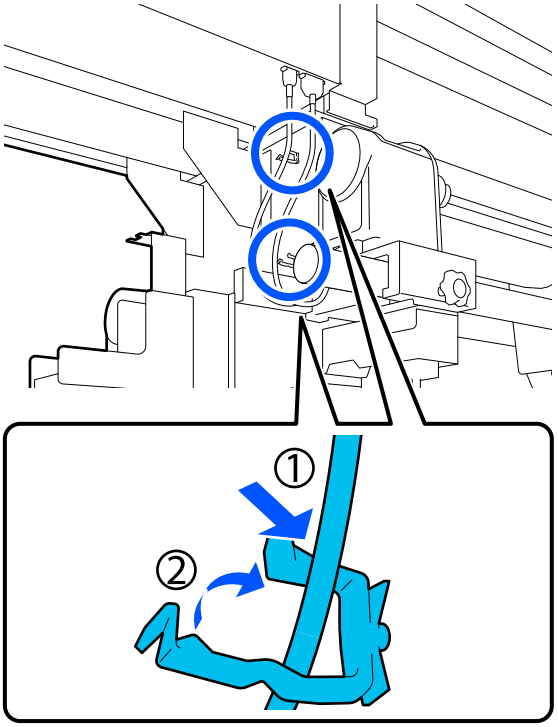
10 Use the hex wrench to tighten the screw until its head is flush.



11 Connect the 2 cables to the printer.



12 Pass the cables through the clamps.




13 On the screen, press **Done**.

The counter for the media holder is reset.

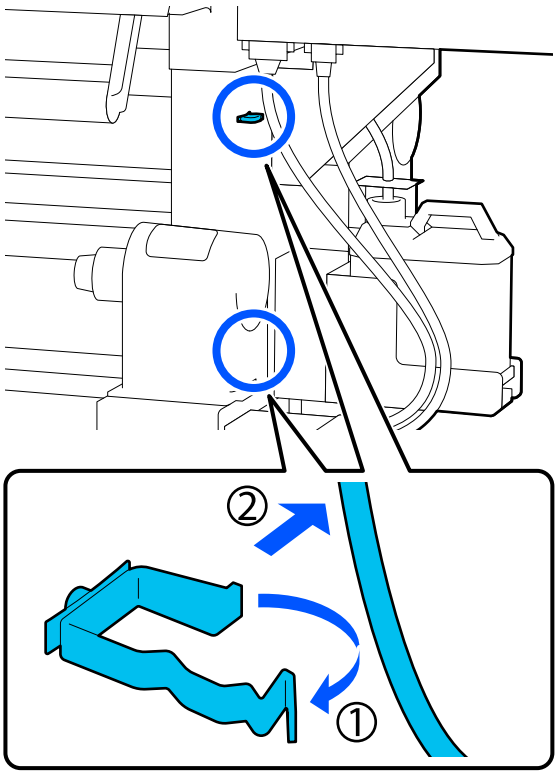
## How to replace the take up media holder

1 Check that no media is on the auto take-up reel unit.

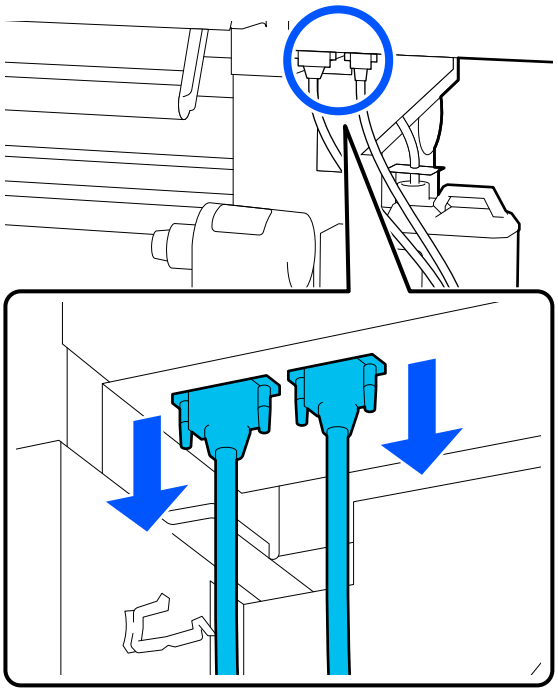
If there is any media, remove it.

“Removing the Take-up Roll” on page 130

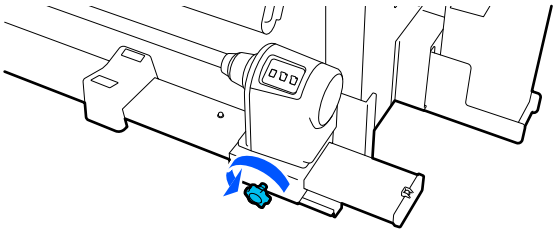
2 Remove the cables from the clamps.



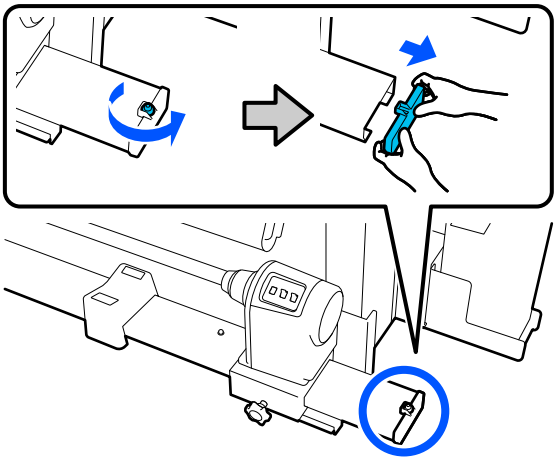

3 Remove the 2 cables from the printer.



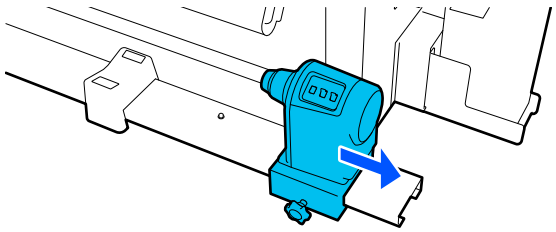
4 Loosen the fixing screw on the media holder.



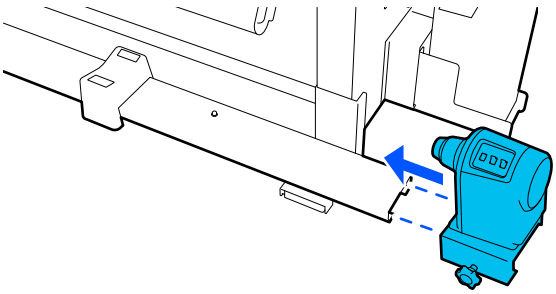
5 Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the screw shown in the illustration, and then remove the end cover.



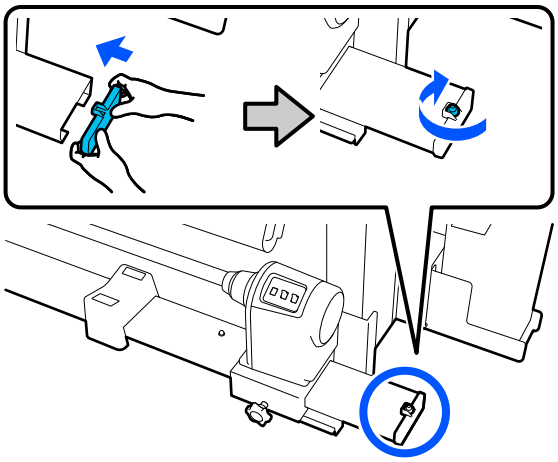
6 Pull the media holder toward the outer side.



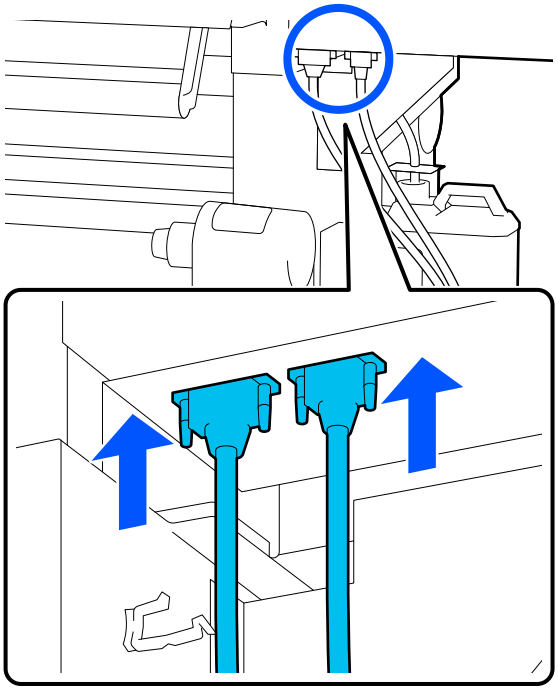
7 Insert the new media holder from the outer side.



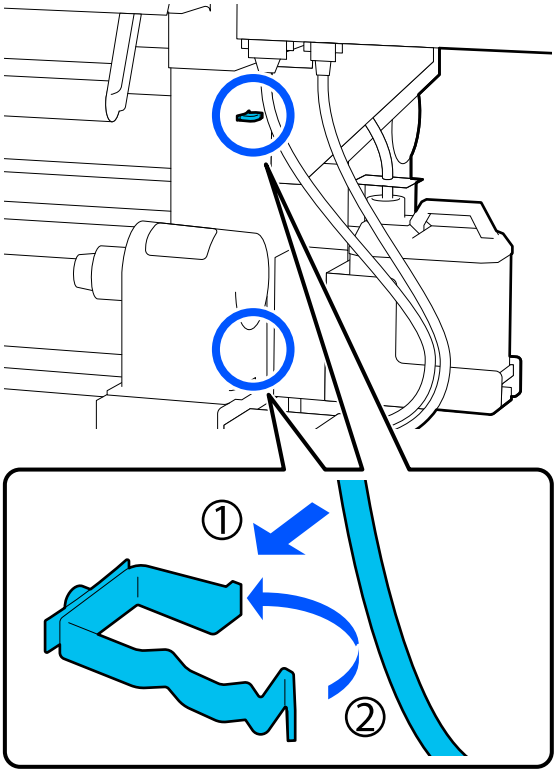
8 Attach the end cover and use a Phillips screwdriver to tighten the screw.



9 Connect the 2 cables to the printer.



10 Pass the cables through the clamps.




11 On the screen, press **Done**.

The counter for the media holder is reset.

# Other Maintenance

## Periodic shaking of ink cartridges

After installing an ink cartridge in the printer, a shake message is displayed on the control panel screen at the following intervals.

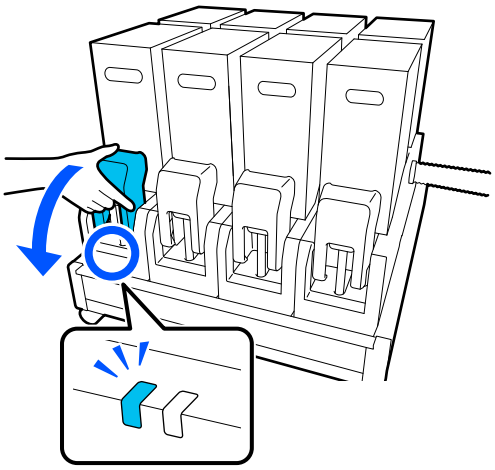
- ❏ High Density Black Ink: Once every week
- ❏ Other inks: Once every three weeks

If the message appears, remove the ink cartridge immediately and shake it.

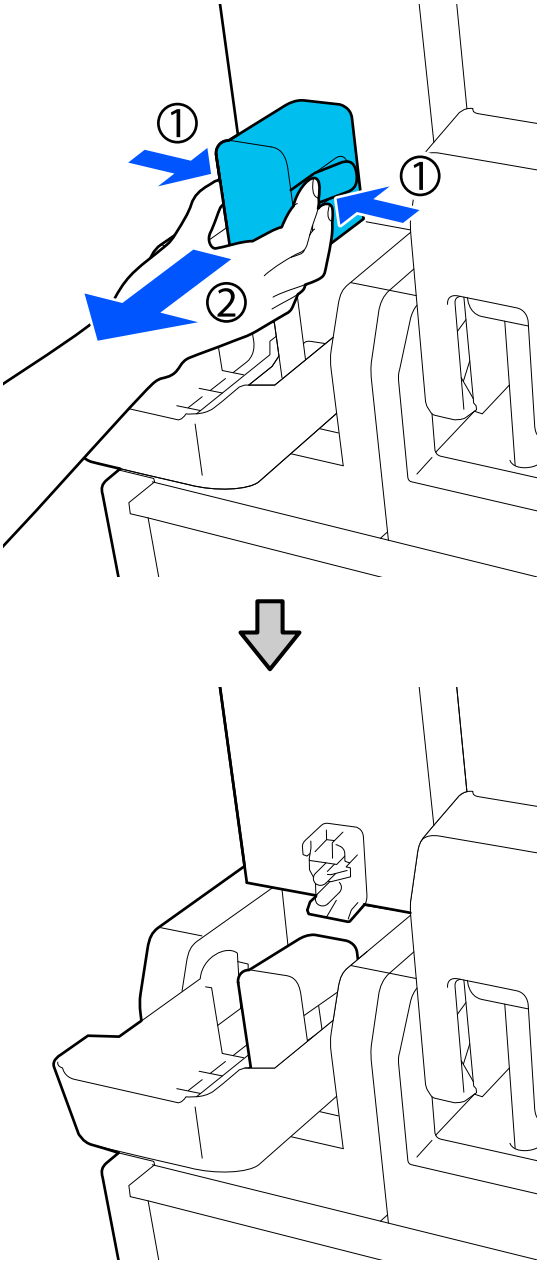
The shaking method to be followed after the installation differs from that followed when opening the ink cartridge. Follow the steps below for shaking.

1 Make sure the printer is on, and then lower the ink cartridge cover of the ink cartridge to be shaken, toward you.

The ink cartridge with a flashing left (blue) lamp is the one that needs to be shaken.



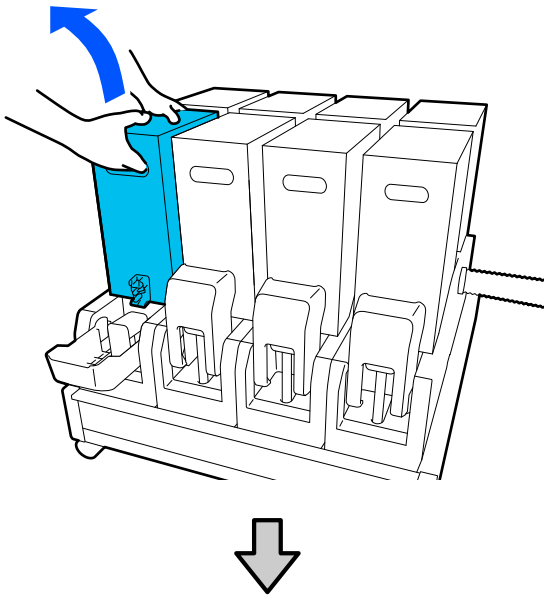
2 While pressing the levers on both sides of the connector, pull the connector toward you to remove it, and place the connector on the rear surface of the ink cartridge cover.



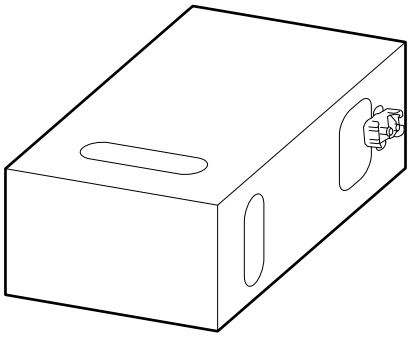

**Important:**

*Do not leave the connector removed from the ink cartridge for more than 30 minutes. Otherwise, the ink will dry out and the printer may not function as expected.*

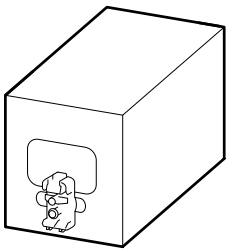
3 Remove the ink cartridge from the ink supply unit, and place it on a flat surface with the ink supply outlet facing the side.



❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge



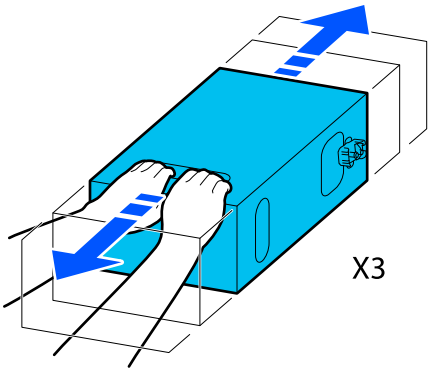
❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge



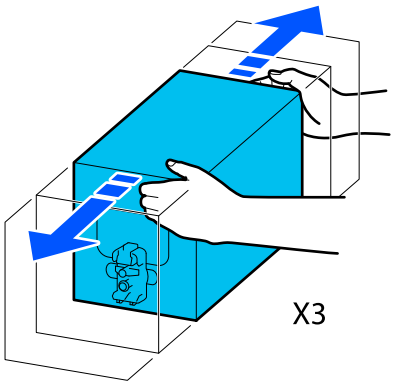
4 Slide the ink cartridge back and forth longitudinally within the range of approximately 10 cm (3.93 in.) for three times.

Move the ink cartridge at a rate of one back-and-forth cycle per second.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge



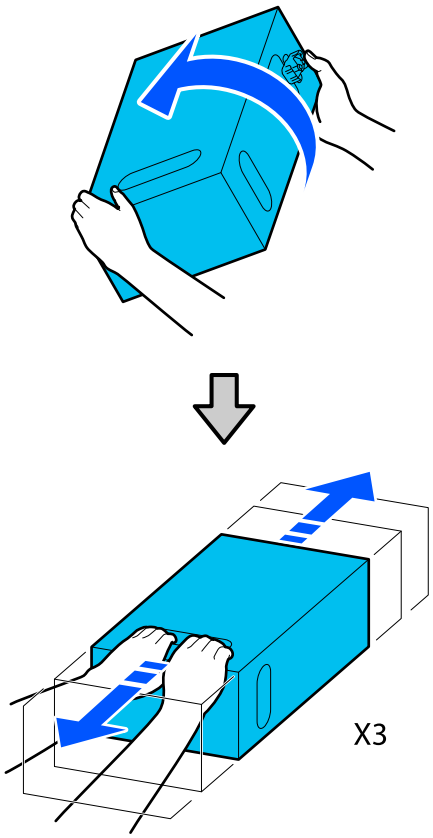

❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge



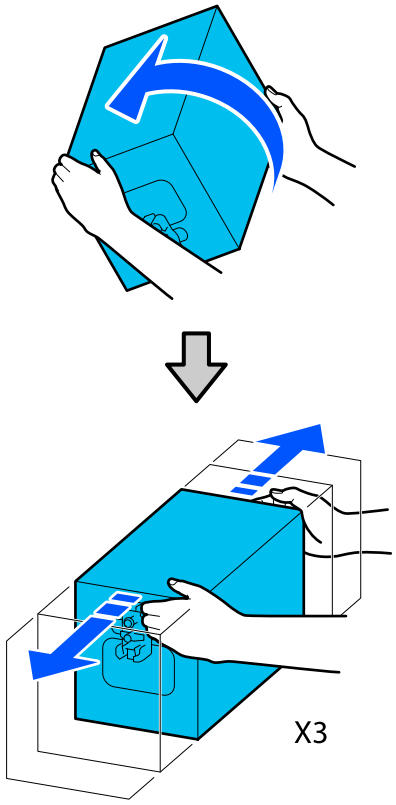

5 Turn over the ink cartridge and repeat the same cycle for three times.

Move the ink cartridge at a rate of one back-and-forth cycle per second.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge

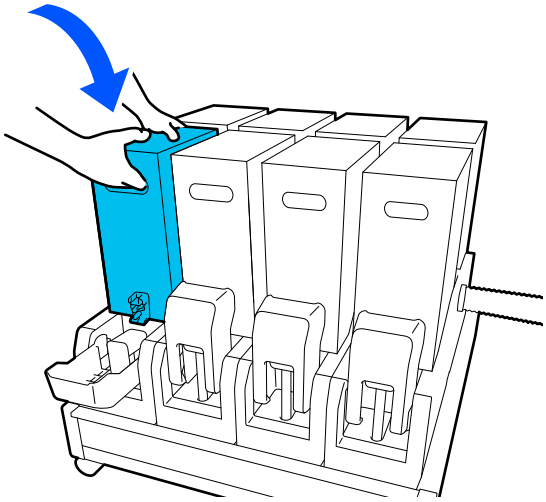



❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge

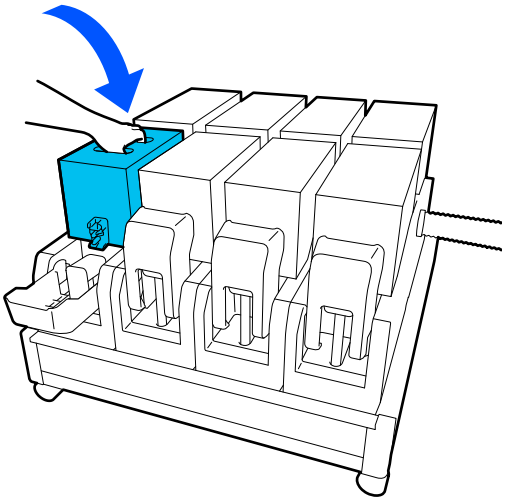



6 Place the shaken ink cartridge such that the ink supply hole faces the connector.

❏ When using 10 L ink cartridge

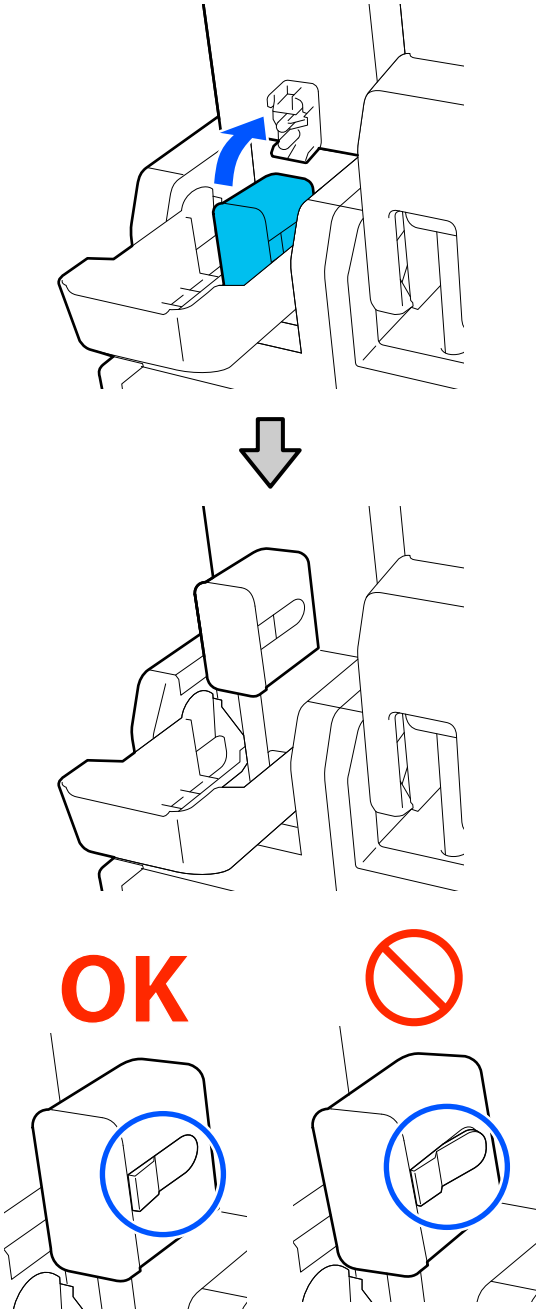


❏ When using 3 L ink cartridge

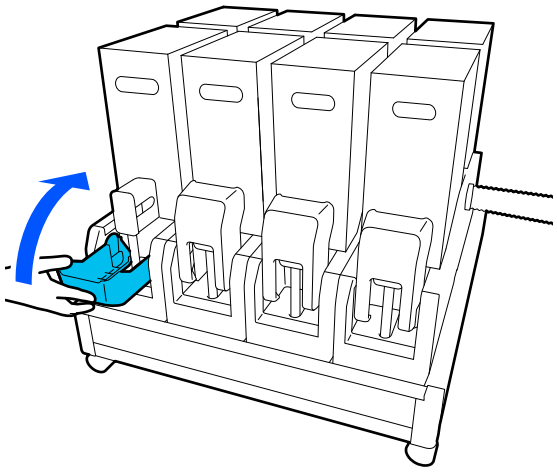


7 Install the connector to the ink supply outlet.

Insert the connector until you hear a click.




8 Raise the ink cartridge cover.



Repeat the same procedure to replace other ink cartridges.

## Checking for clogged nozzles

We recommend that you check the nozzles for clogs each time you print to ensure quality results.

### Ways to Check for Clogs

There are three ways to check for clogs.

**On-Demand Nozzle Pattern.**

When you want to check that there is no clogging or stripes and unevenness in print results before printing, print a nozzle check pattern. Inspect the printed check pattern visually to determine whether the nozzles are clogged.

See the following for details.

☞ “Printing nozzle check patterns” on page 186

Depending on the width of the loaded media, you can save media by printing additional test patterns in the space beside an existing pattern:

**Set Nozzle Check Pattern for Information Printing.**

This prints a check pattern on the left and right edges of the media during printing. Inspect the check pattern visually to determine whether nozzles were clogged during printing.

☞ “General Settings menu” on page 201

**Set Nozzle Check between Pages.**

A check pattern is printed according to the Execution Timing that is set. You can visually inspect the check pattern to determine whether there may be faint or missing colors in the preceding or following printout.

You can set one of Print Length, Print Page, or Print Duration for Execution Timing.

"General Settings menu" on page 201

## Printing nozzle check patterns

1. Check that the printer is ready, and then press in the Home screen.

   The Maintenance menu is displayed.

2. Press **Print Head Nozzle Check**, set Saving Mode and Print Position, and then press **Start**.

   Setting Saving Mode to On shortens the printed length of the check pattern, which reduces the amount of media that is used.

   Depending on the width of the media that is loaded, the Print Position can be set. By setting Print Position, you can reduce the amount of media that is used because you can print the patterns in line in the margin in which the first pattern is printed. To print them in line, press the media feed button to rewind the media to the position to print the pattern.

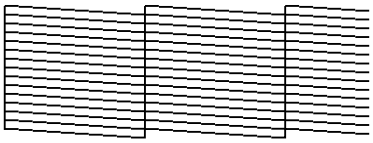
   The number of patterns that can be printed in a line varies depending on whether Saving Mode is set, the width of the media that is loaded, and the Margins that are set.

   Press **Start** to print the check pattern and feed the media to a position where the check pattern is easily visible.

3. Check the printed check pattern.

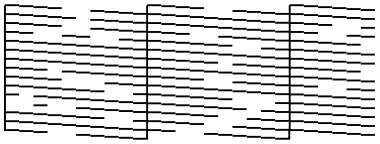
   If the check pattern is still difficult to see, use the media feed button to feed the media until the check pattern is easily visible. After checking the check pattern, the media automatically rewinds to the print standby position.

**Example of clean nozzles**



If no parts of the check pattern are missing, press **OK**. The Maintenance screen returns.

**Example of clogged nozzles**



If parts of the check pattern are missing, press **NG**, and then do Print Head Cleaning.

"Print Head Cleaning" on page 186

> ***Important:***
> *Always remove clogs from the nozzles of all colors before resuming use. If clogged nozzles (including clogged nozzles for colors that are not used) remain when printing after resuming use, the clogs can no longer be removed.*

# Print Head Cleaning

## Types of Cleaning

Print Head Cleaning is split between the following 3 types.

**Perform head cleaning as necessary.**

Perform head cleaning if there are faint or missing parts of the check pattern that was printed.

You can perform head cleaning while printing by pausing the job. However, printing may be disturbed when printing is resumed.

See the following for details.

"Cleaning procedure" on page 187

**Set Periodic Cleaning.**

In Maintenance Setting, set Periodic Cleaning to On to do periodic head cleaning as a preventative measure before clogs actually occur in the nozzles. Set one of Print Duration, Print Page, or Print Length for the interval.

"Maintenance menu" on page 219

**Set Maintenance Cleaning.**

In Maintenance Setting, setting Maintenance Cleaning to On cleans the print heads automatically, after a set period of time has passed, to keep the print heads in good condition.

"Maintenance menu" on page 219

## Cleaning procedure

Print Head Cleaning has the following three types.

- Auto Cleaning
  The level is automatically changed, according to the condition of the clog detected in a nozzle, and then cleaning is done.
- Cleaning(Light), Cleaning(Medium), Cleaning(Heavy)
  Cleaning is done at one of three selected levels.
- Print Head Refresh
  Powerful cleaning is done with the ink suction function of the suction caps.

Perform Auto Cleaning first. If the clogs are not cleared by doing it, then do in the order of Cleaning(Light), Cleaning(Medium), and Cleaning(Heavy) until the clogs are cleared.

Execute Print Head Refresh if there are multiple large clogs, even though you executed Cleaning(Heavy). When you execute Print Head Refresh, the suction caps need to be cleaned, because of this, the cleaning operation takes a long time, so execute it if you have the problem described above.

1. Check that the printer is ready, and then press .

   The Maintenance menu is displayed.

2. Press **Print Head Cleaning**.

3. Select a cleaning method.

   Select **Auto Cleaning** first.

   For the second and subsequent cleanings, select in the order of **Cleaning(Light)**, **Cleaning(Medium)** and **Cleaning(Heavy)**.

4. Head cleaning starts.

   A cleaning result message is displayed when head cleaning is complete.

5. Check the message and click **OK**.

   **If clogging is cleared**

   Continue with normal operations.

   **If clogging is not cleared**

   Go back to Step 1 and do Cleaning(Light). After executing Cleaning(Light), execute cleaning at the next higher cleaning level.

   **If nozzles are still clogged even after performing Cleaning(Heavy)**

   The print head or the areas around the anti-drying caps may be soiled. Clean around the print head and anti-drying caps. If there are multiple large clogs, then do Print Head Refresh at the same time.

   "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

   "Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160

   "Maintenance menu" on page 219

# Checking the circuit breaker's performance

The circuit breaker automatically cuts off the electric circuit when electric leakage has occurred in the printer. Follow the procedure below to check the performance of both circuit breakers about once a month.

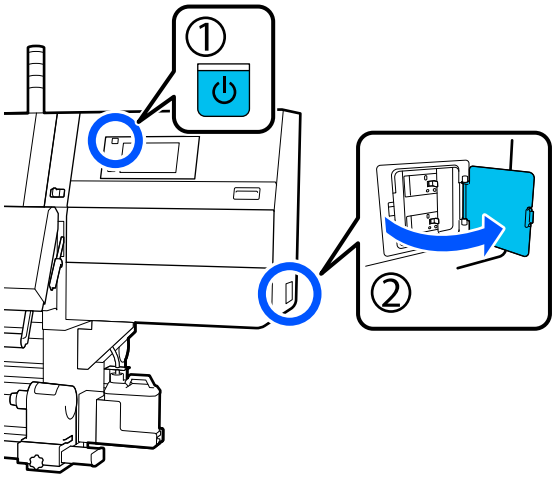
The breaker may be changed or removed without notice. The procedure for operation is the same, even when slight changes are made to the Trip button or Test button position or to the description of the breaker.

**Important:**

*Do not turn off the power by using the circuit breaker. Otherwise, the printer may not function as expected.*

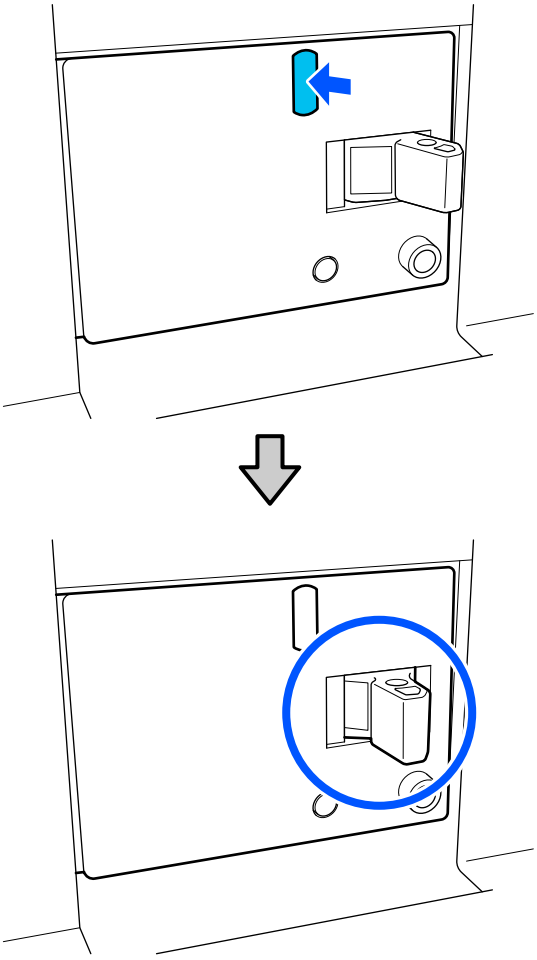
1 Turn off the printer and open the circuit breaker cover.

Leave the power plug plugged in. Also, the ground wire must be connected when checking the circuit breaker's performance. Check “Safety Precautions” for details on the ground wire.

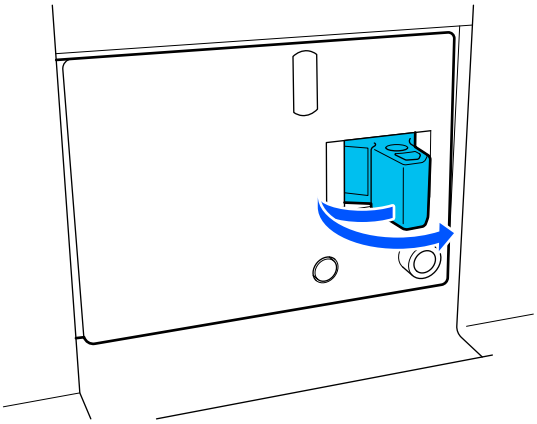



2 Press the Trip button of a circuit breaker with a fine-tipped tool such as a ball-point pen.

The breaker is working properly if the breaker switch moves to an intermediate position between ON and OFF.

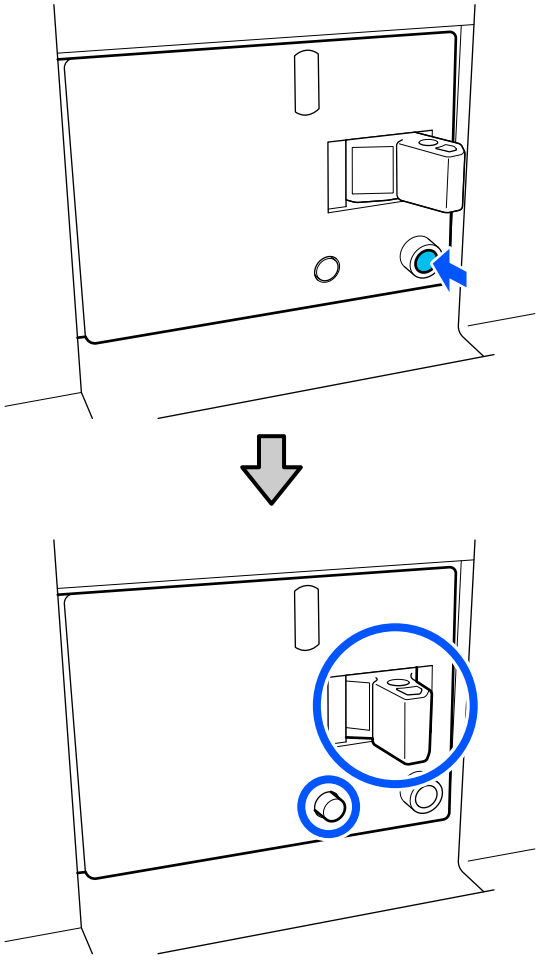


3 If the breaker has worked properly, turn OFF the breaker switch once and turn it back ON.

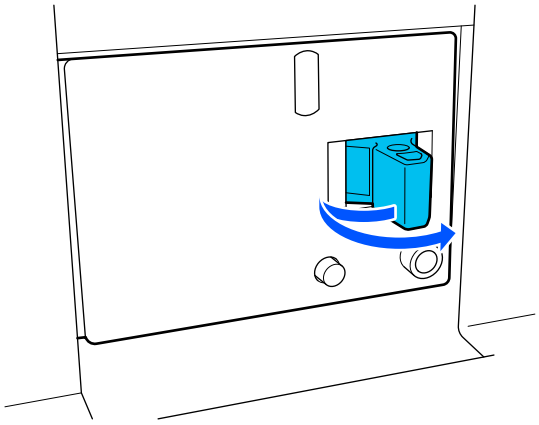


4 Press the Test button.

The breaker is working properly if an electric leakage check button protrudes and the breaker switch moves to an intermediate position between ON and OFF.



5 If the breaker has worked properly, turn OFF the breaker switch once and turn it back ON.



6 Repeat Steps 2 to 5 to check the performance of the other circuit breaker.

If any abnormality is found, contact your local dealer or Epson service call center.

# Disposing of Used Consumables

## Disposal

The following used parts with adhered ink are classified as industrial waste.

- ❏ Ink cartridges
- ❏ Cleaning stick
- ❏ Cleaning fluid
- ❏ Waste ink
- ❏ Waste Ink Bottle
- ❏ Wiper Roll
- ❏ Media after printing

Dispose of items according to local laws and regulations. For example, contract a industrial waste disposal company for disposal. In such cases, submit the “Safety data sheet” to the industrial waste disposal company.

You can download it from your local Epson website.

# Control Panel Menu

## Menu List

The following items and parameters can be set and executed in the Menu. See the reference pages for more details on each item.

### General Settings

For more information on these items, see "General Settings menu" on page 201

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Basic Settings | |
| LCD Brightness | 1 to 9 |
| Sound | |
| Button Press | 0 to 3 |
| Alert | 0 to 3 |
| Completion Notice | 0 to 3 |
| Warning Notice | |
| Volume | 0 to 3 |
| Repeat | Never, Until Stopped |
| Error Tone | |
| Volume | 0 to 3 |
| Repeat | Never, Until Stopped |
| Sound Type | Pattern1, Pattern2 |
| Sleep Timer | 1 to 240 minutes |
| Wake from Sleep | |
| Touch LCD Screen to Wake | On, Off, Scheduled |
| Date/Time Settings | |
| Date/Time | |
| Daylight Saving Time | Off, On (Winter, Summer)*1 |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Time Difference | -12:45 to +13:45 |
| Language | Japanese, English, French, Italian, German, Portuguese, Spanish, Dutch, Russian, Turkish, Korean, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese |
| Background Color | Gray, Black, White |
| Keyboard | QWERTY, AZERTY, QWERTZ |
| Unit Settings | |
| Length | m, ft/in |
| Temperature | ˚C, ˚F |
| Printer Settings | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Margins | |
| Side(Right) | 3 to 25 mm (0.11 to 0.98 in.) |
| Side(Left) | 3 to 25 mm (0.11 to 0.98 in.) |
| Margin Between Pages | 0 to 999 mm (0 to 39.33 in.) |
| Width Adjustment | -10 to +10 mm (-0.39 to 0.39 in.) |
| Print Start Position | 0 to 1000 mm (0 to 39.37 in.) |
| Skip Wrinkled Media | On, Off |
| Job Connection | On, Off |
| Information Printing | |
| Off | |
| On | |
| Margin Between Images | 5 to 999 mm (0.19 to 39.33 in.) |
| Print Position | Next to the Image, Media End |
| Event Marking | |
| Off | |
| On | |
| Print Position | Left, Right, Left and Right |
| Nozzle Check Pattern | |
| Pattern Selection | Do Not Print, Normal, Paper Width Saving |
| Print Position | Left, Right, Left and Right |
| Ink Density | Standard, Dark |
| Media Detection | |
| Width Detection | |
| On | |
| Off | 300.0 to 1950.0 mm (11.81 to 76.77 in.) |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Actions after Media Scuffing | Stop Immediately, Stop when Continuously Detected, Ignore |
| Nozzle Check between Pages | |
| On | |
| Execution Timing | |
| Print Length | 1 to 9999 meters (3.28 to 32805.12 ft.) |
| Print Page | Pages 1 to 9999 |
| Print Duration | 1 to 9999 minutes |
| Execution during Job | On, Off |
| Pattern Type | Paper Saving, Normal |
| Off | |
| Information Printing at Media Cut | |
| Paper Remaining Information | On, Off |
| Print Information | On, Off |
| Heater Off Timer | 0 to 30 minutes |
| Internal lamp | Auto, Manual |
| Custom Setting*2 | On, Off |
| Restore Default Settings | Network Settings, Clear All Data and Settings |
| Maintenance Setting | |
| Cleaning Setting | |
| Threshold Of Clogged Nozzles | 1 to 50 |
| Max Retry Cleaning Count | 0, 1, 2 |
| Maintenance Schedule | Between Jobs, When Detected |
| Nozzle Compensation | On, Off |
| Periodic Cleaning | |
| On | |
| Print Duration | 1 to 9999 minutes |
| Print Page | Pages 1 to 9999 |
| Print Length | 1 to 9999 meters (3.28 to 32805.12 ft.) |
| Off | |
| Actions Beyond the Threshold of Missing Nozzles | Stop Printing, Show Alert, Auto Cleaning |
| Maintenance Cleaning | |

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| On | |
| Interval | 1 to 240 hours |
| Off | |
| Network Settings | |
| Network Status | Wired LAN Status, Print Status Sheet |
| Advanced | |
| Device Name | |
| TCP/IP | |
| Proxy Server | |
| IPv6 Address | Enable, Disable |
| Link Speed & Duplex | Auto, 10BASE-T Half Duplex, 10BASE-T Full Duplex, 100BASE-TX Half Duplex, 100BASE-TX Full Duplex, 1000BASE-T Full Duplex |
| Redirect HTTP to HTTPS | Enable, Disable |
| Disable IPsec/IP Filtering | |
| Disable IEEE802.1X | |

*1 Only displayed for the SC-F20070/SC-F11070H/SC-F11070/SC-F10070H/SC-F10070.

*2 Not displayed on the SC-F20000 Series.

### Media Settings

For more information on these items, see “Media Settings menu” on page 209

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Current Settings | |
| Media | 01 XXXXXXXXXX to 50 XXXXXXXXXX |
| Media Type | |
| Media width | |
| Pass Mode | |
| Advanced Settings | |
| Print Adjustments | |
| Automatic Adjustment | |
| Print Head Alignment | Auto, Manual(Simple), Manual(Standard) |
| Media Feed Adjustment | Auto(Standard), Auto(Details), Manual(Standard), Manual(Measurement) |
| Media Management | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| 01 XXXXXXXXXX to 50 XXXXXXXXXX | |
| Change Name | |
| Media Type | Ultra-Thin 30g/m$^2$, Thin 50g/m$^2$, Med-Thick 70g/m$^2$, Thick 120g/m$^2$ |
| Pass Mode (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | 300x600dpi 1.1pass, 300x600dpi 1.5pass, 300x600dpi 2.1pass, 300x600dpi 3.1pass, 600x600dpi 2.1pass, 600x600dpi 2.5pass, 600x600dpi 3.1pass, 600x600dpi 4.3pass, 600x1200dpi 5.0pass, 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD, 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD |
| Pass Mode (SC-F20000 Series) | 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS, 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS, 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS, 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS, 600x600dpi 1.1pass, 600x600dpi 1.5pass, 600x600dpi 2.1pass, 600x1200dpi 3.1pass, 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD |
| Advanced Settings | |
| Dryer | |
| Heater | On, Off |
| Temperature (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | |
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |

**Control Panel Menu**

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Temperature (SC-F20000 Series) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) |
| Fan | Off, Low, High |
| Drying Action | Auto, Follow Drying Time Setting |
| Drying Time (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | |
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Drying Time (SC-F20000 Series) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off, On |
| Platen Gap | |
| 1.7 | |
| 2.0 | |
| 2.5 | |
| Feeding Tension | Lv1 to Lv4 |
| Paper Suction | Lv0 to Lv10 |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | On, Off |
| Pressure Roller Load | Light, Standard |
| Remove Skew | On, Off |
| Stick Prevention | On, Off |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Rewind Tension (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | |
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| Rewind Tension (SC-F20000 Series) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 0 to 50 ˚C (32 to 122 ˚F) |
| Manage Remaining Amount | |
| Manage Remaining Amount | On, Off |
| Remaining Amount | 1.0 to 9999.9 m (3.3 to 32808.1 ft.) |
| Remaining Alert | 1.0 to 999.5 m (3.3 to 3279.2 ft.) |
| Print Length Management | |
| Auto Reset | Off, After Last Page |
| Manual Reset | |

### Maintenance

For more information on these items, see ☞. "Maintenance menu" on page 219

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Print head nozzle check | |
| Saving Mode | On, Off |
| Print Position | Right, Center Right, Center Left, Left |
| Print Head Cleaning | Auto Cleaning, Cleaning(Light), Cleaning(Medium), Cleaning(Heavy), Print Head Refresh |
| Cleaning the Maintenance Parts | Anti-Drying Caps, Around the Head, Suction Cap, Media Cleaner |
| Print Head Nozzle Limitation | On, Off |
| Replace Waste Ink Bottle | |
| Replace Maintenance Parts | Replace Wiper Roll, Replace Take In Media Holder, Replace Take Up Media Holder |

### Supply Status

Details on the menu ☞ "Supply Status menu" on page 220

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Ink/Waste Ink Bottle | |
| Others | |

### Replacement Part Information

Details on the menu ☞ "Replacement Part Information menu" on page 220

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series: | |
| Ink Supply Pump | |
| Anti-Drying Caps Drive Assembly | |
| Cleaning Pump | |
| Wiper Unit Drive Assembly | |
| Suction Pump | |
| Ink Tube | |
| SC-F20000 Series: | |

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Ink Supply Pump1 | |
| Ink Supply Pump2 | |
| Anti-Drying Caps Drive Assembly | |
| Cleaning Pump | |
| Wiper Unit Drive Assembly | |
| Suction Pump | |
| Ink Tube | |

### Printer Status

Details on the menu ☞ "Printer Status menu" on page 221

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Firmware Version | |
| Printer Name | |
| Fatal Error Log | |
| Operation Report | Total Print Area, Total Media Feed Length, Total Carriage Pass |

# Details of the Menu

## General Settings menu

* indicates default settings.

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Basic Settings | | |
| LCD Brightness | 1 to 9 (9*) | Adjusts the brightness of the control panel display. |
| Sound | | |
| Button Press | 0 to 3 (1*) | Sets the volume of the sounds when the power button and control panel screen are operated. |
| Alert | 0 to 3 (2*) | Sets the volume of the sounds when hardware, such as the covers and media loading lever, are operated. |
| Completion Notice | 0 to 3 (3*) | Sets the volume of the sounds when print jobs or maintenance operations are finished. |
| Warning Notice | | Sets the volume and the repetitions of sounds when it is time to replace consumables. |
| Volume | 0 to 3 (2*) | |
| Repeat | Never* | |
| | Until Stopped | |
| Error Tone | | Sets the volume and the repetitions of sounds when an error occurs while printing and printing cannot continue. |
| Volume | 0 to 3 (3*) | |
| Repeat | Off | |
| | Until Stopped* | |
| Sound Type | Pattern1* | Sets the type of sounds. Sounds that are easy to hear in the printer's operating environment can be set. |
| | Pattern2 | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Sleep Timer | 1 to 240 (15*) | The printer enters sleep mode after a specified time during which no print jobs are received, no errors are detected, and the heater is off. In sleep mode, the control panel screen, the internal optical sensors, and inside lights turn off.<br>The screen display recovers when you press on the control panel screen. Sleep mode is canceled and the printer returns to normal when a print job is received, an operation involving printer hardware is done, such as operating the media loading lever.<br>To cancel sleep mode and begin preheating the heater immediately, press **Preheat Start** on the Home screen. |
| Wake from Sleep | | |
| Touch LCD Screen to Wake | On* | Set this to wake from sleep mode by performing operations on the touch panel.<br>To recover by doing screen operations, set **On**.<br>To not recover by doing screen operations, but to instead recover by pressing the power button, set **Off**.<br>By setting **Scheduled**, you can switch between **On**/**Off** at specified times. |
| | Off | |
| | Scheduled | |
| Date/Time Settings | | |
| Date/Time | | Set the printer's built-in clock. The time and date set here are displayed on the Home screen. It is also used for job logs and the printer's status, as shown in Epson Edge Dashboard. |
| Daylight Saving Time | Off (Winter)* | Sets daylight saving time.<br>Winter and Summer are only displayed for the SC-F11070H/SC-F11070/ SC-F10070H/SC-F10070. |
| | On (Summer) | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Time Difference | -12:45 to +13:45 | Set the time difference with coordinated universal time (UTC) in 15 minute increments. In network environments with a time difference, set this as necessary when administrating the printer. |
| Language | Japanese | Select the language used in the control panel display. |
| | English | |
| | French | |
| | Italian | |
| | German | |
| | Portuguese | |
| | Spanish | |
| | Dutch | |
| | Russian | |
| | Turkish | |
| | Korean | |
| | Simplified Chinese | |
| | Traditional Chinese | |
| Background Color | Gray | Select the color scheme used in the control panel display. You can set a color scheme that is easy to see in the environment in which the printer is installed. |
| | Black* | |
| | White | |
| Keyboard | QWERTY* | Select the keyboard layout for the text input screen that appears, such as when inputting names to register for media settings. |
| | AZERTY | |
| | QWERTZ | |
| Unit Settings | | |
| Length | m* | Choose the units of length used in the control panel display and when printing test patterns. |
| | ft/in | |
| Temperature | °C* | Choose the temperature units used in the control panel display. |
| | °F | |
| Printer Settings | | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Margins | | |
| Side(Right) | 3 to 25 mm (7*) (0.11 to 0.98 in. [0.27*]) | Set the margin from the right media edge in the media output direction.<br>"Printable Area" on page 145 |
| Side(Left) | 3 to 25 mm (7*) (0.11 to 0.98 in. [0.27*]) | Set the margin from the left media edge in the media output direction.<br>"Printable Area" on page 145 |
| Margin Between Pages | 0 to 999 mm (10*) (0 to 39.33 in. [0.39*]) | Sets the margin between printed pages.<br>If you want to set it to less than 300 mm (11.81 in.), set Skip Wrinkled Media to Off. |
| Width Adjustment | -10 to +10 mm (0*) (-0.39 to 0.39 in. [0*]) | You can adjust a margin between pages. Even after making adjustments, the size of the margin may change, depending on the media and usage environment.<br>The margin increases when the number is moved in the + direction, and decreases when the number is moved in the - direction.<br>"Printable Area" on page 145 |
| Print Start Position | 0 to 1000 mm (0*) (0 to 39.37 in. [0*]) | Adjust this parameter if you want to print from the near center of the media or if you want to shift the printed area center from the **Side(Left)** setting. The margin is the value set in **Print Start Position**, measured from the media edge on the reference side. If a value is selected for **Side(Left)**, an additional area corresponding to the width selected for **Side(Left)** is left blank.<br>See the following for more information.<br>"Printable Area" on page 145 |
| Skip Wrinkled Media | On* | Normally, leave this **On**.<br>When this is **On**, if jobs do not print continuously, 300 mm (11.81 in.) of media is fed to skip wrinkled parts, and then printing is done. |
| | Off | |
| Job Connection | On | When this is turned **On**, the next job starts printing without feeding media, drying, or rewinding between continuous print jobs. There are no operations between jobs so printing time is that much shorter. |
| | Off* | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Information Printing | | |
| Off* | | When this is turned **On**, a mark and the nozzle check pattern are printed on the end of the media, so it is easier to check print quality.<br><br>Margin Between Images:<br>Set the interval between images and the marks and check patterns.<br><br>Print Position:<br>Set **Next to the Image** to print in the position open between the margin between images using the edge of images as a reference. When **Media End** is set, printing is done in the position using the edge of the media as a reference.<br><br>Event Marking:<br>When this is turned **On**, a mark is printed when an event that affects print quality occurs while printing. This makes it easier to find poor quality areas during and after printing.<br><br>The following events cause a mark to be printed.<br>❏ Change in state of clogged nozzles: When there is a change in nozzle clog conditions after printing starts<br>❏ Head cleaning: When head cleaning is executed manually<br>❏ Automatic head cleaning: When automatic head cleaning is executed<br>❏ Head striking: When the striking of the media and print head is detected<br>❏ Suspension: When printing is suspended<br>❏ Start of nozzle compensation<br><br>Set a position, in which marks are easy to check, in **Print Position**.<br><br>Nozzle Check Pattern:<br>When pattern selection is **Normal** or **Paper Width Saving**, the nozzle check pattern prints continuously during printing. When printing print jobs continuously or when printing a long job, you can immediately understand if nozzles clog while printing. The width of the check pattern is narrower than **Normal** when **Paper Width Saving** is set, so the image print area is wider.<br><br>Set a position, in which check patterns are easy to check, in **Print Position**.<br><br>When **Ink Density** is set to **Dark**, check patterns are easy to check. |
| On | | |
| Margin Between Images | 5 to 999 mm (5*) (0.19 to 39.33 in. [0.11*]) | |
| Print Position | Next to the Image* | |
| | Media End | |
| Event Marking | | |
| Off* | | |
| On | | |
| Print Position | Left | |
| | Right | |
| | Left and Right | |
| Nozzle Check Pattern | | |
| Pattern Selection | Do Not Print | |
| | Normal* | |
| | Paper Width Saving | |
| Print Position | Left* | |
| | Right | |
| | Left and Right | |
| Ink Density | Standard* | |
| | Dark | |
| Media Detection | | |
| Width Detection | | Select whether the media width is detected (**On**) or not (**Off**). Try setting **Off** when printing if media width errors are displayed even though the media is correctly loaded. Note, however, that the printer may print beyond the edges of the media when **Off** is selected. Printing beyond the edges of the media will stain the inside of the printer. We recommend this normally be set to **On** when using the printer. Changed settings are reflected when the media is reloaded. |
| On* | | |
| Off | 300.0 to 1950.0 mm (300.0*) (11.81 to 76.77 in. [11.81*]) | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Actions after Media Scuffing | Stop Immediately* | The printer constantly monitors for striking of the media and print head while printing, so set the operation for when striking occurs.<br>When **Stop Immediately** is set, printing stops immediately when striking is detected.<br>When **Stop when Continuously Detected** is set, printing stops if striking is detected 3 times within 72 cm (28.35 in.) of fed paper.<br>When **Ignore** is set, printing does not stop even if striking is detected.<br>When striking is detected, the stopped media wrinkles, so take measures, such as adjusting the temperature of the heater, and clean the area around the print head if needed. |
| | Stop when Continuously Detected | |
| | Ignore | |
| Nozzle Check between Pages | | When **On** is set, a nozzle check pattern is printed periodically at the specified timing. When printing is complete, you can visually inspect the check pattern to determine whether there may be faint or missing colors in the preceding or following printout.<br>**Execution Timing** sets the timing that check patterns are printed.<br>**Execution during Job** selects whether to print (**On**)/not to print (**Off**) a check pattern at the set timing during a print job. When **Off** is set, the images are nested because a check pattern is printed during printing. When **On** is set, a check pattern is printed after finishing the print job. Normally, leave this **On**.<br>**Pattern Type** selects the type of check pattern. When **Paper Saving** is set, media is saved because the length of media needed to print a check pattern is shorter than for **Normal**. |
| On | | |
| Execution Timing | | |
| Print Length | 1 to 9999 meters (3.28 to 32805.12 ft.) | |
| Print Page | Pages 1 to 9999 | |
| Print Duration | 1 to 9999 minutes | |
| Execution during Job | On | |
| | Off | |
| Pattern Type | Paper Saving | |
| | Normal | |
| Off* | | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Information Printing at Media Cut | | When the media is cut, information, such as the remaining amount of media, is printed before and after the cut position. The information is printed when, in the control panel, you press and then press **Forward**.<br>When **Paper Remaining Information** is set to **On**, the remaining amount is printed on the unused side of the cut position. The following information is printed. To print the paper remaining information, set **Manage Remaining Amount** in **Media Settings** to **On**.<br>❏ Model: Model of the printer<br>❏ Serial No.: Serial number of the printer<br>❏ Print Date: Date and time of printing<br>❏ Bank No.: Media number when printing<br>❏ Media Type: Media Type registered to the media number when printing<br>❏ Media Width: Automatically detected value of media width<br>❏ Remaining Amount: Remaining amount of media<br>When **Print Information** is set to **On**, the following information is printed on the printed side of the cut position.<br>❏ Model: Model of the printer<br>❏ Serial No.: Serial number of the printer<br>❏ F/W Version: Firmware version of the printer<br>❏ Print Date: Date and time of printing<br>❏ Bank No.: Media setting number when printing<br>❏ Media Type: Media Type registered to the media setting number when printing<br>❏ Media Width: Automatically detected value of media width<br>❏ Print Length: Amount of media used |
| Paper Remaining Information | On | |
| | Off* | |
| Print Information | On | |
| | Off* | |
| Heater Off Timer | 0 to 30 minutes (0*) | The heater turns off after printing is complete if no print jobs are received for a specified time. It turns back on if a print job is received or if you press **Preheat Start** in the Home screen. |
| Internal lamp | Auto* | Select whether to turn on/off the light inside the front cover automatically (**Auto**) or whether to use the panel button as necessary (**Manual**).<br>In **Auto**, the light turns on automatically when printing and so on, and turns off when the operation is complete.<br>In **Manual**, you need to press on the control panel to turn the light on/off. |
| | Manual | |
| Custom Setting | On* | Not displayed on the SC-F20000 Series Series.<br>The printer is normally used without changing this setting. Change this setting only if instructed to do so by our service representative. |
| | Off | |
| Restore Default Settings | Network Settings | Executing **Network Settings** restores all the detailed settings in network settings to their default setting values.<br>Executing **Clear All Data and Settings** restores all settings to their default setting values. |
| | Clear All Data and Settings | |
| Maintenance Setting | | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Cleaning Setting | | The printer constantly monitors the condition of the print head nozzles while printing, so set the operation for when clogged nozzles (missing nozzles) are detected during monitoring.<br>When the number of clogged nozzles that are detected exceeds the number set in **Threshold Of Clogged Nozzles**, print head cleaning is executed as part of maintenance.<br>**Max Retry Cleaning Count** sets the number of times maintenance can be retried if the clogged nozzles are not cleared after maintenance is done.<br>When **Maintenance Schedule** is set to **Between Jobs**, then maintenance is done after completing the job during which clogged nozzles were detected, but before the next print job starts. With **When Detected**, printing is stopped when a clogged nozzle is detected, and then maintenance is done. Because cleaning is done while printing, printing may be disturbed or head striking may occur. |
| Threshold Of Clogged Nozzles | 1 to 50 (5*) | |
| Max Retry Cleaning Count | 0* | |
| | 1 | |
| | 2 | |
| Maintenance Schedule | Between Jobs* | |
| | When Detected | |
| Nozzle Compensation | On* | Normally, leave this **On**.<br>When **On** is set, printing is done while normal nozzles compensate for the ink that could not be ejected by clogged nozzles. |
| | Off | |
| Periodic Cleaning | | When **On** is set, cleaning is done at the interval set for one of Print Duration, Print Page, or Print Length. |
| On | | |
| Print Duration | 1 to 9999 minutes | |
| Print Page | Pages 1 to 9999 | |
| Print Length | 1 to 9999 meters (3.28 to 32805.12 ft.) | |
| Off* | | |
| Actions Beyond the Threshold of Missing Nozzles | Stop Printing | Set the action when the number of clogged nozzles that are detected exceeds the number set in **Threshold Of Clogged Nozzles**.<br>When **Stop Printing** is set, the message **Auto Nozzle Maintenance found that the allowable number of clogged nozzles has been exceeded. The print quality may decline.** appears on the control panel screen, printing stops, and the printer idles.<br>When **Show Alert** is set, printing continues without stopping while the message remains displayed.<br>When **Auto Cleaning** is set, the print head is cleaned at the timing set in **Maintenance Schedule**. |
| | Show Alert* | |
| | Auto Cleaning | |
| Maintenance Cleaning | | When **On** is set, the print head is cleaned automatically when the printer is not used for the time set in Interval. This cleaning ejects sedimented ink in the ink tubes to prevent print quality from falling. |
| On* | | |
| Interval | 1 to 240 hours (72*) | |
| Off | | |
| Network Settings | | |
| Network Status | Wired LAN Status | You can check batches of a variety of information in network settings that are set in **Advanced**.<br>When **Print Status Sheet** is selected, a list is printed. |
| | Print Status Sheet | |

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Advanced | | Do a variety of network settings. |
| Device Name | | |
| TCP/IP | | |
| Proxy Server | | |
| IPv6 Address | Enable* | |
| | Disable | |
| Link Speed & Duplex | Auto* | |
| | 10BASE-T Half Duplex | |
| | 10BASE-T Full Duplex | |
| | 100BASE-TX Half Duplex | |
| | 100BASE-TX Full Duplex | |
| | 1000BASE-T Full Duplex | |
| Redirect HTTP to HTTPS | Enable* | |
| | Disable | |
| Disable IPsec/IP Filtering | | |
| Disable IEEE802.1X | | |

# Media Settings menu

* indicates default settings.

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Current Settings | | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Media | 01 XXXXXXXXXX to 50 XXXXXXXXXX | Choose the media settings to use. The registered name appears in XXXXXXXXXX. |
| Media Type | | Displays the **Media Type** for the media settings that are currently selected. |
| Media width | | Set **Width Detection**, and when that setting is Off, **Media Width**. |
| Pass Mode | | Set the **Pass Mode** for the media settings that are currently selected. |
| Advanced Settings | | Set the content of **Advanced Settings** for the media settings that are currently selected.<br>See the following table for details on the setting content.<br>☞ "Media Setting Item" on page 211 |
| Print Adjustments | | Set these in the following cases.<br>❏ Using new media not registered to the printer<br>❏ When banding or graininess is found in the print results even after Automatic Adjustment is performed<br>❏ When changing **Advanced Settings** after saving media settings<br>❏ When the media type is the same but the width is different<br>Normally, do **Automatic Adjustment** first. If banding or graininess is still found in the print results after doing automatic adjustment, do **Print Head Alignment** and **Media Feed Adjustment** manually.<br>☞ "Media Setting Item" on page 211 |
| Automatic Adjustment | | |
| Print Head Alignment | Auto | |
| | Manual(Simple) | |
| | Manual(Standard) | |
| Media Feed Adjustment | Auto(Standard) | |
| | Auto(Details) | |
| | Manual(Standard) | |
| | Manual(Measurement) | |
| Media Management | | |
| 01 XXXXXXXXXX to 50 XXXXXXXXXX | | Change the registered media settings. New registrations are normally done when loading media or in advance on the provided Epson Edge Dashboard.<br>☞ "Media Setting Item" on page 211<br>Press the › area to the right of **Media Settings** to copy the currently selected settings to another media setting number, or initialize all settings. |
| Manage Remaining Amount | | |

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Manage Remaining Amount | On | Select **On** and set the length of the media when loading media, and you can manage remaining amounts as shown below.<br>❏ The remaining amount of media and the time until you need to replace the media are shown in the Home screen.<br>❏ Displays a warning message for the remaining amount of media.<br>❏ Print the remaining amount when media is cut. |
| | Off* | |
| Remaining Amount | 1.0 to 9999.9 m (120.0 m*) (3.3 to 32808.1 ft. [393.7*]) | Enter a value for overall roll length between 1.0 and 9999.9 m (3.3 and 32808.1 ft.). You can set in 0.1-m (0.1-ft) increments. |
| Remaining Alert | 1.0 to 999.5 m (5.0 m*) (3.3 to 3279.2 ft. [16.4*]) | A warning message is displayed if the amount of media remaining reaches this length. Select a value between 1.0 and 999.5 m (3.3 and 3279.2 ft.). You can set in 0.1-m (0.1-ft) increments. |
| Print Length Management | | |
| Auto Reset | Off* | Select either **Off** (do not automatically reset the value for print length) or **After Last Page** (reset when starting to print the next job).<br>When **Off** is selected, the value does not reset until you do **Manual Reset**. However, once the value reaches 9999, it automatically resets and returns to 0.<br>When **After Last Page** is selected, the value returns to 0 when printing starts for the next job so you can check the print length per job. You can also check how far along the print job is while printing. |
| | After Last Page | |
| Manual Reset | | When reset is done, the value for print length returns to 0. |

## Media Setting Item

When loading media, select Media Type or register the media settings on the printer using the supplied Epson Edge Dashboard, to set the optimal media setting values. Normally, use this as it is. When using specific media or when a problem such as head striking or banding is detected in printing results, change the settings.

The default settings for each of the following items differ depending on the content set in **Media Type**. See the following for details on the default settings for each Media Type.

☞ "Media Settings List for Each Media Type" on page 271

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Change Name | | Assign a name of up to 20 characters to the media settings being saved. Using distinctive names makes them easier to differentiate when you select them. |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Media Type | Ultra-Thin 30g/m$^2$ | Select Media Type according to the loaded media using media thickness (weight) as a guideline.<br>The guidelines for the paper weight (g/m$^2$) of each Media Type are as follows. The paper weights of each Media Type shown in the screen are typical values.<br>Ultra-Thin: 39 or less<br>Thin: 40 to 56<br>Med-Thick: 57 to 89<br>Thick: 90 or more<br>The printer stores the optimum media settings according to the Media Type.<br>When the Media Type is changed, each setting for media registered to the current media setting number changes to the value for the Media Type after changing.<br>☞ "Media Settings List for Each Media Type" on page 271 |
| | Thin 50g/m$^2$ | |
| | Med-Thick 70g/m$^2$ | |
| | Thick 120g/m$^2$ | |
| Pass Mode (SC-F11000H Series/ SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/ SC-F10000 Series) | 300x600dpi 1.1pass | Pass Mode allows you to register the setting values, for each number of passes, of 3 items, Temperature, Drying Time, and Rewind Tension in the **Advanced Settings**. By changing Pass Mode, you can do a batch change of the Temperature, Drying Time, and Rewind Tension, which is useful when changing the settings according to the number of passes set for a print job. |
| | 300x600dpi 1.5pass | |
| | 300x600dpi 2.1pass | |
| | 300x600dpi 3.1pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 2.1pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 2.5pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 3.1pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 4.3pass | |
| | 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | |
| | 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | |
| | 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Pass Mode<br>(SC-F20000 Series) | 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | Pass Mode allows you to register the setting values, for each number of passes, of 3 items, Temperature, Drying Time, and Rewind Tension in the **Advanced Settings**. By changing Pass Mode, you can do a batch change of the Temperature, Drying Time, and Rewind Tension, which is useful when changing the settings according to the number of passes set for a print job. |
| | 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | |
| | 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | |
| | 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | |
| | 600x600dpi 1.1pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 1.5pass | |
| | 600x600dpi 2.1pass | |
| | 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | |
| | 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | |
| Advanced Settings | | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Dryer | | |
| Heater | On | Select whether to use (**On**)/not use (**Off**) the heater to dry media after printing. |
| | Off | |
| Temperature (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | | Set the heater's temperature. You can set it for each number of passes. |
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Temperature (SC-F20000 Series) | | Set the heater's temperature. You can set it for each number of passes. |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 50 to 110 ˚C (122 to 230 ˚F) | |
| Fan | Off | Set the heater to **Off**, and by setting the Fan to **Low** or **High** so media is dried after printing by only the fan operating at the set level. Use this if the media could be damaged by the heater during drying. |
| | Light | |
| | High | |
| Drying Action | Auto | The printing and media feeding time operations are adjusted automatically or according to the set drying time. |
| | Follow Drying Time Setting | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Drying Time (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | | Set the length of time to pass through the dryer. The media passes through the heater's range (600 mm [23.62 ft.]) in the dryer for the set time. You can set it for each number of passes.<br>The time needed for the ink to dry varies with ink density and the media used. If, in the print results, the ink blurs or runs on the media, set a longer Drying Time.<br>Increasing the drying time increases the time needed to print. |
| 300x600dpi 1.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec | |
| Drying Time (SC-F20000 Series) | | Set the length of time to pass through the dryer. The media passes through the heater's range (600 mm [23.62 ft.]) in the dryer for the set time. You can set it for each number of passes.<br>The time needed for the ink to dry varies with ink density and the media used. If, in the print results, the ink blurs or runs on the media, set a longer Drying Time.<br>Increasing the drying time increases the time needed to print. |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | 0 to 200 sec | |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | 0 to 200 sec | |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | Select whether to feed (**On**)/not feed (**Off**) the printed areas to the dryer to dry when printing is complete. |
| | On | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Platen Gap | | Set the Platen Gap (the distance between the print head and the media).<br>The default setting of **2.0** is recommended in most situations. If the print results are scratched or smudged, they may be improved by setting **2.5**. However, choosing a larger gap than required may result in ink stains inside the printer, reduced print quality, or shorter product life. |
| 1.7 | | |
| 2.0 | | |
| 2.5 | | |
| Feeding Tension | Lv1 to Lv4 | This can only be set for standard roll/reel models. When using large capacity roll models or large capacity reel models, adjust the tension using the load switch on the Media Feeding Unit.<br>Normally, use the default setting values. Increase tension if creases appear in the media during printing. The higher the value, the greater the tension. |
| Paper Suction | Lv0 to Lv10 | Set the suction strength of the platen on the media. The higher the value, the greater the suction.<br>Normally, use the default setting values. If the media is wavy on the platen, increase the set value.<br>If graininess or out-of-focus characteristics are detected in printing results obtained using thin or soft media or if the media is not fed normally, reduce the set value. |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | On | Normally, leave this **Off**.<br>Set this to **On** if media sticks or wrinkles, or tears easily.<br>When this is set to **On**, the media feeding speed slows down. |
| | Off | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Light | Normally, leave this **Standard**. If the following occurs when printing, you may be able to eliminate the problem by changing the Pressure Roller Load to **Light**.<br>❏ Wrinkling around the pressure rollers.<br>❏ Staining due to the media striking the print head.<br>❏ Rollers leaving marks on the media. |
| | Standard | |
| Remove Skew | On | Select whether the printer does (**On**)/does not (**Off**) correct media skew (media fed skewed) when media is loaded. Normally, leave this **On**. Set this to **Off** if the media shows traces from the rollers due to skew corrections. |
| | Off | |
| Stick Prevention | On | Select whether to do non-stick operations (**On**) or not (**Off**) when the printer is turned on, or when printing begins, etc.<br>Normally, use the default setting values. Depending on the type of media, such as ultra-thin media, some may stick more easily to the platen. Starting operations with media stuck to the platen may cause the media to not feed correctly and result in a paper jam. Set **On** if this happens. The time for operations takes longer when **On** is set. |
| | Off | |

## Control Panel Menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Rewind Tension (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series) | | This can be set for standard roll/reel models and large capacity roll models.<br>Normally, use the default setting values. The higher the value, the greater the tension.<br>If creases appear in the media while printing, we recommend setting a smaller value. Do the same settings if ink adheres to the back of the media that is being rewound.<br>If thick media cannot be rewound correctly, we recommend setting a larger value. |
| 300x600dpi -1.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 300x600dpi 1.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 300x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 300x600dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 2.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 4.3pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 1200x1200dpi 9.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| Rewind Tension (SC-F20000 Series) | | This can be set for standard roll/reel models and large capacity roll models.<br>Normally, use the default setting values. The higher the value, the greater the tension.<br>If creases appear in the media while printing, we recommend setting a smaller value. Do the same settings if ink adheres to the back of the media that is being rewound.<br>If thick media cannot be rewound correctly, we recommend setting a larger value. |
| 600x600dpi 1.0pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass HS | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 1.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 1.5pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x600dpi 2.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 600x1200dpi 3.1pass | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| 1200x1200dpi 5.0pass HD | Lv1 to Lv9 | |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 0 to 50 ˚C (32 to 122 ˚F) | Set the temperature difference at which print quality adjustment is not executed. If the difference in room temperature and the temperature around the print head is higher than the set value, a message indicating the temperature is not appropriate appears on the control panel screen, and print quality adjustment is not done. Adjust the temperature of the room before executing print quality adjustment. To ensure the colors you want to print, maintain a constant room temperature of 18 to 28˚C (64.4 to 82.4˚F). |

# Maintenance menu

The Maintenance menu can be accessed directly by pressing .

* indicates default settings.

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Print head nozzle check | | Print a check pattern to check for clogged nozzles in the print head. Inspect the pattern visually and perform head cleaning if you detect faint or missing colors.<br>Setting **Saving Mode** to **On** shortens the printed length of the check pattern, which reduces the amount of media that is used. Select a position to print the check pattern in **Print Position**. You can reduce the amount of media that is used because you can print the patterns in line in the margin in which the first pattern is printed.<br>The **Print Position** displays only the setting values that can be set according to the settings below for the width of the loaded media.<br>❏ Width Detection<br>❏ Side(Right)<br>❏ Side(Left)<br>❏ Print Start Position<br>☞ "Printing nozzle check patterns" on page 186 |
| Saving Mode | On | |
| | Off* | |
| Print Position | Right* | |
| | Center Right | |
| | Center Left | |
| | Left | |
| Print Head Cleaning | Auto Cleaning | Execute Print Head Cleaning. Perform Auto Cleaning first. If the clogs are not cleared by doing it, then do in the order of Cleaning(Light), Cleaning(Medium), and Cleaning(Heavy) until the clogs are cleared.<br>Execute Print Head Refresh if there are multiple large clogs, even though you executed Cleaning(Heavy). When you execute Print Head Refresh, the suction caps need to be cleaned, because of this, the cleaning operation takes a long time, so execute it if you have the problem described above.<br>☞ "Print Head Cleaning" on page 186 |
| | Cleaning(Light) | |
| | Cleaning(Medium) | |
| | Cleaning(Heavy) | |
| | Print Head Refresh | |
| Cleaning the Maintenance Parts | Anti-drying caps | Start cleaning the selected parts. Follow the on-screen instructions to clean them.<br>☞ "Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160<br>☞ "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164<br>☞ "Cleaning the suction caps" on page 163<br>☞ "Cleaning the media cleaners" on page 159 |
| | Around the Head | |
| | Suction cap | |
| | Media cleaner | |

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Print Head Nozzle Limitation | On | Set the print heads to use for printing.<br>For example, if there is a clogged nozzle in one print head and the clog cannot be cleared after repeated head cleaning, you can continue printing using the unclogged print head. Use this when you want to solve the problem without interrupting the printing work.<br>❏ When maintenance that takes time, such as **Print Head Refresh**, needs to be done, do that maintenance after finishing work.<br>❏ When the print head needs to be replaced, continue work until it is replaced.<br>Confirm the check pattern printed by **Print Head Nozzle Check**, and then select the print head that is not clogged.<br>Using the Print Head Nozzle Limitation function increases the print time. This could also reduce print quality. We recommend using it only during the time until the clogged nozzles can be cleared. |
| | Off* | |
| Replace Waste Ink Bottle | | If you are replacing the waste ink bottle before the message indicating that it is time to replace the waste ink bottle appears on the control panel's screen, do so from this menu. |
| Replace Maintenance Parts | Replace Wiper Roll | Start replacing the selected parts. Follow the on-screen instructions to replace them.<br>"Replacing the wiper roll" on page 173<br>"Replacing the media holder" on page 177 |
| | Replace Take In Media Holder | |
| | Replace Take Up Media Holder | |

# Supply Status menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Ink/Waste Ink Bottle | | Shows the replacement timing, remaining amount and part number of the selected consumables. |
| Others | | |

# Replacement Part Information menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/ SC-F10000H Series/SC-F10000 Series: | | Displays the replacement timing for the selected replacement part. To replace it, contact your dealer or Epson service call center. |
| Ink Supply Pump | | |
| Anti-Drying Caps Drive Assembly | | |
| Cleaning Pump | | |
| Wiper Unit Drive Assembly | | |
| Suction Pump | | |
| Ink Tube | | |

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| SC-F20000 Series: | | Displays the replacement timing for the selected replacement part. To replace it, contact your dealer or Epson service call center. |
| Ink Supply Pump1 | | |
| Ink Supply Pump2 | | |
| Anti-Drying Caps Drive Assembly | | |
| Cleaning Pump | | |
| Wiper Unit Drive Assembly | | |
| Suction Pump | | |
| Ink Tube | | |

## Printer Status menu

| Item | Parameter | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Firmware Version | | Shows and prints the selected information.<br>The **Printer Name** is the name set in Epson Edge Dashboard. |
| Printer Name | | |
| Fatal Error Log | | |
| Operation Report | Total Print Area | |
| | Total Media Feed Length | |
| | Total Carriage Pass | |

# Problem Solver

## When a Message is Displayed

If one of the following messages is displayed, read and follow the instructions below.

| Messages | What to do |
|---|---|
| The waste ink bottle is nearing the end of its service life.<br>Prepare a new one.<br>You can continue printing until replacement is required. | The Waste Ink Bottle is getting full. Ready a new Waste Ink Bottle.<br>"Options and Consumable Products" on page 231 |
| Ink cartridge is not recognized. Please replace the cartridge. | Remove and reinsert the ink cartridge. If the message persists, insert a new ink cartridge (do not reinsert the ink cartridge that caused the error). |
| The ink is low.<br>Replace the old ink cartridge with a new one.<br>You can continue printing until replacement is required. | The ink is low. Confirm that a new ink cartridge is installed so the ink cartridges can be automatically switched when the remaining amount falls below the threshold.<br>"Options and Consumable Products" on page 231 |
| The heater is warming up. | One or more heaters is still being warmed to the specified temperature. To start printing while the heater temperature is low, press **Start** to display a confirmation screen, and then press **OK** to start. |
| The media and print head are contacting. Check whether the print results are clean. Printing can continue. | If you check the print results and they are dirty, stop printing and clean around the print head.<br>"Cleaning around the print head" on page 164<br>At the same time, see "Troubleshooting & Tips" in the *Online Manual* to take measures so striking does not reoccur. |
| The XXXXX is nearing the end of its service life. | The replacement interval is approaching for the parts that are shown. Prepare new parts. |
| The media is not attached to the roll core on the auto take-up reel unit.<br>Attach the media. | Media is not correctly attached to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.<br>If this happens while printing, press **Pause** to stop printing.<br>Set the Auto switch on the Auto Take-up Reel Unit to Off temporarily, return it to the original setting, and then correctly load the media in the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.<br>"Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99 |
| The roll core is spinning.<br>Remove the media from the media holder, and then reload the media. | Media is not correctly attached to the Media Feeding Unit.<br>Remove the media, and then correctly attach the media to the Media Feeding Unit.<br>"Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81 |
| The inside of the printer is hot.<br>Lower room temperature. | Lower the temperature of the room until it is within the temperature range described in the "Specifications Table".<br>"Specifications Table" on page 290 |
| The media is low. | The remaining amount of loaded media is running low. Prepare new media. |

| Messages | What to do |
|---|---|
| The media is not loaded correctly.<br>Raise the media loading lever and remove the media. Then reload the media. | Media was not correctly loaded when it was loaded. Refer to the following, and load the media correctly.<br>☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81<br>☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99 |
| There is a problem with the media or the print results; auto adjust cannot be done.<br>Adjust manually.<br><br>The scanning device may be malfunctioning.<br>Contact Epson Support.<br>Manual adjustment is possible. | Pressing **OK** cancels the error.<br>When doing Auto execution of Print Adjustments, execution is not possible for the following media, settings, and environment.<br>❏ Media with an uneven surface<br>❏ Media that bleeds-through easily<br>❏ The printer is used in a place that is exposed to direct sunlight or interference from other ambient light sources.<br><br>In these cases, execute the manual menu.<br>☞ "Print Adjustments" on page 140<br><br>If the printer is exposed to interference from ambient light sources, shade the printer from these sources and perform the function again; it may succeed. When the function has failed after shading the printer, execute the manual menu.<br><br>If the above items do not apply, and the same error occurs again, contact your local dealer or Epson service call center. |
| [XXXXX] is different from the winding direction of the loaded roll media.<br>Set it to match the winding direction of the loaded roll media. | Shows the winding specifications that were set in XXXXX when loading media.<br>Does the **Roll Winding Direction** set when loading media match the actual winding specifications?<br>Raise the media loading lever to resolve the error. Lower the media loading lever again, and follow the on-screen instructions of the printer to reset the **Roll Winding Direction** correctly. |
| The auto take-up reel unit is almost full.<br>It is recommended that you remove the printed media from the auto take-up reel unit.<br><br>You cannot continue printing because the auto take-up reel unit is full.<br>Remove the printed media from the auto take-up reel unit. | The amount of media taken up on the auto take-up reel unit is approaching the limit or has reached the limit.<br>Remove the media that has been taken up so that new media can be taken up.<br>☞ "Removing the Take-up Roll" on page 130<br>☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99 |
| Cleaning the Anti-Drying Caps. | The anti-drying caps are dirty and need to be cleaned. Follow the on-screen instructions to check and clean the caps that need cleaning.<br>☞ "Cleaning anti-drying caps" on page 160 |
| Failed to inspect the condition of nozzles.<br>Cannot run "Auto Cleaning".<br>Select cleaning strength manually and run Print Head Cleaning. | The printer has exceeded the temperature at which printer operations are guaranteed. Adjust the temperature of the room, to start using the printer again.<br>☞ "Specifications Table" on page 290 |
| The emergency stop button has been pressed.<br>Release the button, and then turn the power on again. | The emergency stop button for the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit has been pressed. See the following to turn the power off and on again.<br>☞ "Recovering from an Emergency Stop" on page 269 |

# When an Error Message is Displayed

| Error messages | What to do |
|---|---|
| Parts Service Life Ending XXXXXXXX<br>One of the parts in the printer is nearing the end of its service life.<br>Note the code and call for service.<br><br>Replace Part Now XXXXXXXX<br>Note the code and call for service. | This message notifies you that it is time to replace replacement parts on the printer.<br>Contact your dealer or Epson Support and tell them the maintenance request code. |
| Printer error.<br>If the problem persists, contact Epson Support.<br>XXXXXXXX<br><br>Printer error.<br>Turn the power off and on again.<br>If the problem persists, contact Epson Support.<br>XXXXXXXX | Error messages that are displayed for the following.<br>❏ The power cable is not connected securely<br>❏ An error that cannot be cleared occurs<br>When a printer error occurs, the printer automatically stops printing. Turn off the printer, disconnect the power cable from the outlet and from the AC inlet on the printer, and then reconnect. Turn on the printer again multiple times.<br>If the same call for service is displayed on the LCD panel, contact your dealer or EpsonSupport for assistance. Tell them the call for service code is “XXXXXXXX”. |

# Troubleshooting

## You cannot print (because the printer does not work)

### The printer does not turn on.

■ **Is the power cable plugged into the electrical outlet or the printer?**

Make sure the power cable is securely plugged into the printer.

■ **Is there any problem with the electrical outlet?**

Make sure your outlet works by connecting the power cable for another electric product.

■ **Are the earth-leakage circuit breaker and Main Power Switch OFF?**

Check the earth-leakage circuit breaker and breaker switch of the Main Power Switch, and if it is OFF, turn it ON, and try turning on the power. If it immediately turns OFF, unplug the power cord and contact your local dealer or Epson service call center.

### Printer does not start correctly

■ **Had the emergency stop button been pressed?**

If you are using a large capacity roll model or a large capacity reel model, the printer cannot start correctly when you turn on the power if the emergency stop button on the Media Feeding Unit has been pressed. See the following to turn the power off and on again.

☞ "Recovering from an Emergency Stop" on page 269

### The printer is not communicating with the computer.

■ **Is the cable plugged in properly?**

Make sure the printer's interface cable is securely plugged into the correct terminal of the computer and the printer. Also, make sure the cable is not broken nor bent. If you have a spare cable, try connecting with the spare cable.

■ **Does the interface cable specification match the specifications for the computer?**

Make sure the interface cable specifications match the specifications for the printer and the computer.

☞ "Specifications Table" on page 290

■ **When using a USB hub, is it being used correctly?**

In the USB specification, daisy-chains of up to five USB hubs are possible. However, we recommend that you connect the printer to the first hub connected directly to the computer. Depending on the hub you are using, the operation of the printer may become unstable. If this should occur, plug the USB cable directly into your computer's USB port.

■ **Is the USB hub recognized correctly?**

Make sure the USB hub is recognized correctly on the computer. If it has, disconnect the USB hub from the computer and connect the computer directly to the printer. Ask the USB hub manufacturer about USB hub operation.

### You cannot print under the network environment.

■ **Are the network settings correct?**

Ask your network administrator for the network settings.

■ **Connect the printer directly to the computer using a USB cable, and then try to print.**

If you can print via USB, there are some problems on the network environment. Ask your system administrator, or refer to the manual for your network system. If you cannot print via USB, see the appropriate section in this User's Guide.

### The printer has an error.

■ **Check the signal lamp display and messages on the screen.**

☞ "Control panel" on page 24

☞ "When a Message is Displayed" on page 222

## The printer sounds like it is printing, but nothing prints

### The print head moves, but nothing prints.

■ **Confirm the printer operation.**

Print a test pattern. Test patterns can be printed without connecting the printer to a computer allowing you to check the printer functions and status. ☞ "Printing nozzle check patterns" on page 186

See the following section for information on what to do if the pattern does not print correctly.

### Test pattern does not print correctly.

■ **Perform head cleaning.**

The nozzles may be clogged. Print a test pattern again after performing head cleaning.

☞ "Print Head Cleaning" on page 186

■ **Has the printer been left unused for a long time?**

If the printer has not been used for a long time, the nozzles may have dried up and have been clogged. Steps to take when the printer has not been used for a long time ☞ "Notes when not using the printer" on page 41

## The prints are not what you expected

### Print quality is poor, uneven, too light, too dark, obvious graininess, or the tone differs.

■ **Are the print head nozzles clogged?**

If the nozzles are clogged, specific nozzles do not fire ink and the print quality declines. Try printing a test pattern.

☞ "Printing nozzle check patterns" on page 186

■ **Perform Print Adjustments.**

There is a slight gap between the print head and the media, so the landing sites for the different colors of ink may be displaced by the following causes.

- ❏ Difference in the direction the print head is moving (right to left or left to right)
- ❏ Temperature and humidity
- ❏ Inertial force of movement of the print head

Displacement of the landing sites of the ink may cause the print results to show obvious graininess or to appear out-of-focus.

Also, large discrepancies in the feed amount cause banding (horizontal banding, tint unevenness, or stripes).

You can adjust discrepancies in ink landing sites and the amount of media that is fed by doing Print Adjustments. In Media Settings, do **Print Adjustments** - **Automatic Adjustment**, to do adjustments for the media you are using.

☞ "Print Adjustments" on page 140

■ **Are you using a genuine Epson ink cartridge?**

This printer is developed for use with Epson ink cartridges. If you use non-Epson ink cartridges, printouts may be faint, or the color of the printed image may be changed because the remaining ink level is not correctly detected. Be sure to use the correct ink cartridge.

### Are you using an old ink cartridge?

The print quality declines when an old ink cartridge is used. Replace the old ink cartridge with a new one. Use all the ink in the cartridge before the date printed on the package or within six months of opening it, whichever is sooner.

### Are the heaters at the correct temperature?

Raise the temperature if the print results are blurred or smudged or the ink clots. Note, however, that raising the temperature too high can cause the media to shrink, wrinkle, or deteriorate.

In addition, the heaters may require some time to reach the desired temperature if the ambient temperature is low. The heaters may also not have the desired effect after reaching the selected temperature if the media is too cold. Allow the media to warm to room temperature before use.

### Are media settings correct?

Confirm that the media settings in the software RIP or on the printer match the media actually in use.

### Have you compared the printing result with the image on the display monitor?

Since monitors and printers produce colors differently, printed colors will not always match on-screen colors perfectly.

### Was a printer cover opened during printing?

Opening covers during printing causes the print head to stop abruptly, resulting in uneven colors. Do not open the covers while printing is in progress.

### Is Ink is low. displayed on the control panel's screen?

The print quality may decline when the ink is low. We recommend replacing the ink cartridge with a new one. If there is a difference in color after replacing the ink cartridge, try performing head cleaning a few times.

### Shake the ink cartridges.

The ink may have sedimented (components settling to the bottom of the liquid). Remove the ink cartridges and shake them.

☞ "Periodic shaking of ink cartridges" on page 181

## The print is not positioned properly on the media.

### Is the media loaded correctly and are the margins correct?

If the media is not loaded correctly, the results may be off center or part of the data may not be printed. You should also check whether the correct options are selected for **Side Margin** and **Print Start Position** in the setup menu.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

### Is the media skewed?

If the media is not loaded correctly, the media may skew and the print position may be displaced. Be careful of the following, and load the media correctly.

- ❏ When pulling out the media, hold the center of the media in one hand, and pull it straight out.
- ❏ When you attach the end of the media to the roll core, pull the center section of the media straight down as you affix it.

☞ "Loading Media Into the Media Feeding Unit" on page 81

☞ "Loading Media Into the Auto Take-up Reel Unit" on page 99

### Is the media wide enough for the print data?

Although printing normally stops if the print image is wider than the media, data will be printed beyond the edges of the media if **Off** is selected for **Width Detection** in the setup menu. Choose **On** for **Width Detection** in the setup menu.

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

## Vertical ruled lines are misaligned.

■ **Is the media wavy?**

Certain types of media may develop waves under some conditions (humidity and temperature) while installed in the printer. If a wave has developed, press the ↓ button in the control panel to feed the media and avoid the affected area. We recommend that you lower the temperature and humidity to prevent waves developing.

■ **Is the print head misaligned?**

If the print head is misaligned, ruled lines may be misaligned accordingly. When vertical ruled lines are misaligned, select **Print Adjustments** - **Print Head Alignment** in the media settings to adjust print head misalignment that occurs during printing.

☞ "Print Head Alignment" on page 141

## Printout is dirty

■ **Are the print heads dirty?**

If the print heads are dirty, dirt may stick to the printout during printing. Check for dirt stuck to the print heads and clean them, if necessary.

☞ "Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

If there is still dirt after cleaning, the heads may be scuffing. See "Troubleshooting & Tips" in the *Online Manual* to take measures so scuffing does not occur.

Setting **Actions after Media Scuffing** makes it easy to detect when scuffing occurs, so you can take measures immediately.

☞ "General Settings menu" on page 201

# Media

## Media Jams.

■ **Is media curled, folded, curved, creased, or waved?**

Cut and remove the curled, folded, curved, creased, or waved part.

☞ "Cutting Media" on page 130

■ **Is media loaded just before printing?**

The pressure rollers may crease media left in the printer, or the media may also become wavy or curled.

■ **Is the media too thick or too thin?**

❑ Check the media specifications to determine whether it can be used in the printer.
☞ "Supported Media" on page 237

❑ For information on how to configure print settings using the software RIP, contact the RIP manufacturer.

■ **Is Paper Suction set too high?**

In the media settings, reduce Paper Suction (the force that sucks media down the media path).

☞ "Media Setting Item" on page 211

## Removing Jammed Media.

This section uses illustrations of the standard roll/reel models for the explanations.

Follow the steps below to remove jammed media.

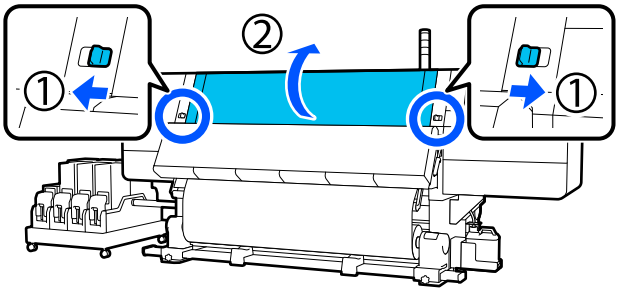
⚠ ***Caution:***

*Be careful not to trap your hands or fingers when opening or closing the front cover. Failure to observe these precautions could result in injury.*

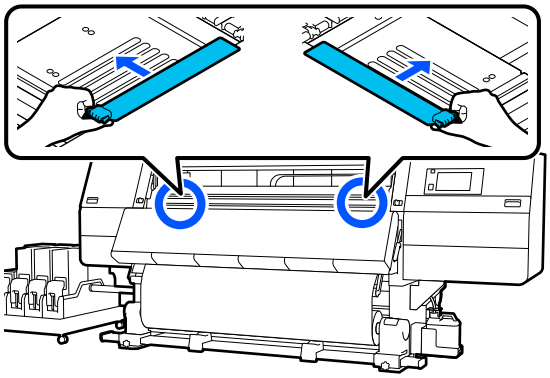
1 If you are using a large capacity reel model, cut the media and remove it.

☞ "Removing the Take-up Roll" on page 130

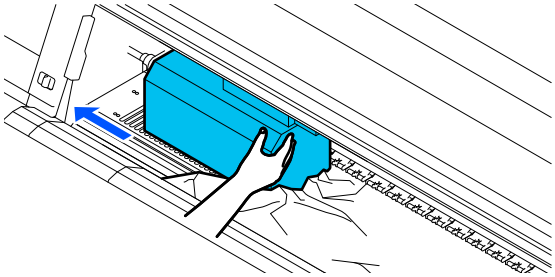
2 Move the lock levers on the left and right side outwards to open the front cover.



3 While holding the tabs of the media edge plate on both sides, move the plate out of the way toward both edges of the platen.



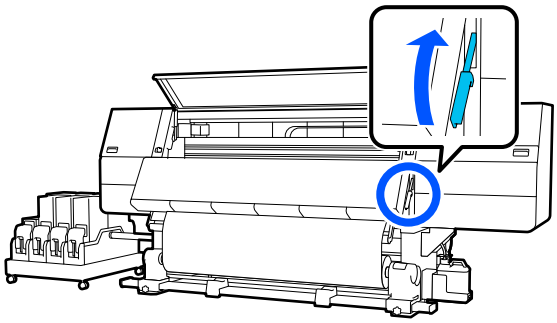
4 If the print head is over the media, move it away from the jam.



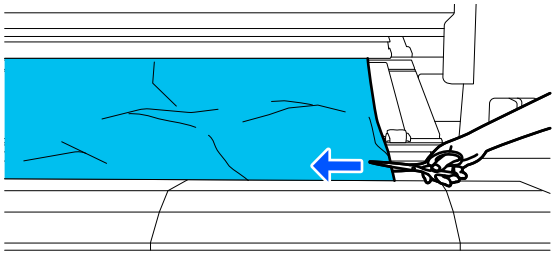
**Important:**

*Move the print head only after moving the media edge plates out of the way. Contact with deformed media edge plates could damage the print head.*

5 Raise the media loading lever.



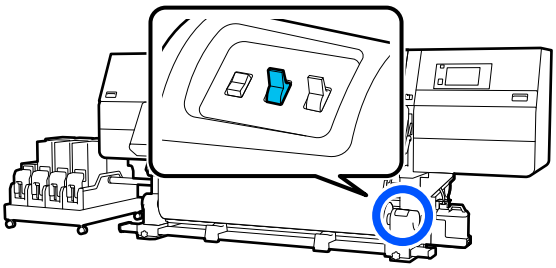
6 Use scissors, at the platen, to cut away the torn or wrinkled parts.



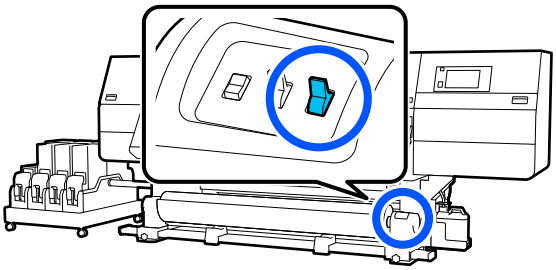
If there are torn or wrinkled parts deep inside the platen, pull out the media and then cut them away.

If you are using a large capacity reel model, go to step 9.

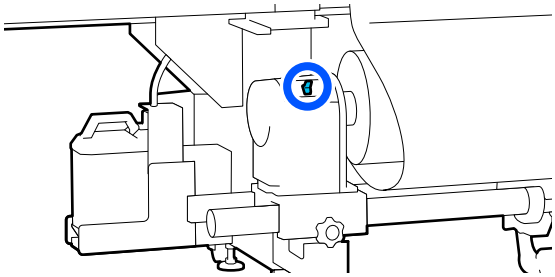
7 Set the Auto switch on the auto take-up reel unit to Off.

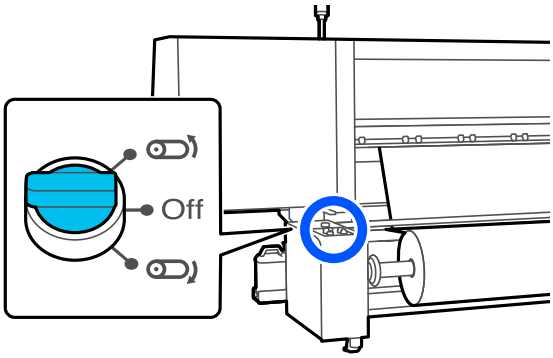


8 Take up the cut media completely by operating the Manual switch according to how the media is rolled.



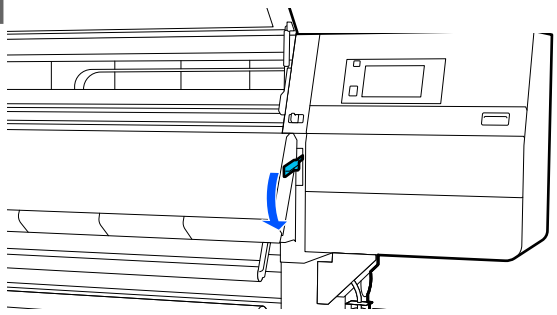
9 Move to the back, and take up the media by operating the drive switch or the Manual switch according to how the media is rolled.



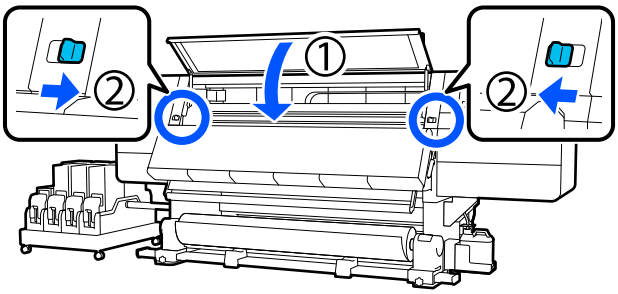



10 Move to the front, check the platen, and remove any cut ends of the media and so on that remain.

11 Lower the media loading lever.



12 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.




After that, follow the on-screen instructions to check the print head, and if it is dirty, clean it.

"Cleaning around the print head" on page 164

# Others

## Heater automatically turns off

■ The heater turns off if no print job is received and no errors occur in the printer for a certain time. You can change the time until the heaters automatically switch to Off in **Heater Off Timer** in the setup menu. "General Settings menu" on page 201

The heater restarts when a print job is received or **Preheat Start** is pressed.

## The control panel display keeps turning off.

■ **Is the printer in sleep mode?**

When no operations are performed on the printer for the time set in **Sleep Timer** in the setup menu, the printer enters sleep mode. The time before entering sleep mode can be changed in the General Settings menu.

"General Settings menu" on page 201

The screen display recovers when you press on the control panel screen.

Sleep mode is canceled when a print job is received, the media loading lever is used, or another operation involving printer hardware is performed.

## Forgotten password for network setup protection

■ **Contact your dealer or Epson Support.**

## The red light is on inside the printer.

■ **This is not a failure.**

The red light is a light inside the printer.

# Appendix

For the latest information, see the Epson Web site. (as of January, 2026)

# Options and Consumable Products

## Ink cartridges

| Printer model | Product | | Part number |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC-F11000H<br>SC-F10000H<br>SC-F11060H<br>SC-F10060H | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43H1 |
| | | Cyan | T43H2 |
| | | Magenta | T43H3 |
| | | Yellow | T43H4 |
| | | Light Cyan | T43H5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43H6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43H7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43H8 |
| | | Orange (Only for SC-F11000H/SC-F11060H) | T43HA |
| | | Violet (Only for SC-F11000H/SC-F11060H) | T43HD |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | High Density Black | T43B1 |
| | | Cyan | T43B2 |
| | | Magenta | T43B3 |
| | | Yellow | T43B4 |
| | | Light Cyan | T43B5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43B6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43B7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43B8 |

## Appendix

| Printer model | Product | | Part number |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC-F11030H<br>SC-F10030H | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43G1/T56K1* |
| | | Cyan | T43G2/T56K2* |
| | | Magenta | T43G3/T56K3* |
| | | Yellow | T43G4/T56K4* |
| | | Light Cyan | T43G5/T56K5* |
| | | Light Magenta | T43G6/T56K6* |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43G7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43G8 |
| | | Orange (Only for SC-F11030H) | T43GA |
| | | Violet (Only for SC-F11030H) | T43GD |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | High Density Black | T43A1 |
| | | Cyan | T43A2 |
| | | Magenta | T43A3 |
| | | Yellow | T43A4 |
| | | Light Cyan | T43A5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43A6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43A7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43A8 |

## Appendix

| Printer model | Product | | Part number |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC-F11040H<br>SC-F10040H | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43L1 |
| | | Cyan | T43L2 |
| | | Magenta | T43L3 |
| | | Yellow | T43L4 |
| | | Light Cyan | T43L5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43L6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43L7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43L8 |
| | | Orange (Only for SC-F11040H) | T43LA |
| | | Violet (Only for SC-F11040H) | T43LD |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | Light Cyan | T43E5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43E6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43E7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43E8 |
| SC-F11070H<br>SC-F10070H | Ink cartridges (10000 ml)* | High Density Black | T43M1 |
| | | Cyan | T43M2 |
| | | Magenta | T43M3 |
| | | Yellow | T43M4 |
| | | Light Cyan | T43M5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43M6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43M7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43M8 |
| | | Orange (Only for SC-F11070H) | T43MA |
| | | Violet (Only for SC-F11070H) | T43MD |

## Appendix

| Printer model | Product | | Part number |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC-F11080H<br>SC-F10080H | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43K1 / T56K1* |
| | | Cyan | T43K2 / T56K2* |
| | | Magenta | T43K3 / T56K3* |
| | | Yellow | T43K4 / T56K4* |
| | | Light Cyan | T43K5 / T56K5* |
| | | Light Magenta | T43K6 / T56K6* |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43K7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43K8 |
| | | Orange (Only for SC-F11080H) | T43KA |
| | | Violet (Only for SC-F11080H) | T43KD |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | Light Cyan | T43D5 |
| | | Light Magenta | T43D6 |
| | | Fluorescent Yellow | T43D7 |
| | | Fluorescent Pink | T43D8 |
| SC-F20000<br>SC-F20060<br>SC-F11000<br>SC-F10000<br>SC-F11060<br>SC-F10060 | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43H1 |
| | | Cyan | T43H2 |
| | | Magenta | T43H3 |
| | | Yellow | T43H4 |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | High Density Black | T43B1 |
| | | Cyan | T43B2 |
| | | Magenta | T43B3 |
| | | Yellow | T43B4 |
| SC-F20030<br>SC-F11030<br>SC-F10030 | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43G1/T56K1* |
| | | Cyan | T43G2/T56K2* |
| | | Magenta | T43G3/T56K3* |
| | | Yellow | T43G4/T56K4* |
| | Ink cartridges (3000ml) | High Density Black | T43A1 |
| | | Cyan | T43A2 |
| | | Magenta | T43A3 |
| | | Yellow | T43A4 |

| Printer model | Product | | Part number |
|---|---|---|---|
| SC-F20040<br>SC-F11040<br>SC-F10040 | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43L1 |
| | | Cyan | T43L2 |
| | | Magenta | T43L3 |
| | | Yellow | T43L4 |
| SC-F20070<br>SC-F11070<br>SC-F10070 | Ink cartridges (10000 ml)* | High Density Black | T43M1 |
| | | Cyan | T43M2 |
| | | Magenta | T43M3 |
| | | Yellow | T43M4 |
| SC-F20080<br>SC-F11080<br>SC-F10080 | Ink cartridges (10000 ml) | High Density Black | T43K1 |
| | | Cyan | T43K2 |
| | | Magenta | T43K3 |
| | | Yellow | T43K4 |

* Not available in all regions.

Epson recommends the use of genuine Epson ink cartridges. Epson cannot guarantee the quality or reliability of nongenuine ink. The use of non-genuine ink may cause damage that is not covered by Epson's warranties, and under certain circumstances, may cause erratic printer behavior.
Information about non-genuine ink levels may not be displayed, and use of non-genuine ink is recorded for possible use in service support.

# Others

| Product | Part number | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Cleaning Kit<br>(except for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210103 | The following consumable items are included in one maintenance set.<br>❏ Cleaning fluid (x1)<br>❏ Cup (x1)<br>❏ Gloves (x16)<br>❏ Cleaning stick (x50) |
| Cleaning Kit<br>(for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210104 | |
| Wiper Roll<br>(except for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210065 | Identical to the Wiper Roll supplied with the printer. |
| Wiper Roll<br>(for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210066 | |

## Appendix

| Product | Part number | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| Waste Ink Bottle (except for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210071 | Identical to the Waste Ink Bottle supplied with the printer. |
| Waste Ink Bottle (for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C13S210072 | |
| Take Up Media Holder* (except for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C12C933881 | Parts for the standard type Auto Take-up Reel Unit.<br>Identical to the media holder of Auto Take-up Reel Unit for this printer. |
| Take Up Media Holder (for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C12C933891 | |
| Take In Media Holder* (except for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C12C933901 | Parts for the standard type Media Feeding Unit<br>Identical to the media holder of Media Feeding Unit for this printer. |
| Take In Media Holder (for SC-F20080/SC-F11080H/SC-F11080/SC-F10080H/SC-F10080) | C12C933911 | |
| Media Cleaner Brush* | C12C936031 | Identical to the Media Cleaner Brush supplied with the printer. |
| Presser Roller Spacer* | C12C936041 | Identical to the Presser Roller Spacer supplied with the printer. |

* Contact your Epson sales representative for availability.

# Supported Media

The following media can be used with the printer.

Print quality is greatly affected by the type and quality of media used. Choose a media suited to the task at hand. For information on use, refer to the documentation supplied with the media or contact the manufacturer. Before buying media in large quantities, try printing on a smaller sample and check the results.

> ***Caution:***
>
> *Because the media is heavy, it should not be carried by one person.*
>
> *We recommend using a lifter for media that weighs over 40 kg (88.18 lb.).*

> ***Important:***
>
> *Do not use media that is wrinkled, scuffed, torn, or dirty.*

### Roll media

| | |
|---|---|
| Roll core size | 2 inch, 3 inch (standard type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit)<br>3 inch (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit) |
| Roll outer diameter | Maximum 250 mm (9.84 in.) (standard type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit)<br>Maximum 500 mm (19.68 in.) (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit) |
| Media width | 300 to 1950 mm (11.81 to 76.77 in.)(76 inches) |
| Media thickness | Up to 1 mm (0.03 in.) |
| Roll weight | Maximum 60 kg (132 lb.) (standard type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit)<br>Maximum 300 kg (661.38 lb.) (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit/Auto Take-up Reel Unit) |

# Moving and Transporting the Printer

This section describes how to move and transport the product.

## Moving the printer

This section explains how to move a standard roll/reel model or a large capacity roll model to another location on the same floor.

Before moving a large capacity reel model, contact your dealer or Epson Support.

Epson Support

See below for information on moving the printer between floors or to another building.

"Transport" on page 253

### Necessary items

Use the following items supplied with the printer to move it. Prepare them and keep have them handy before you start working.

❏ Spanner
Use to turn the nuts on the adjusters.

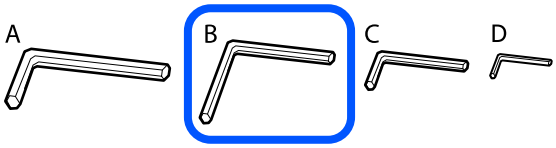


❏ Hex wrench
Use to secure the print head and to install and remove the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit.



Large capacity roll models come with three sizes of hex wrenches (A, B, and C from largest to smallest) or four sizes (A, B, C, and D) as shown

in the illustration. Use hex wrench B for parallel adjustment.




The following items are used to install and remove reinforcement components that are used when moving the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit.

❏ Screws (8 pieces)



❏ Commercially available Phillips head screwdriver



**Warning:**

- ❏ *To prevent accidents due to electrical leakage, connect to an outlet with a grounded (earthed) connector. Connecting to an outlet other than a grounded outlet may cause electric shock or fire.*
- ❏ *Use only the type of power source indicated on the printer's label. An electric shock or fire could occur.*
- ❏ *Do not connect the power cable to a power strip or multi plug. An electric shock or fire could occur. Connect the power cable directly to an outlet for domestic use.*

**Caution:**

- ❏ *Because the product is heavy, it should not be carried by one person. Moving the product requires more than five people. See the following for the weight of the product. Lifting the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit requires more than two people.*
  *"Specifications Table" on page 290*
- ❏ *Do not tilt the product more than 10 degrees forward or back while moving it. Failure to observe this precaution could result in the printer falling over, causing accidents.*
- ❏ *When moving the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit along an uneven path, be careful that it does not catch on uneven surfaces. If it hits an uneven surface and its casters are damaged, the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit could fall over and injure someone.*
- ❏ *Arrange the power cable such that people do not trip on it. People who are working could trip and fall over, resulting in injury.*

**Important:**

- ❏ *The printer can be moved across bumps of less than 5 mm (0.19 in.) and gaps of less than 30 mm (1.18 in.). Before you start, check the bumps and gaps of the route to move the printer.*
- ❏ *Be sure to move the printer under the following conditions.*
  - ❏ *Do not separate ink supply unit from the printer.*
  - ❏ *Leave fixing wire attached.*
  - ❏ *Leave ink cartridges installed.*
  - ❏ *For large capacity roll models, remove the Media Feeding Unit from the printer.*

## Getting Ready

This section uses illustrations of the standard roll/reel models for the explanations. If you are using a large capacity roll model, the adjuster operation for the standard type Media Feeding Unit is not necessary.

1 Confirm that the printer is off.

2 Remove the Waste Ink Bottle.

“Replacing the waste ink bottle” on page 176

3 Disconnect the power cords and all other cables.

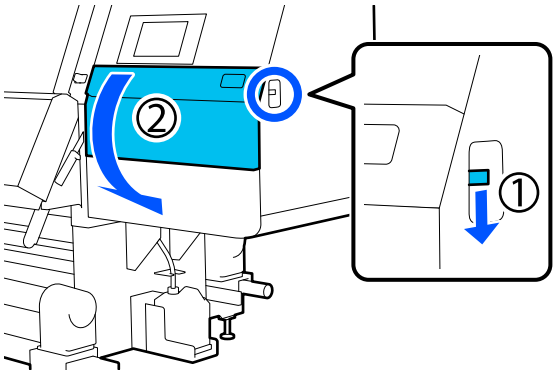
Remove any wires that are in clamps from the clamps.

4 Remove media from the Media Feeding Unit and Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

“Removing the Take-up Roll” on page 130

“Removing the Loaded Media” on page 134

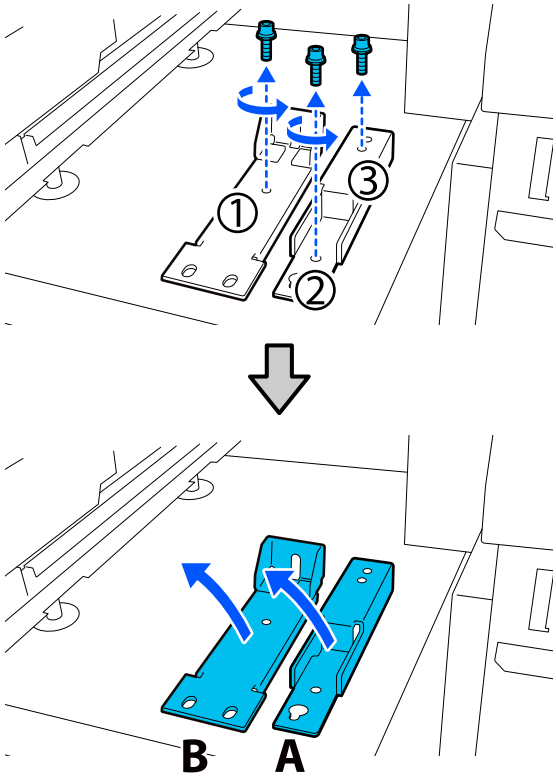
5 Open the right-side maintenance cover.



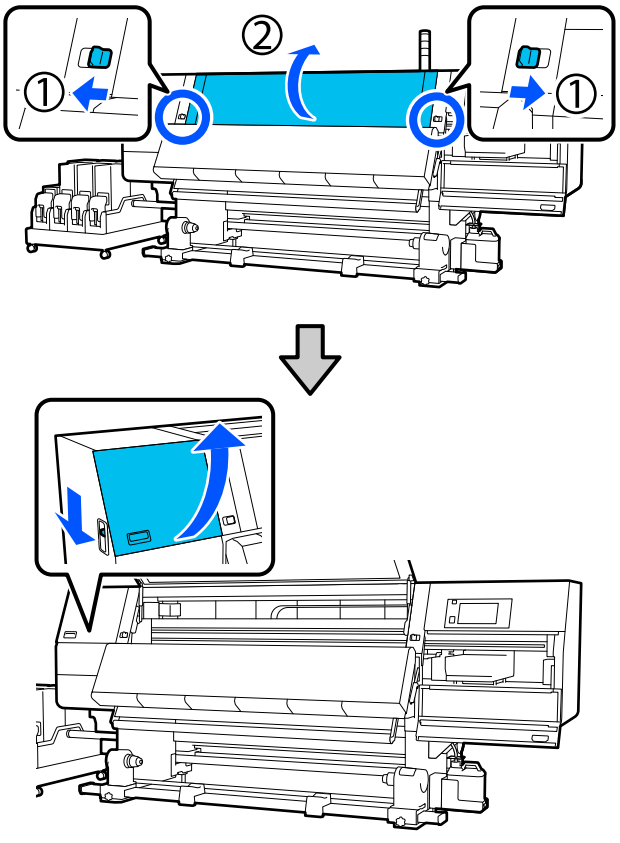

6 Loosen the 3 screws and remove the screws and print head anchors A and B, as shown in the illustrations.

If screws (1) and (2) are difficult to loosen by hand, use a hex wrench.

Pull screw (3) out as is.

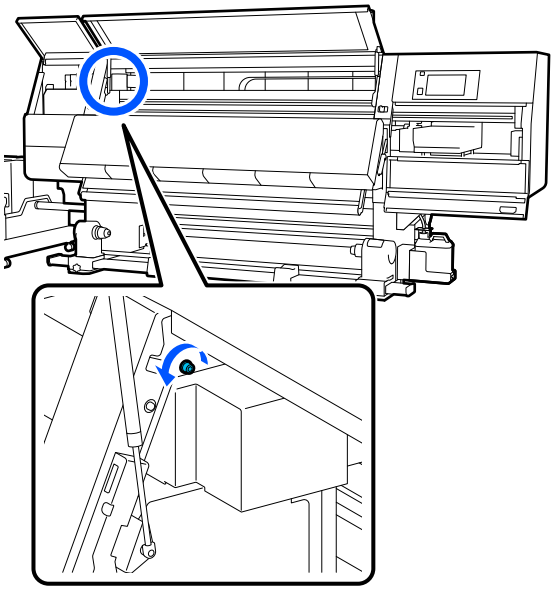



7 Open the front cover and left-side maintenance cover.



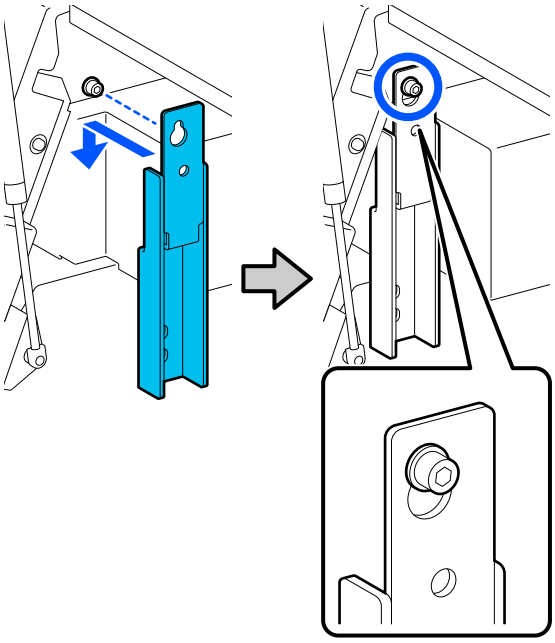
8 Loosen the screw shown in the illustration inside the front cover about halfway.

If a screw is difficult to loosen by hand, use a hex wrench.

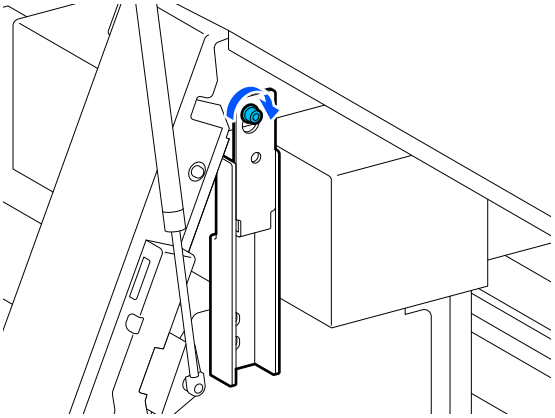


9 Hang anchor A on the screw as shown in the illustration.

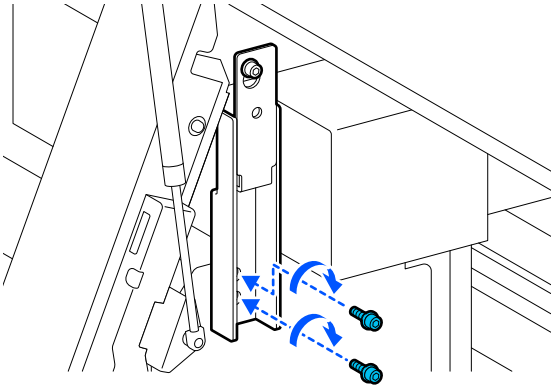
Put the screw through the hole in the anchor to hook it. When doing this, confirm that the screw is hooked into the upper part of the hole.



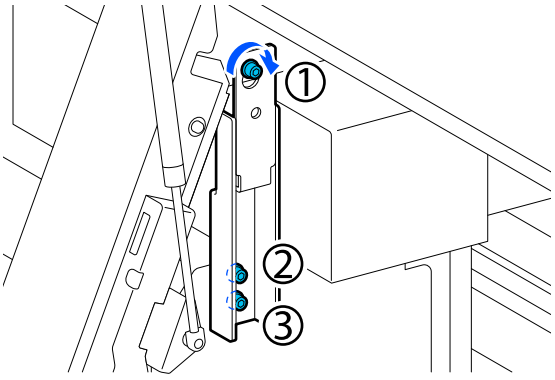
10 Lightly tighten the screw.



11 Insert the screws removed in Step 5 into the 2 holes in the bottom part of the anchor, and lightly tighten them.

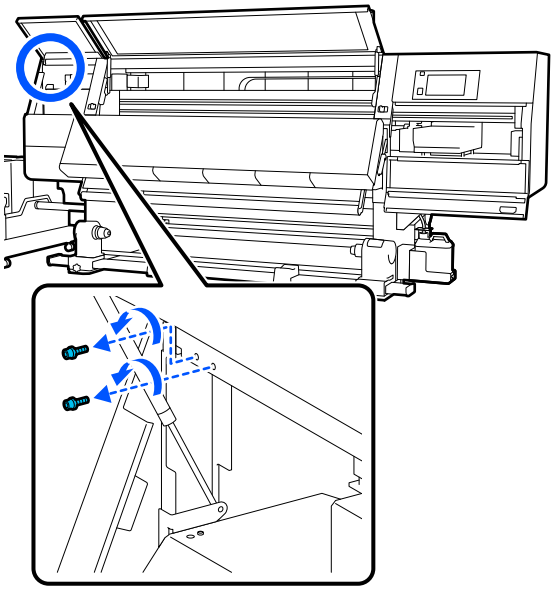


12 Use the hex wrench to securely tighten the screws in the order shown in the illustration.



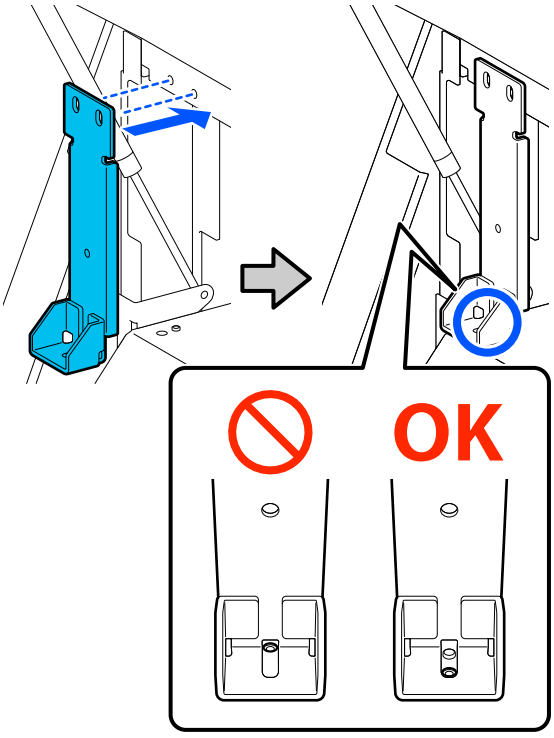
13 Loosen and remove the 2 screws inside the maintenance cover, as shown in the illustration.

If a screw is difficult to loosen by hand, use a hex wrench.

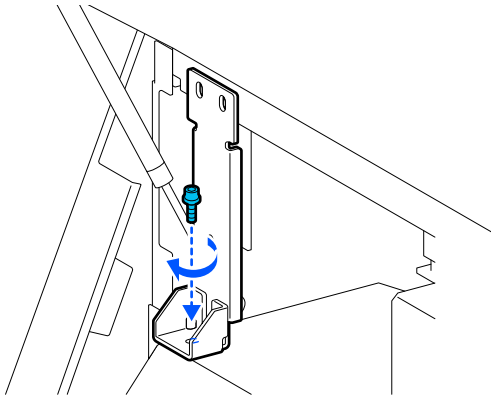


14 Align the screw holes on the printer and on anchor B in the orientation shown in the illustration.

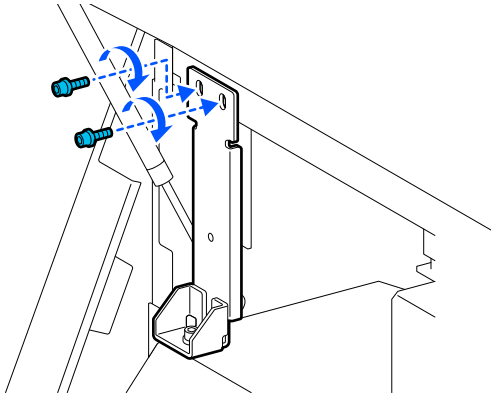
When doing this, position the anchor without tilting it. When it is positioned correctly, the screw hole appears at the front end of the rectangular hole in the bottom of the anchor.



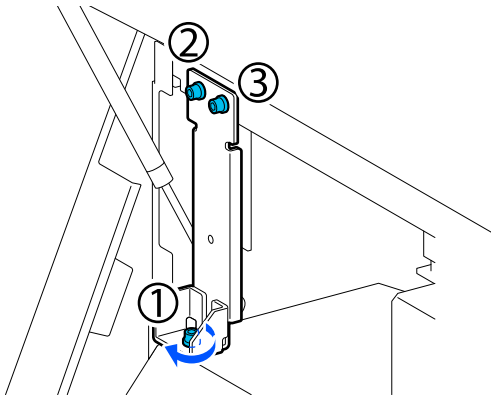

15 Insert the screw removed in Step 5 into the hole in the bottom part of the anchor, and lightly tighten it.



16 Insert the screws removed in Step 12 into the 2 screw holes in the top part of the anchor, and lightly tighten them.



17 Use the hex wrench to securely tighten the screws in the order shown in the illustration.




18 Close all the covers, and then move the front cover's left and right lock levers inward.

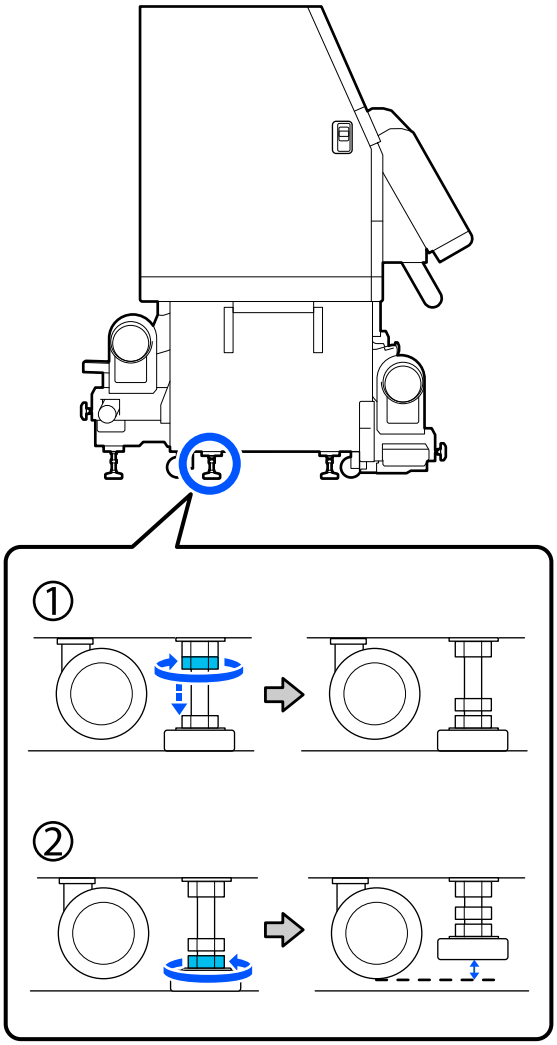
19 If you are using a large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, follow the procedure below to remove the Media Feeding Unit.

“Removing the Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type only)” on page 243

20 On the left side, raise the center adjuster so it is higher than the caster.

(1) Turn the top nut clockwise to move it downward.

(2) Turn the bottom nut counter-clockwise until the adjuster is higher than the caster.

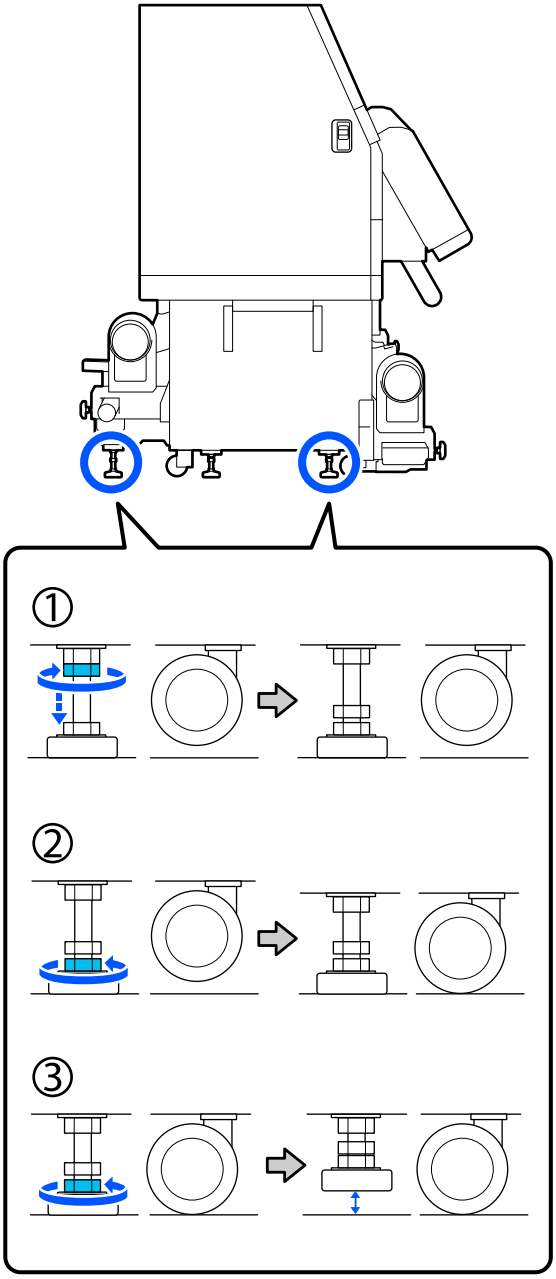



21 On the left side, raise the front and back adjusters so they are higher than the casters.

(1) Turn the top nut clockwise to move it downward.

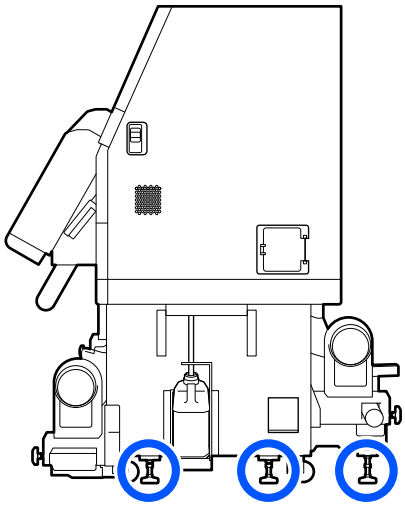
(2) Turn the bottom nuts counter-clockwise until the casters touch the floor.

(3) Continue to turn it counter-clockwise until the adjuster is higher than the caster.



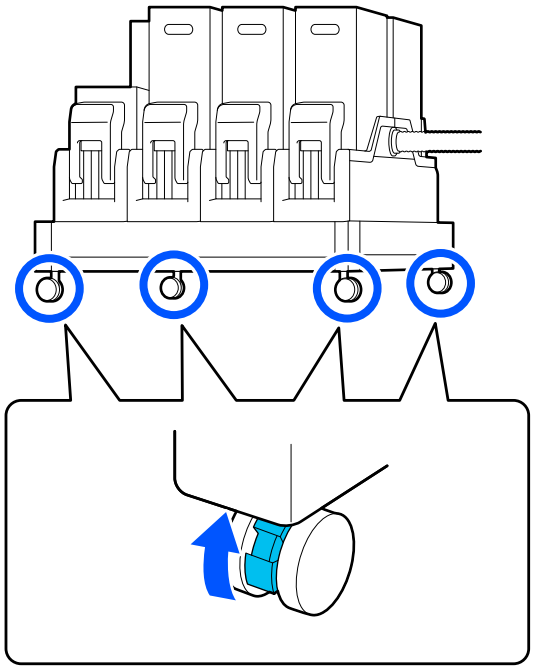

The metal plates under the adjusters are used for installing the printer after moving it, so do not throw them away.

22 Repeat Steps 19 and 20 on the right side to raise those adjusters so they are higher than the casters.



23 Release the locks on the casters on the ink supply unit.

Release all the locks, four on the SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series and six on the SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series.

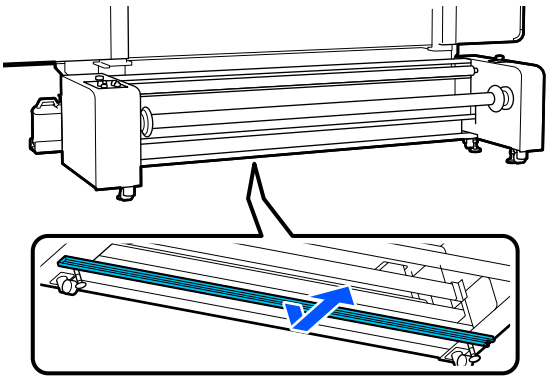


## Removing the Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type only)

1 Remove the reinforcement component, shown in the illustration, from the bottom of the Media Feeding Unit.

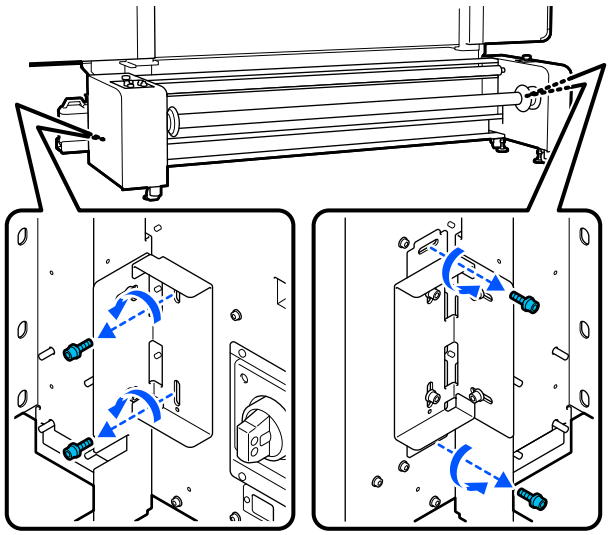
The reinforcement component is secured by magnets, so just pull it down to remove it.

Place the removed reinforcement component where it will not interfere with your work.

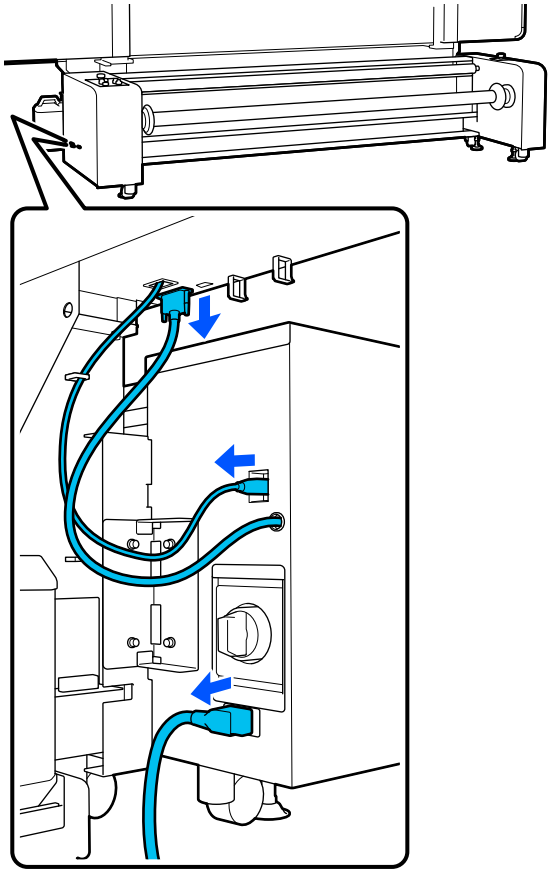


2 Remove the screws that secure the Media Feeding Unit to the printer.

Remove two screws from the left and right as shown in the illustration.



3 Remove the two cables that connect the Media Feeding Unit to the printer, and then remove the power cable.



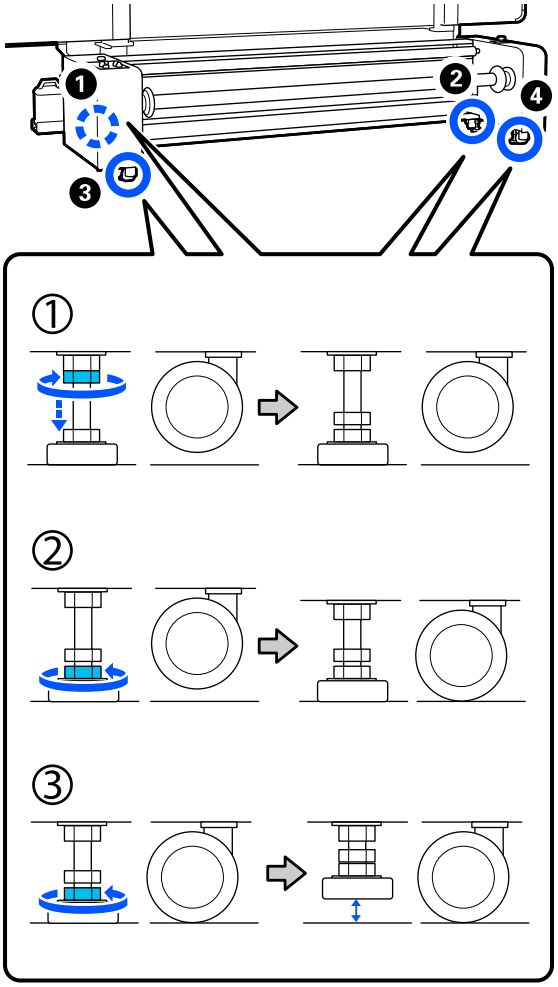
4 Raise the four adjusters so they are higher than the casters.

Follow the steps below to raise the adjusters.

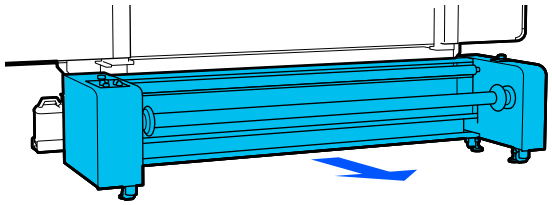
(1) On all the adjusters, turn the top nuts clockwise to move them downward.

(2) Turn the bottom nuts counter-clockwise until the casters touch the floor. When doing this, turn the nuts on each of the four adjusters 1/4 turn each, in the order of the numbers, until the casters touch the ground.

(3) Continue to turn it counter-clockwise until the adjuster is higher than the caster.

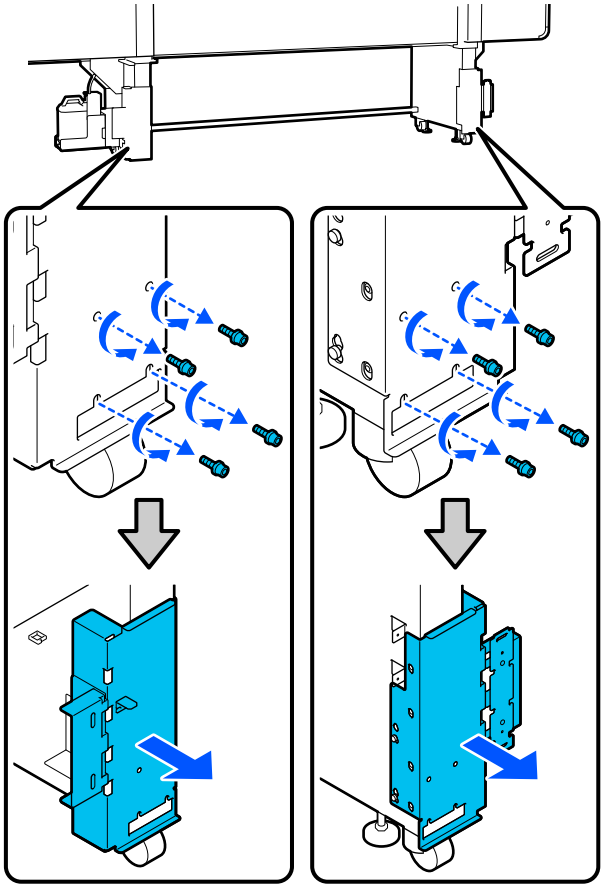



5 Separate the Media Feeding Unit from the printer.



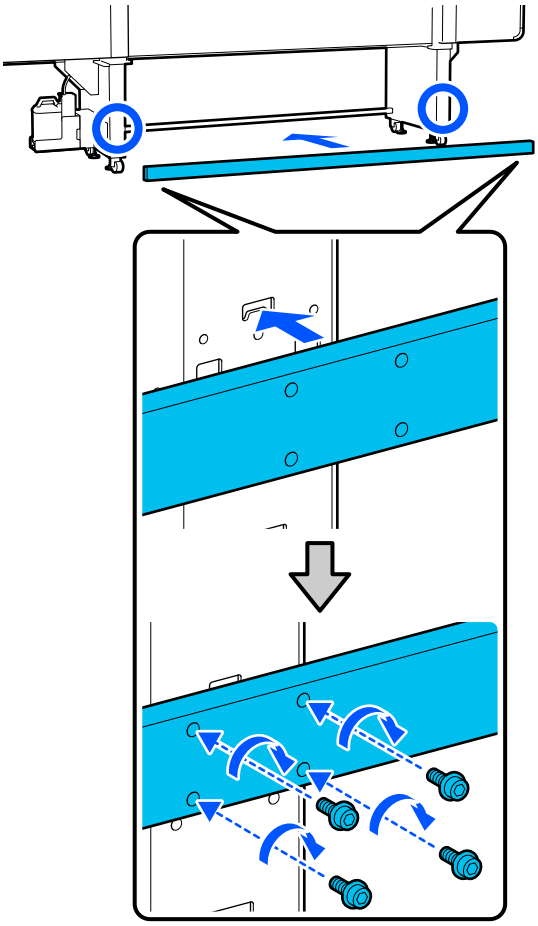
6 Remove the bracket components from the Media Feeding Unit.

Remove the four screws from the left and right, as shown in the illustration, and then remove the mounting components.



7 Install the reinforcement component removed in step 1 to the legs of the printer.

Insert and hook the protrusions on the back of the reinforcement component in the holes on the legs, and then tighten the screws into the four threaded holes on the left and right. Use a commercially available Phillips head screwdriver to tighten the screws.



## Moving

Use a total of 5 people, 4 for the printer and 1 for the ink supply unit, to move the equipment. Also, move so that the printer moves first in the direction you are moving.

Move the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit with two people.

**Important:**

*Use the casters on the printer only to move the printer indoors a short distance over a level floor. They can not be used for transport.*

## Post-Move Installation

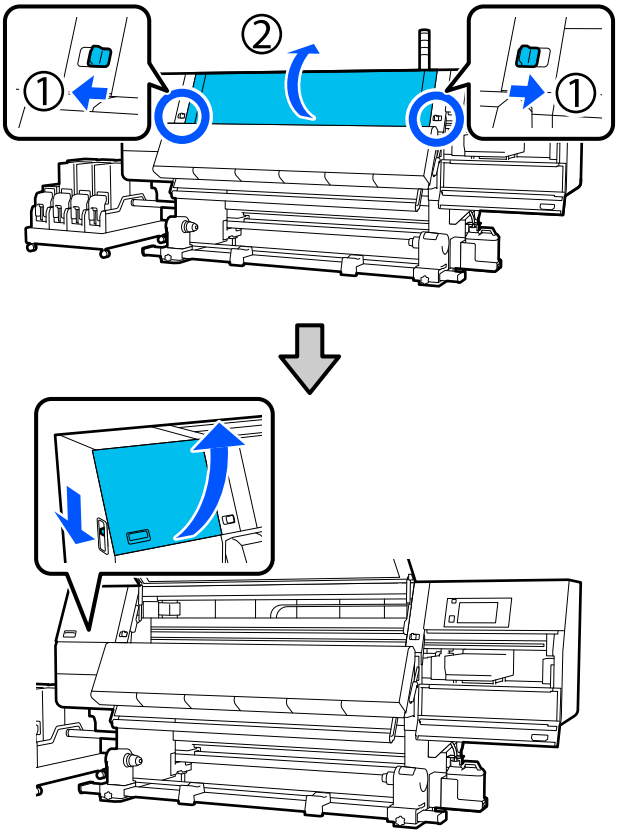
After moving the printer, follow the steps below to ready it for use.

This section uses illustrations of the standard roll/reel models for the explanations. If you are using a large capacity roll model, the adjuster operation for the standard type Media Feeding Unit is not necessary.

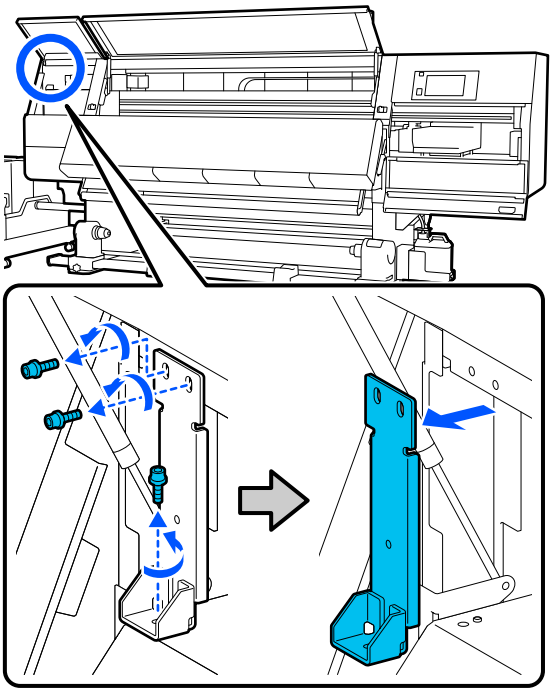
1 Check that the location is appropriate for installation.

"Notes on Usage and Storage" on page 40

2 Open the front cover and left-side maintenance cover.

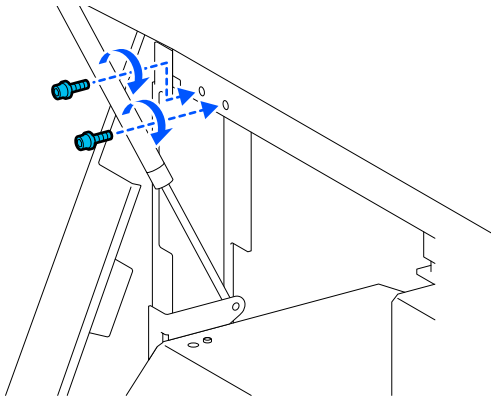



3 Use a hex wrench to loosen the 3 screws on anchor B, and then remove the screws and anchor B.

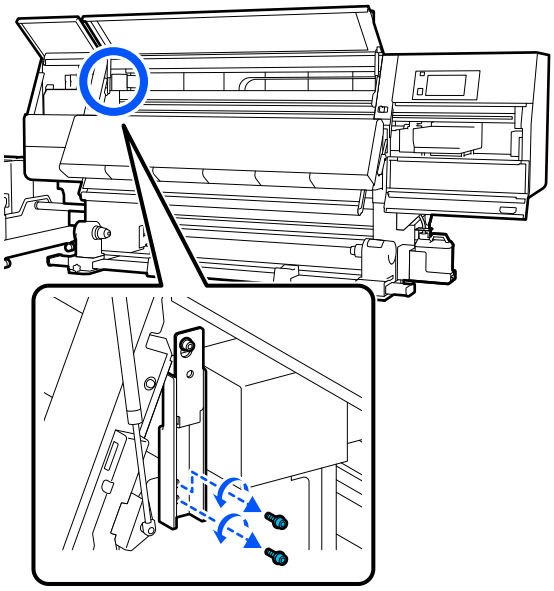


4 Put the 2 top screws back into their original screw holes, and use a hex wrench to tighten them securely.

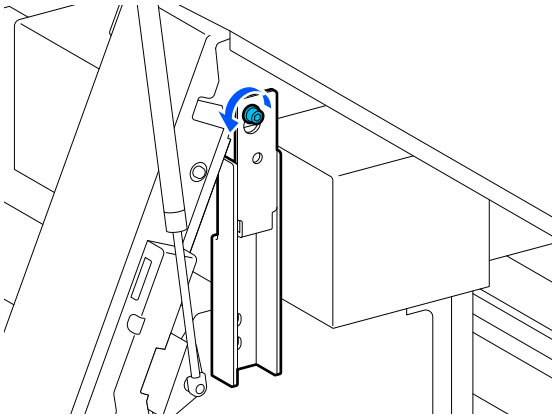
If they are tightened loosely, they may interfere when closing the maintenance cover. Tighten them securely.



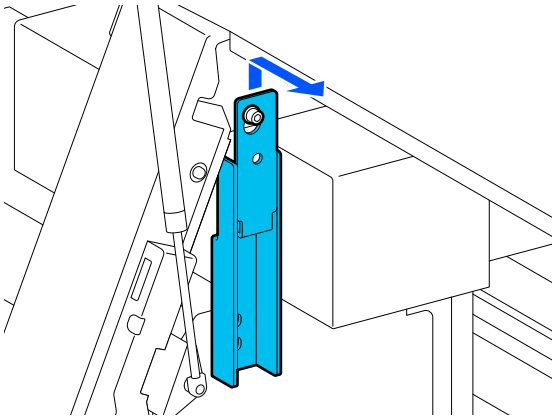
5 Use a hex wrench to loosen and remove the 2 bottom screws on anchor A.



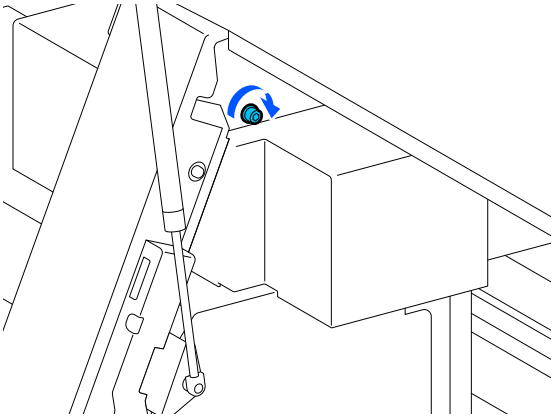
6 Use a hex wrench to halfway loosen the top screw on anchor A.



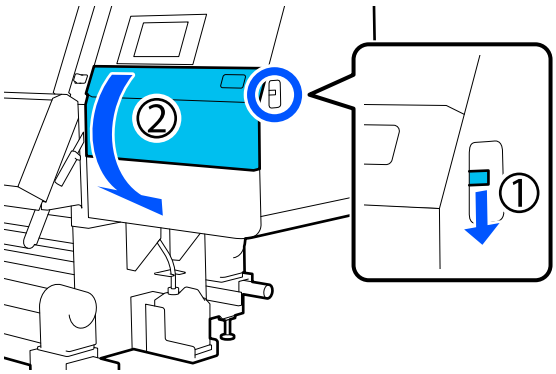
7 Slide anchor A upward and then remove it.



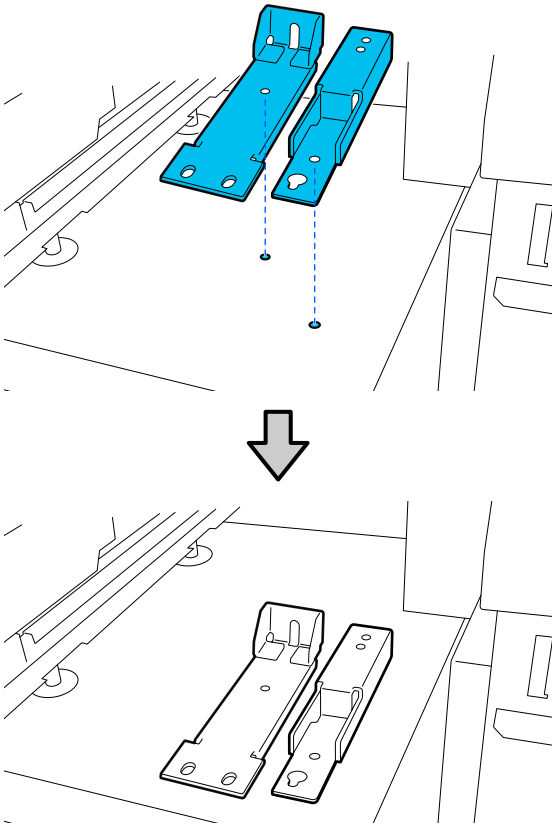
8 Tighten the top screw.



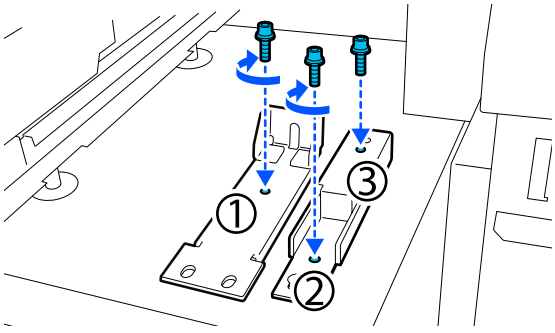
9 Open the right-side maintenance cover.



10 Align anchor A and B with the screw hole positions on the printer as shown in the illustration.

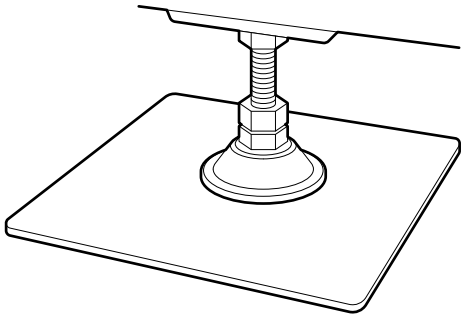


11 Use the screws removed in Steps 3 and 5, and insert and tighten 2 of them into screw holes (1) and (2), and insert 1 of them into hole (3).




12 Close all the covers, and then move the front cover's left and right lock levers inward.

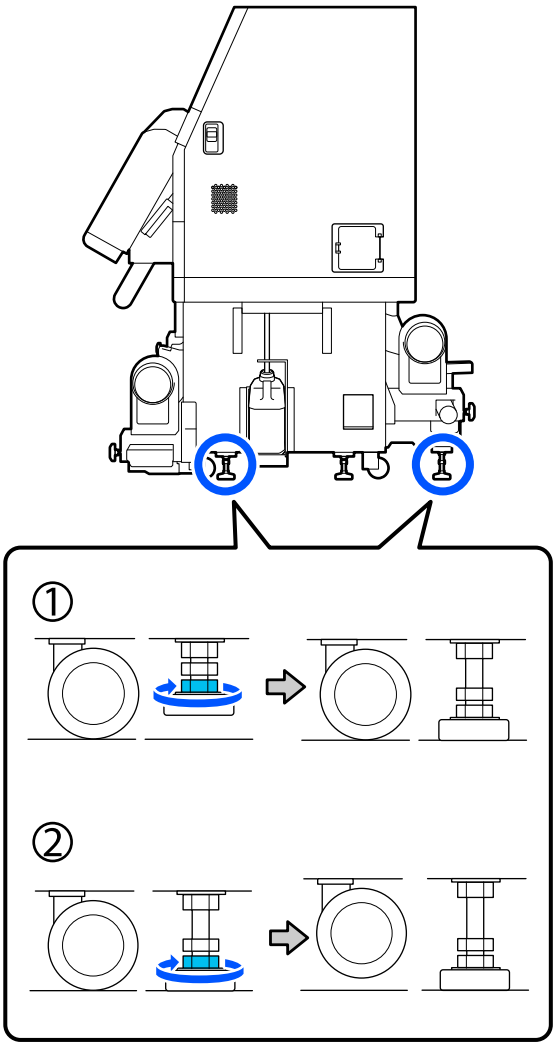
13 Place the metal plates under the printer's 6 adjusters.



14 On the right side, use the front and back adjusters on the printer to suspend the casters.

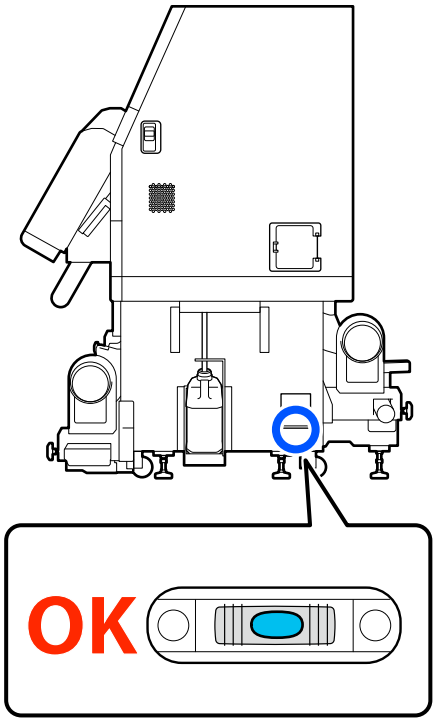
(1) Turn the bottom nut clockwise until the adjuster touches the floor.

(2) Continue to turn it clockwise until the caster is suspended.



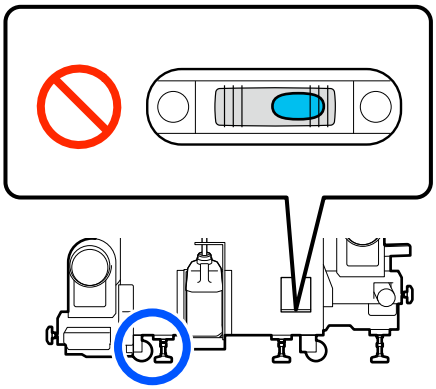
15 Adjust the adjusters so the printer is level.

Turn the bottom nut of the adjuster until the air bubble in the level gauge is centered.



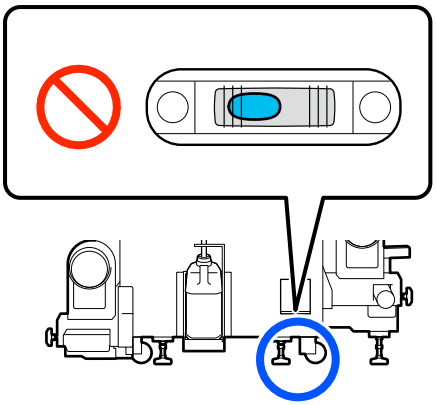

**When the air bubble is toward the back side**

Turn the nut on the front adjuster clockwise.



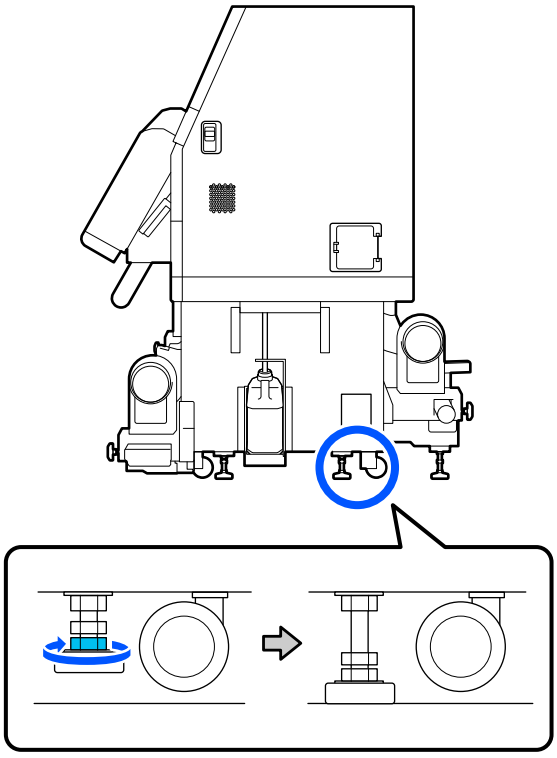
**When the air bubble is toward the front side**

Turn the nut on the back adjuster clockwise.



16 On the right side, lower the center adjuster until it touches the floor.

Turn the bottom nut clockwise until the adjuster touches the floor.

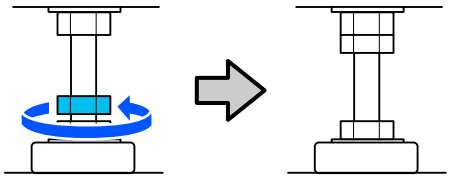


17 Repeat Step 14 to suspend the left side casters.

18 Repeat Step 16 to suspend the center adjuster on the left side.

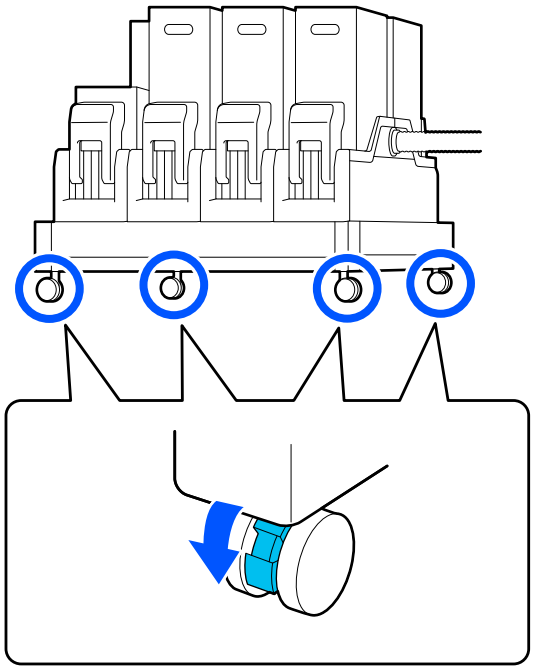
19 On all six adjusters, turn the top nut counter-clockwise until it reaches the top part and stops.

After it reaches the top part, tighten it securely to fix it.



20 Lock the casters on the ink supply unit.

Lock all the casters, four on the SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series and six on the SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series.



21 If you are using a large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, install the Media Feeding Unit.

"Installing the Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type only)" on page 251

22 Do parallel adjustments to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

"Parallel Adjustments for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit" on page 255

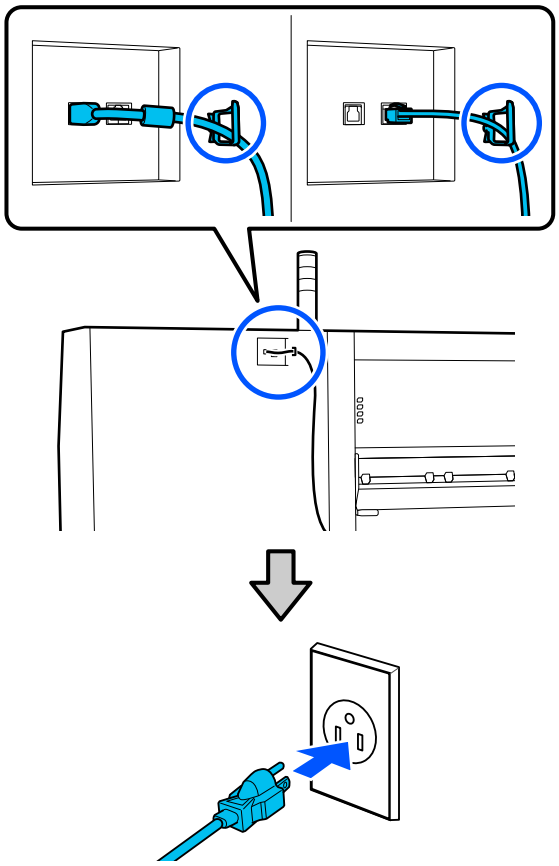
23 If you are using a large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, perform parallel adjustment for the Media Feeding Unit.

"Parallel Adjustments for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit" on page 255

24 Connect all necessary wires, plug the power plug into an outlet with a grounding (earth) connector, and then turn on the power.

Put the cables that went through clamps back through the clamps.

Be sure to put the USB cable and LAN cable through their clamps.



**Important:**

*The shape of the plug varies with the region or country of sale. Use the supplied power cable only.*

25 Perform a nozzle check to check for clogged nozzles.

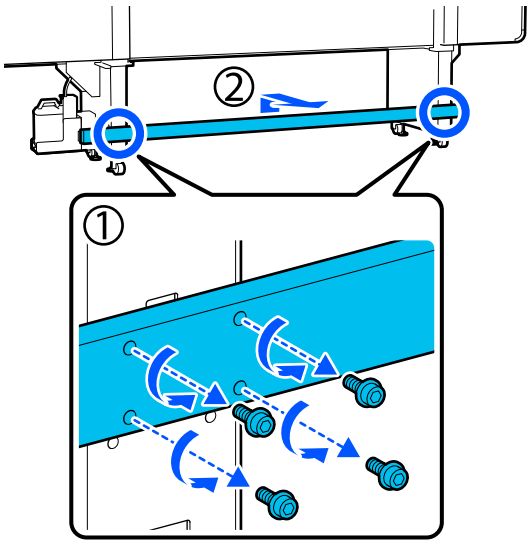
"Printing nozzle check patterns" on page 186

26 Perform **Print Adjustments** in the setup menu, and check the print quality.

"Print Adjustments" on page 140

## Installing the Media Feeding Unit (Large Capacity Type only)

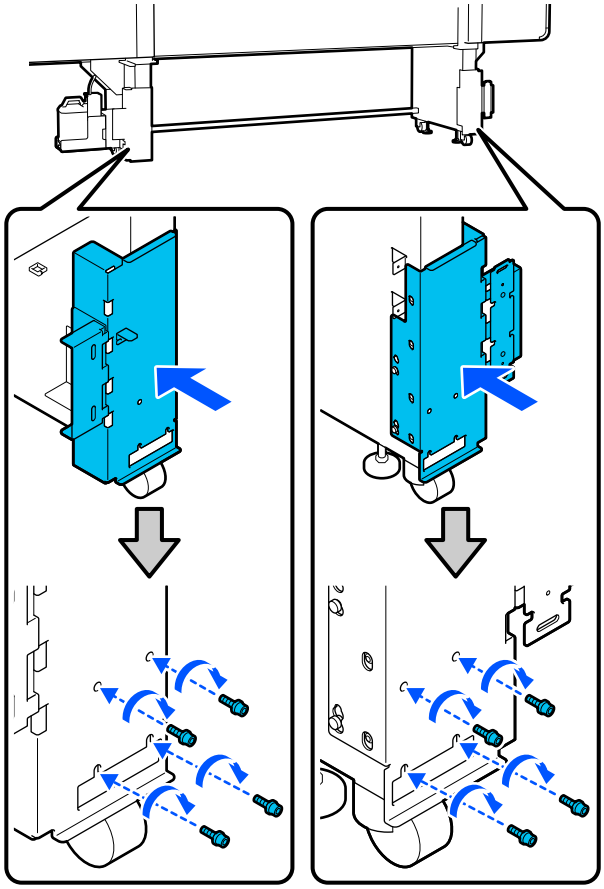
1 Remove the reinforcement components on the printer's legs.




Put the removed reinforcement component where it will not interfere while you are working.

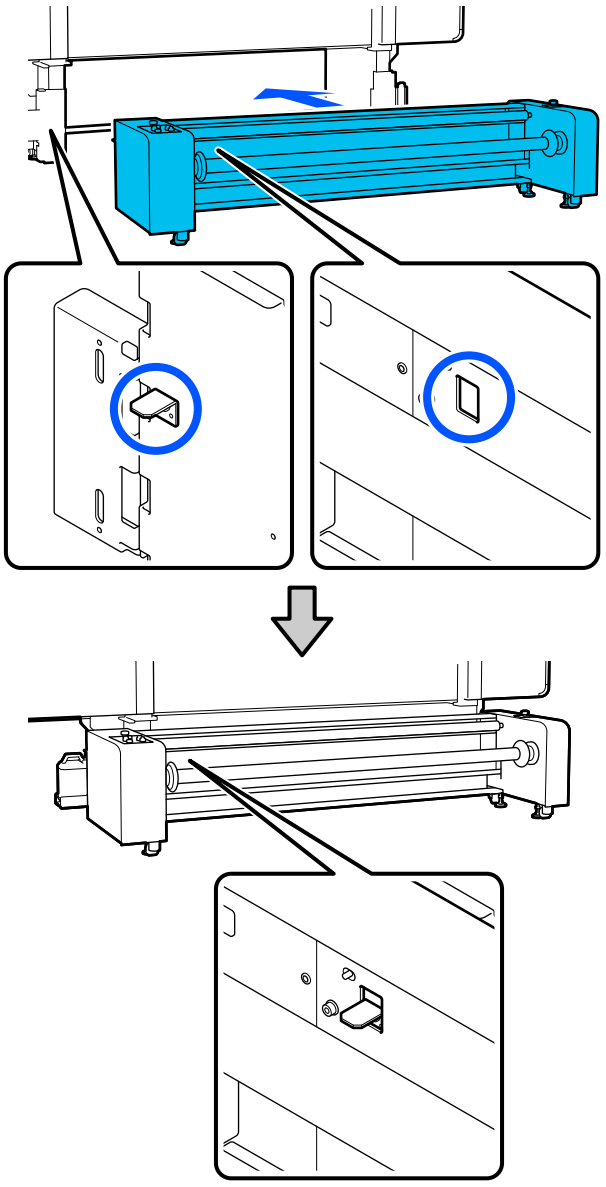
Keep the screws in a safe place; do not throw them out.

2 Install the bracket components to the Media Feeding Unit.



3 Move the Media Feeding Unit to the specified position at the rear of the printer.

Press the Media Feeding Unit against the bracket components so that the protrusions on the bracket components go into the holes on the back of the Media Feeding Unit.

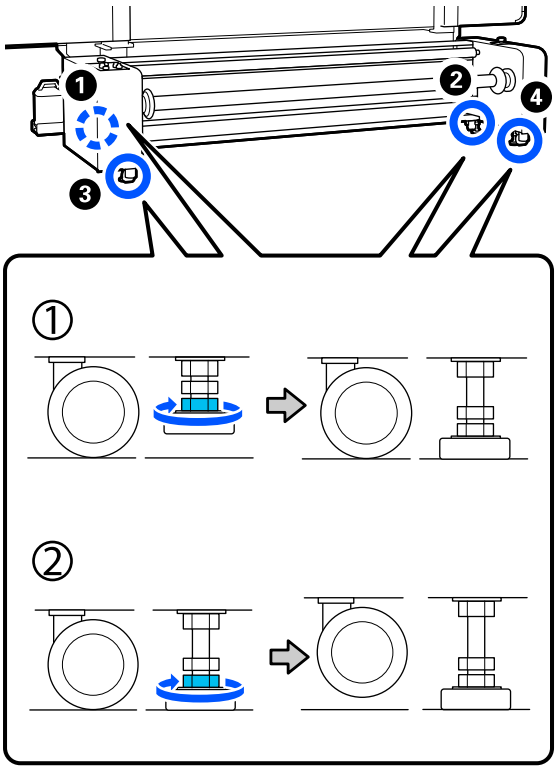


4 Use the four adjusters to suspend the casters.

Follow the steps below to operate the adjusters to suspend the casters.

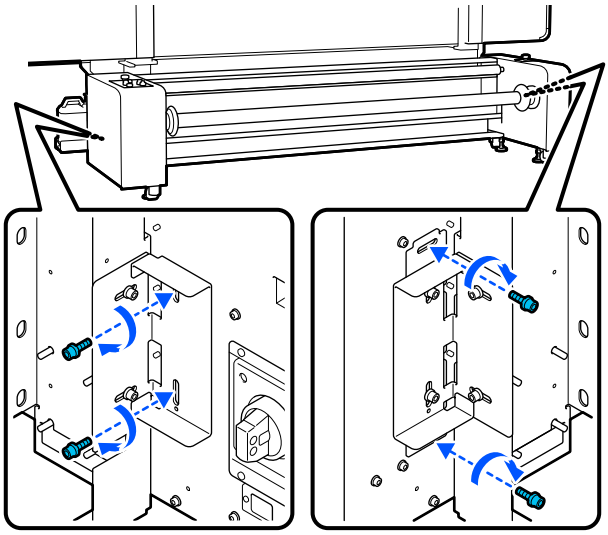
(1) Turn the bottom nut clockwise until the adjuster touches the floor.

(2) Continue to turn it clockwise until the caster is suspended. When doing this, turn the nuts for each of the four adjusters 1/4 turn each, in the order of the numbers, until the casters are suspended.

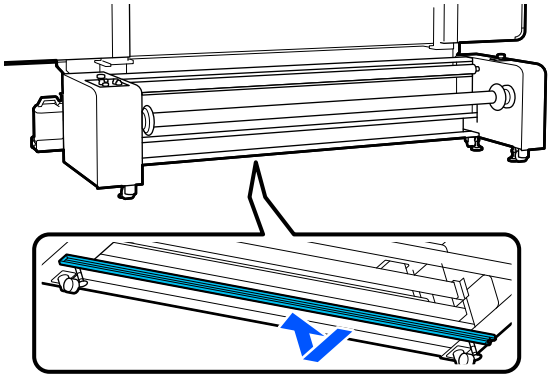



5 Temporarily fasten the screws on the left and right sides on the rear of the Media Feeding Unit.

Leave them temporarily fastened until you have finished the parallel adjustments.



6 Install the reinforcement component to the bottom of the Media Feeding Unit.



## Transport

Before transporting the printer, contact your dealer or Epson Support.

Epson Support

# Using Pressure Roller Spacers

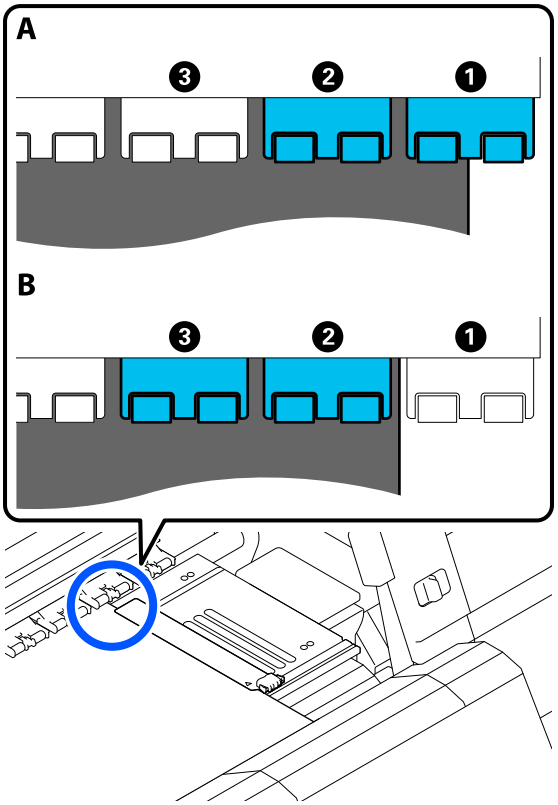
If wrinkles occur near the end of the media, using spacers so the pressure roller does not press on the end of the media may improve the wrinkles. Use the following procedure to install the spacers to the pressure rollers.

## How to install spacers

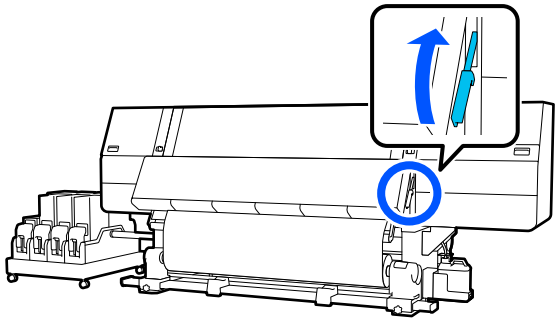
1 Confirm on which pressure rollers to install the spacers.

Spacers are installed in a total of 4 positions, 2 each on the left and right pressure rollers that press on the ends of the media. Look at the left and right ends of the media, to confirm the pressure rollers that are pressing on the media.

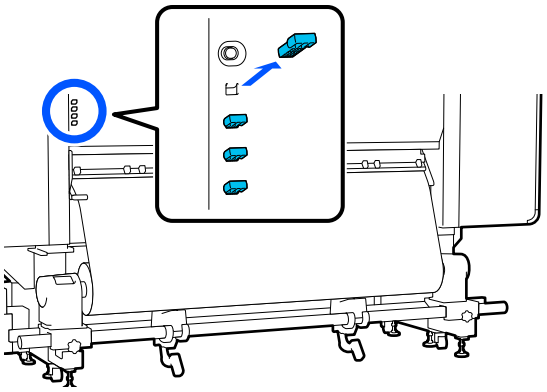
The illustration shows an example of pressure rollers pressing on the right end of the media. If the edge of the media is in the A position, install the spacers on the ❶ and ❷ pressure rollers. If the edge of the media is in the B position, install the spacers on the ❷ and ❸ pressure rollers.




2 Raise the media loading lever.

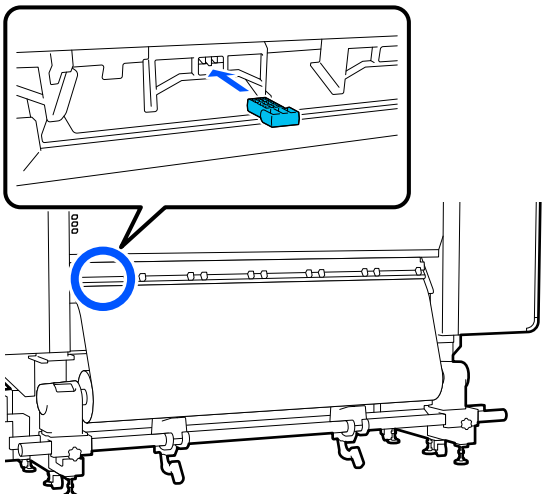


3 Move to the back side and remove the spacers from where they are stored.



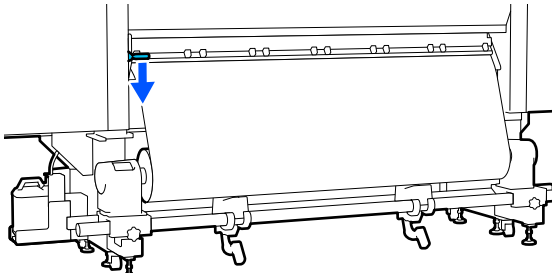
4 Insert the spacers into the holes on the back side of the rollers that you confirmed in Step 1.

Insert the spacers until they are deep inside a total of 4 pressure rollers, 2 each on the left and the right. If they are only inserted shallowly, they may come out while the printer is operating.



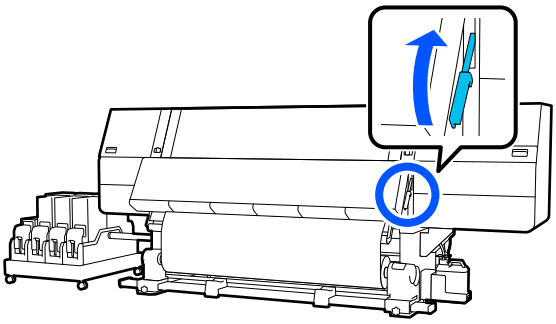
5 Lower the media loading lever.

The pressure rollers on which the spacers are installed are immobilized, so they do not move even if the lever is lowered.

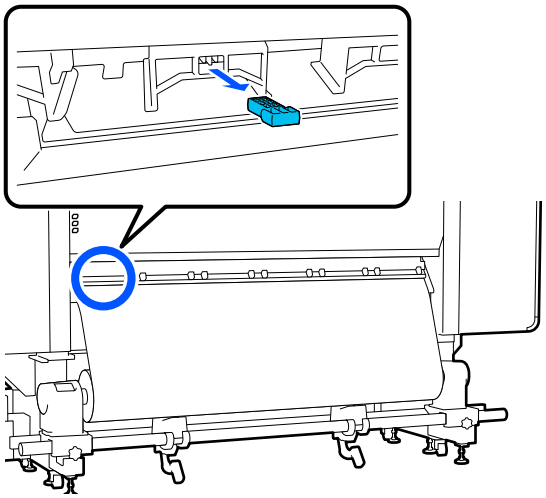


## How to remove spacers

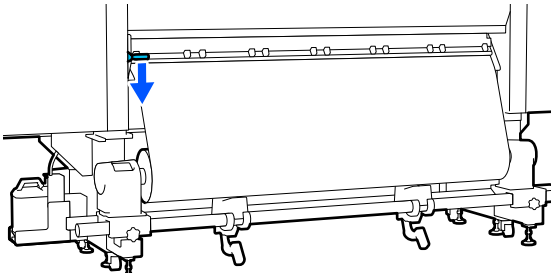
1 Raise the media loading lever.



2 Move to the back side and remove the 4 spacers and return them to where they are stored.



3 Lower the media loading lever.



# Parallel Adjustments for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit

This section explains how to make parallel adjustments for standard roll/reel models and large capacity roll models.

For parallel adjustments for large capacity reel models, contact your dealer or Epson Support.

Epson Support

In the following situations, do parallel adjustments to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit. Parallel adjustments for the Media Feeding Unit are only performed for the large capacity type.

- ❏ When there are problems with take-up, such as it creating large misalignments with the roll
- ❏ The printer has been moved

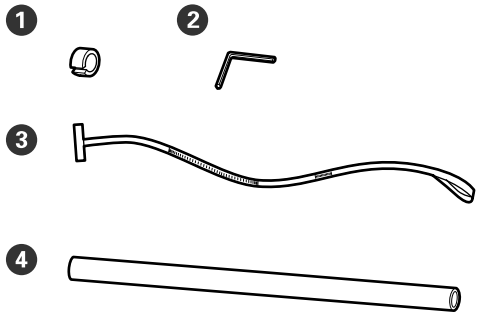
Have two people do parallel adjustment work because there is work to be done to the front and back sides of the printer at the same time.

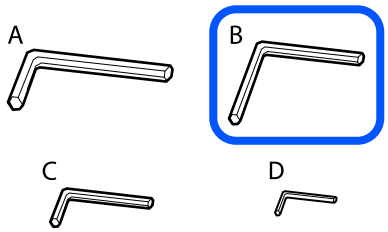
> ***Caution:***
> *Be sure to turn off the power before making parallel adjustments. Not turning off the power could result in an unexpected operation that causes an injury.*

## Preparing for parallel adjustments

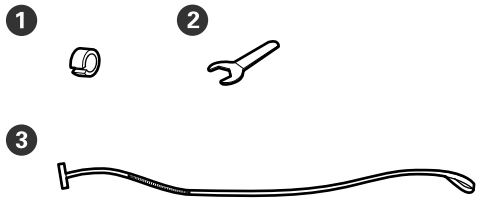
### Parallel Adjustments for the Auto Take-up Reel Unit

Perform parallel adjustment using the provided shorter roll core and adjustment tools. Get the following items ready before beginning adjustment.



| | |
|---|---|
| ❶ | Weight |
| ❷ | Hex wrench<br>Large capacity roll models come with three sizes of hex wrenches (A, B, and C from largest to smallest) or four sizes (A, B, C, and D) as shown in the illustration. Use hex wrench B for parallel adjustment.<br> |
| ❸ | Film |
| ❹ | Roll core (shorter roll) |

### Parallel adjustment for the Media Feeding Unit



| | |
|---|---|
| ❶ | Weight |
| ❷ | Spanner |
| ❸ | Film (long one) |

# How to adjust

Do adjustment work in the following order.

**1. Checking the Parallelism**

Attach the adjustment tool to confirm there is no misalignment in the parallelism of the Auto Take-up Reel Unit and the Media Feeding Unit. If there is no misalignment, then adjustment is not necessary.

↓

**2. Adjustments**

Visually confirm as you do adjustments until any misalignment in the parallelism is eliminated.

↓

**3. Completing Adjustments**

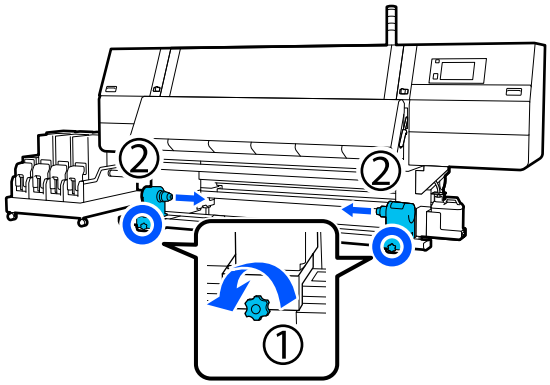
Remove the adjustment tool, and set up the printer so you can use it again.

## Checking the Parallelism

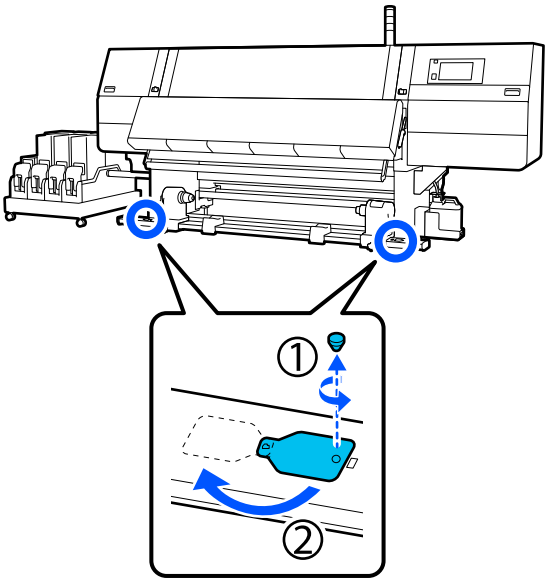
### *Auto Take-up Reel Unit*

1 Confirm that the printer is off.

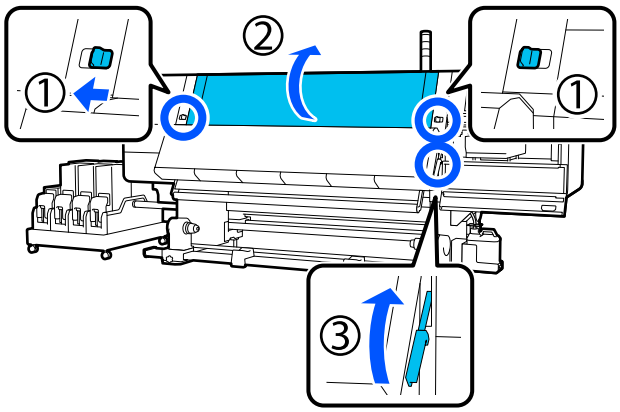
2 Loosen both the left and right media holder locking screws and move the media holders inward.



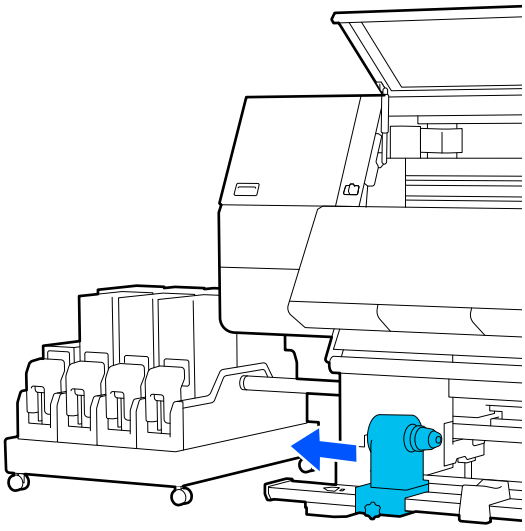

3 Remove the screws in the illustration below, and then turn the cover to open it.




4 Open the front cover and raise the media loading lever.

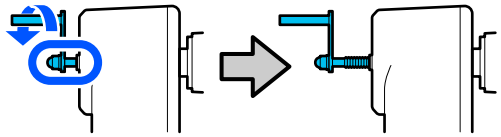



5 Move the left-side media holder to the outer side.

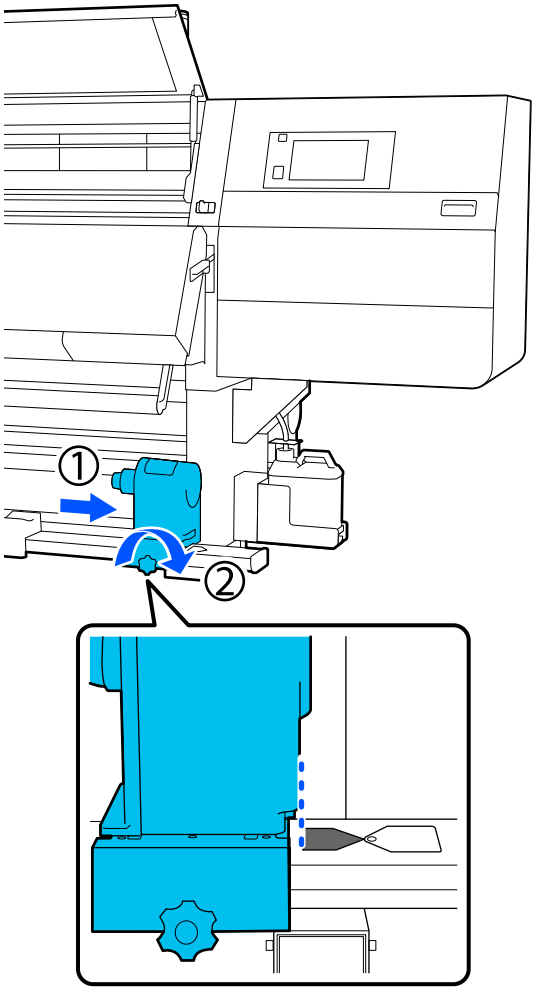


**Important:**

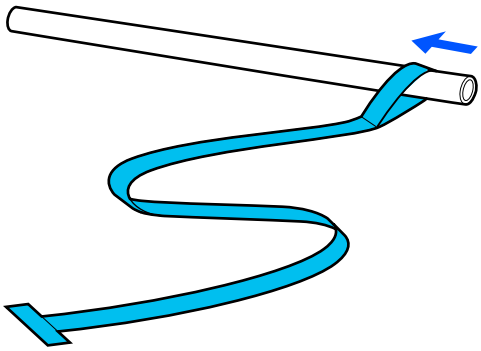
*If the left-side media holder handle's shaft is not visible, rotate the handle as shown in the illustration until it stops. The roll core cannot be properly loaded if the handle's shaft is not visible.*



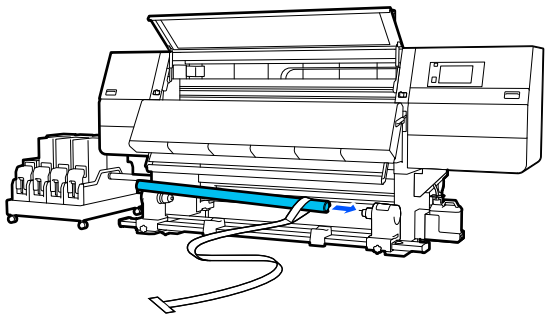
6 Align the right-side media holder with the position of the dotted line, and then tighten the locking screw.



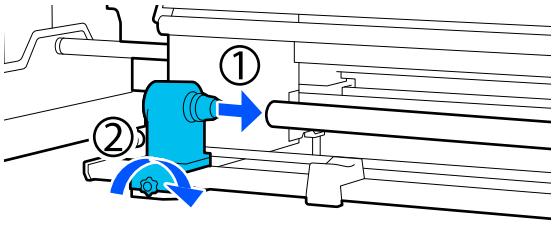

7 Pass film through the roll core.



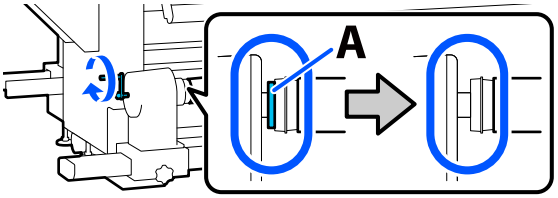
8 Insert the roll core into the right-side media holder.



9 Push the left-side media holder inwards, and then tighten the locking screw.

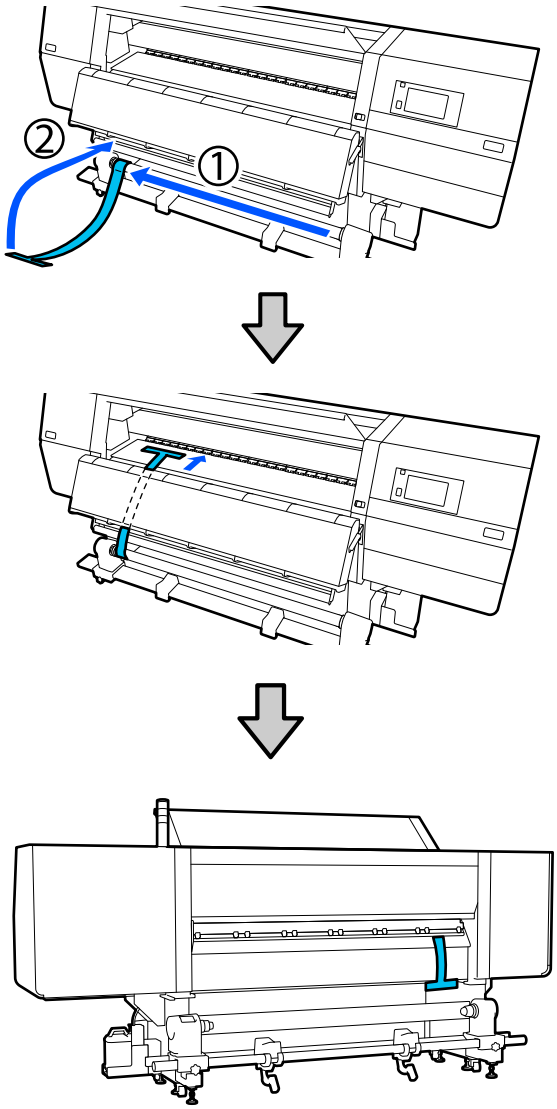



10 Rotate the handle until part A in the illustration below is fully inserted.

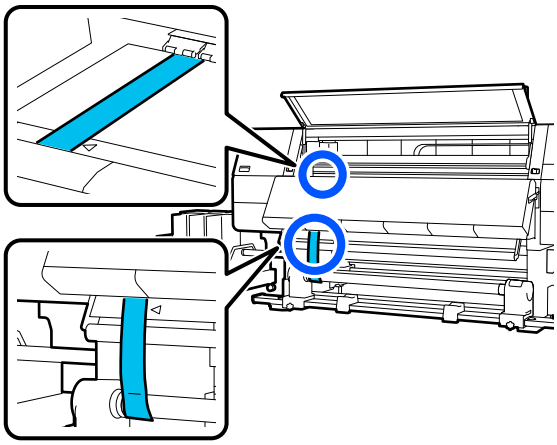


11 Move the film to the left side, insert its leading edge into the printer, and pass it through to the back side.

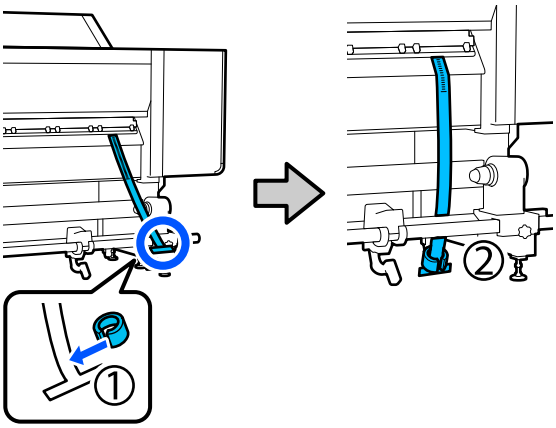
Insert it into the bottom of the dryer and then out the top part, over the platen and through to the back.



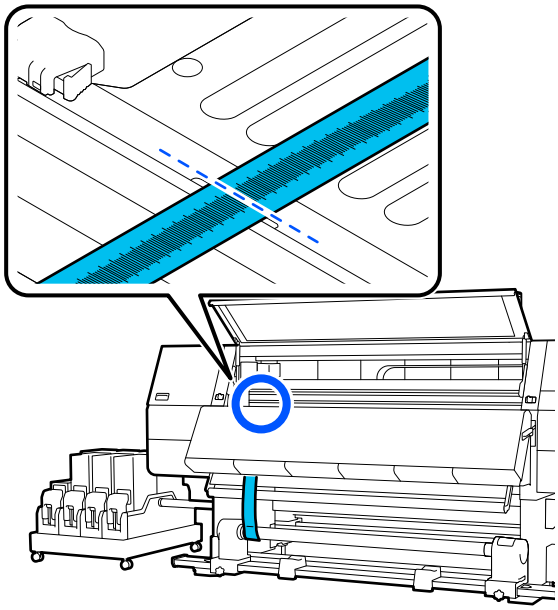

12 Align the film with the tips of the triangles on the top and bottom of the left side of the dryer.



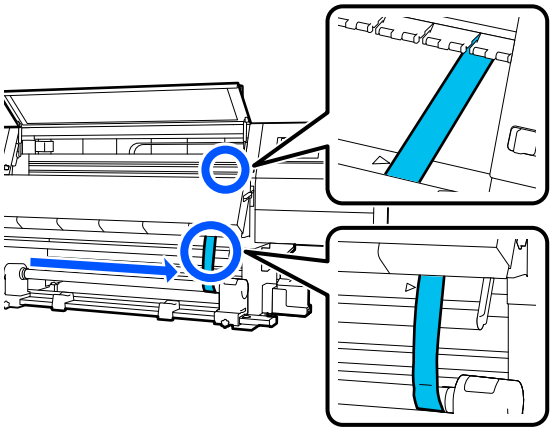
13 Attach the weight to the leading edge of the film at the back of the printer, letting it hang in the position shown in the following illustration.



14 After the film stops swinging, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.



15 Lift the film at the front and back of the printer and move it so that it aligns with the tips of the triangles on the right side.

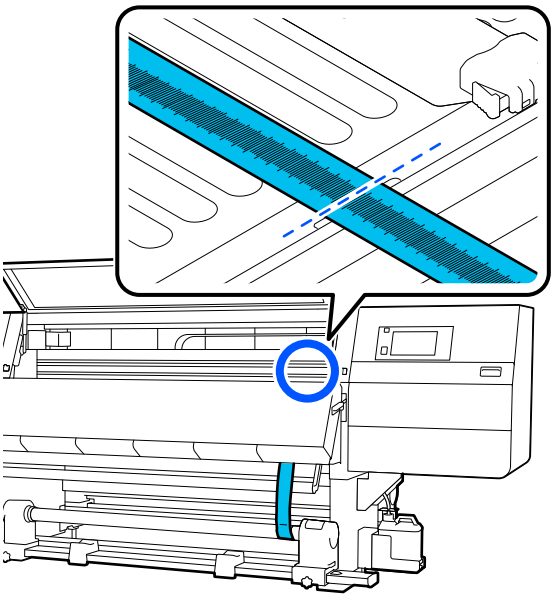


16 After the film stops swinging, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.

If the difference between the values of both sides is more than 0.5 mm (0.01 in.), proceed to the adjustments in the next section.

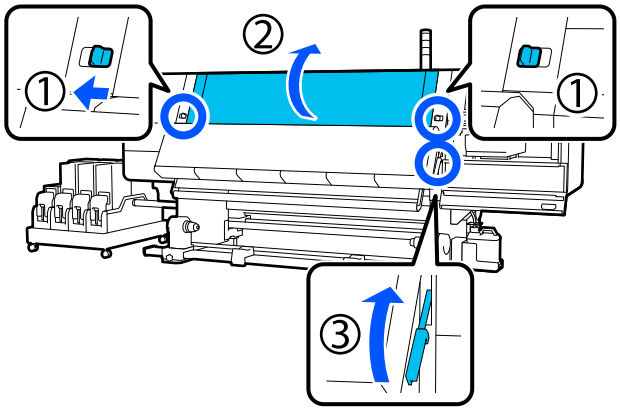
If the difference is under 0.5 mm (0.01 in.), no adjustments are necessary. Refer to the following to remove the film.

"Completing Adjustments" on page 266

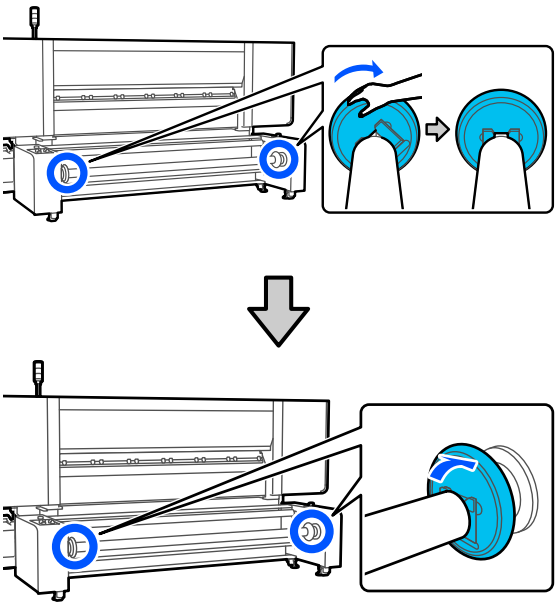


### *Media Feeding Unit*

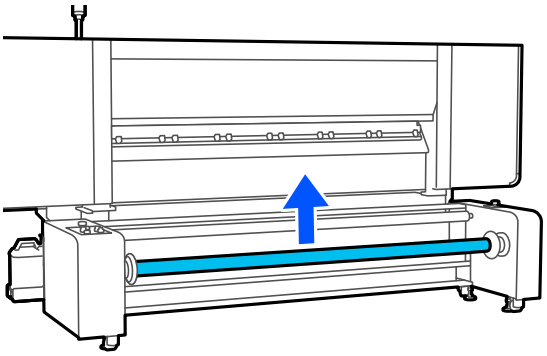
1 Open the front cover and raise the media loading lever.



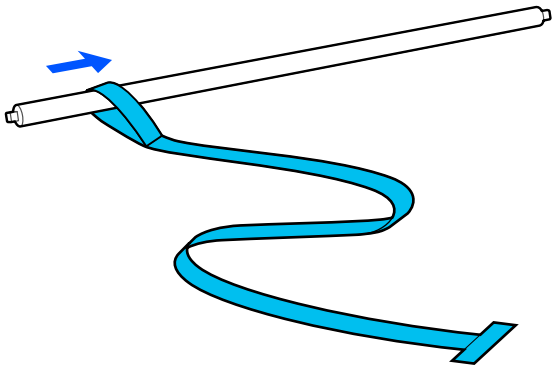
2 Move to the back, hold the handle and rotate the spindle so that it looks as shown in the illustration, and then lower the handles on both sides outward.



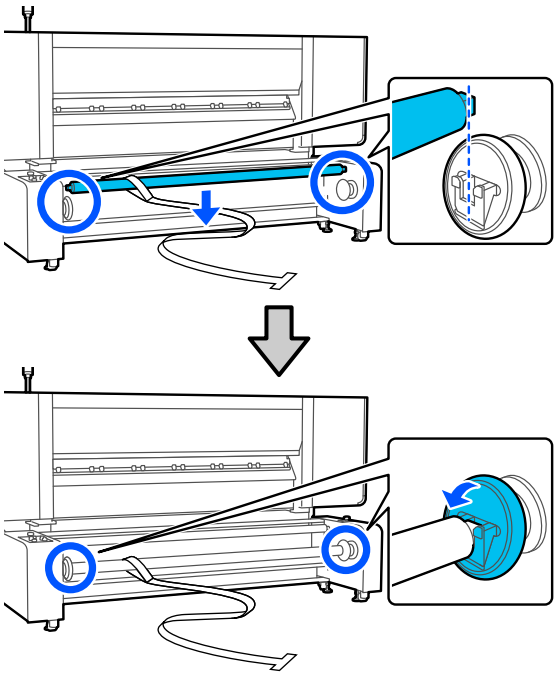
3 Remove the spindle.



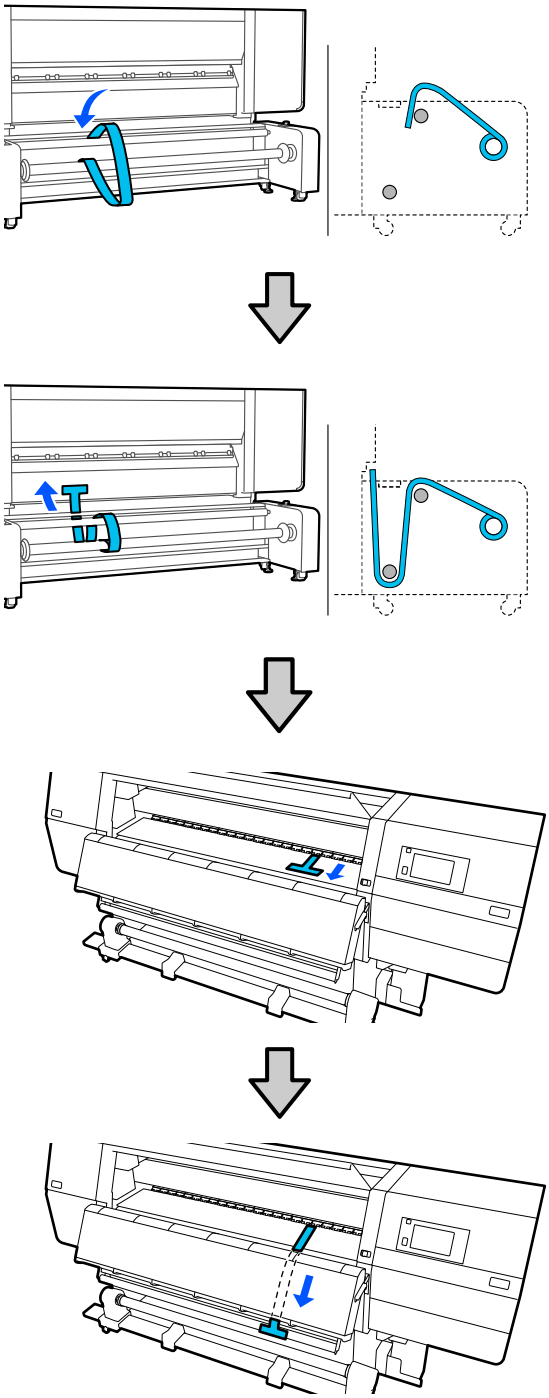
4 Put the spindle through the film.



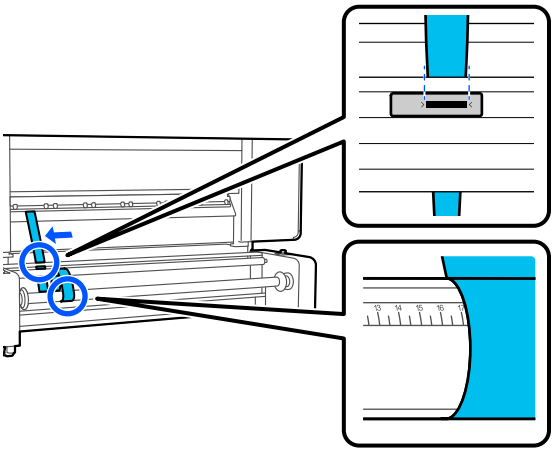
5 Put the spindle in the socket, then raise the handles on both sides.



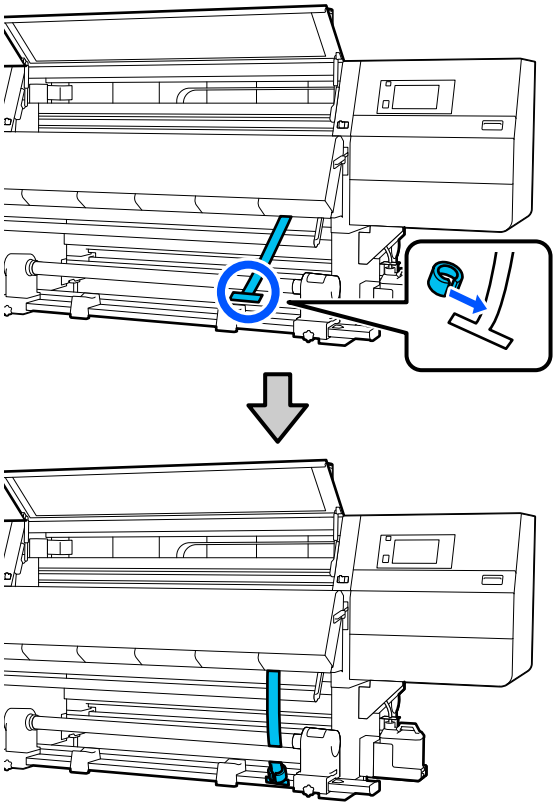
6 Insert the tip of the film into the printer, and pass it through to the front.



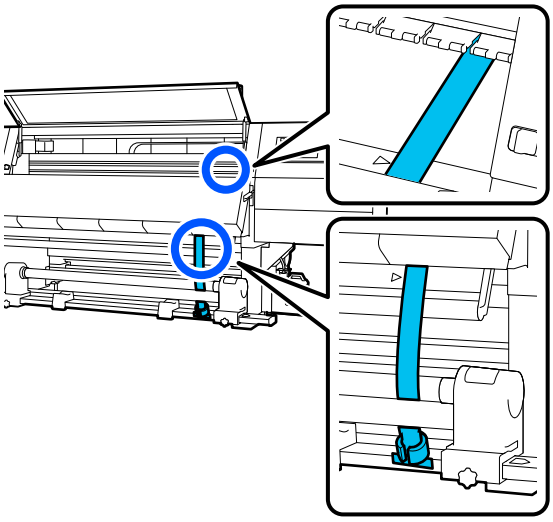
7 Align the film with the 17 cm point on the spindle's scale (on the side with the printer's control panel) and the position on the label on the Media Feeding Unit.



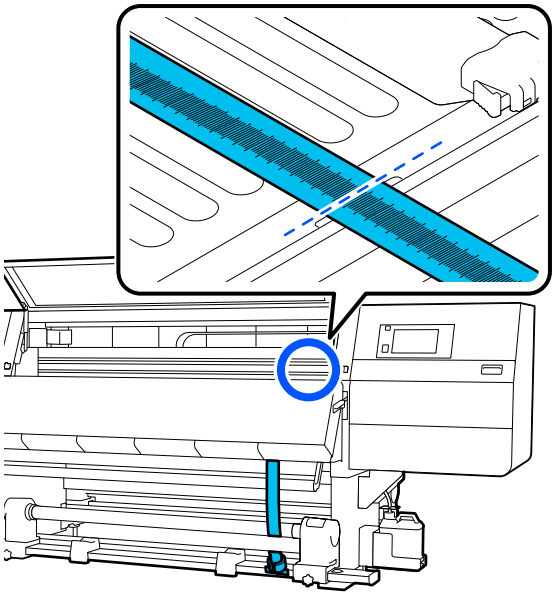
8 Attach the weight to the leading edge of the film at the front of the printer, letting it hang in the position shown in the following illustration.



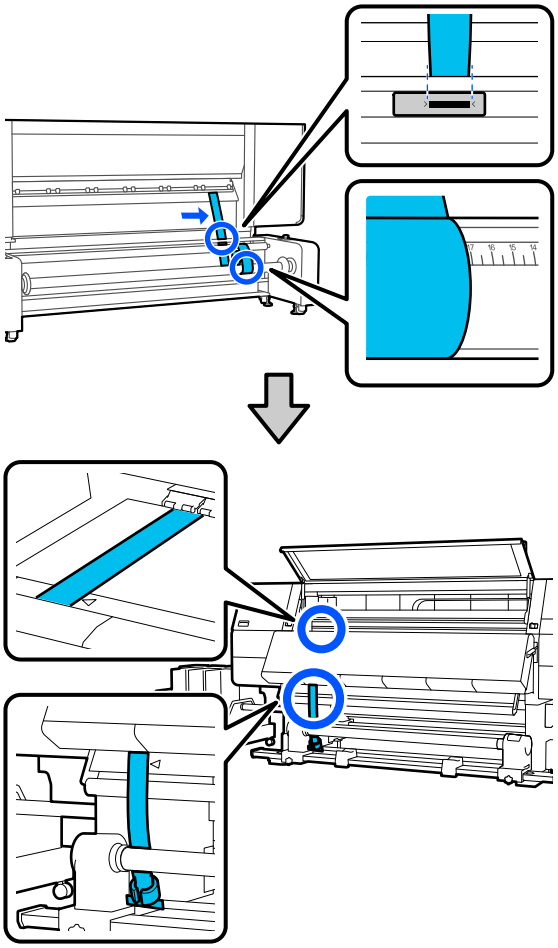
9 Align the film with the tips of the triangles on the top and bottom of the right side of the dryer.



10 After the film stops swinging, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.



11 Lift the film at the front and back of the printer and move it to the opposite side and align the film position in the same as in steps 7 to 9.

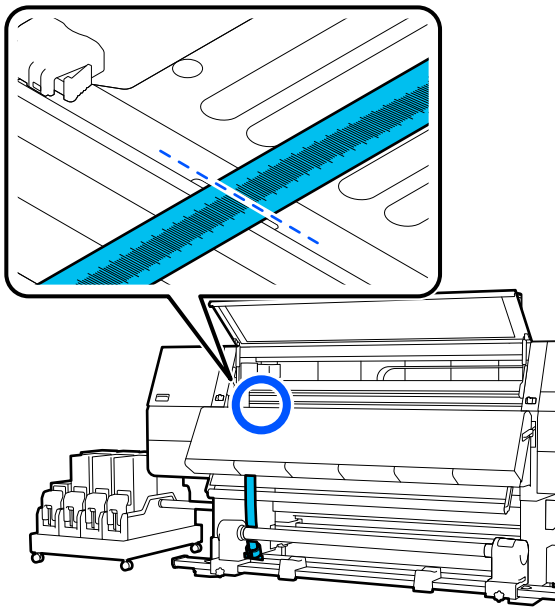


12 After the film stops swinging, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.

If the difference between the values of both sides is more than 2 mm (0.07 in.), proceed to the adjustments in the next section.

If the difference is under 2 mm (0.07 in.), no adjustments are necessary. Refer to the following to remove the film.

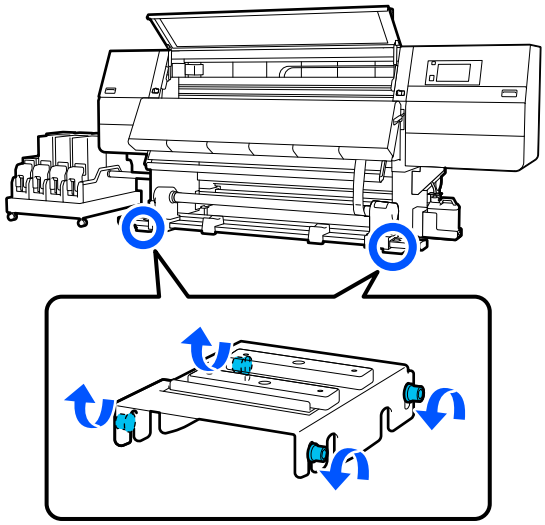
“Completing Adjustments” on page 266



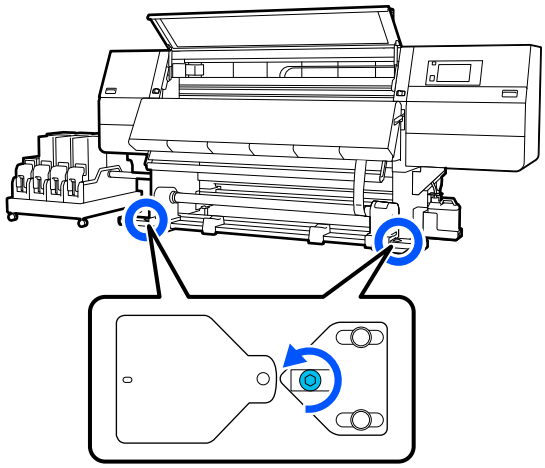
## Adjustments

### *Auto Take-up Reel Unit*

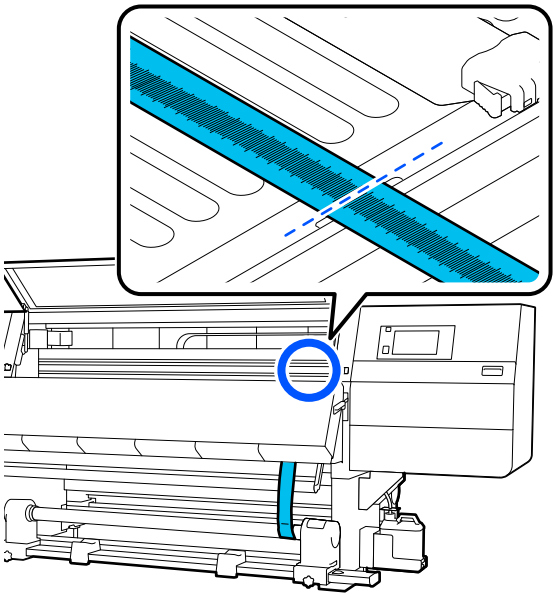
1 Loosen all of the metal fixing screws in the illustration below.



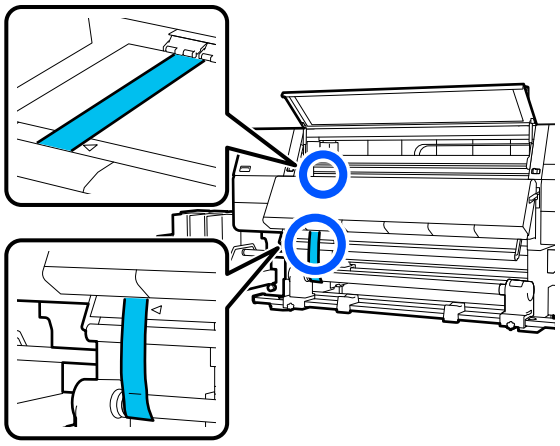
2 Completely loosen the adjustment screws on both sides in the illustration below.



3 Confirm that the film is aligned with the tips of the triangles on the right side, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.



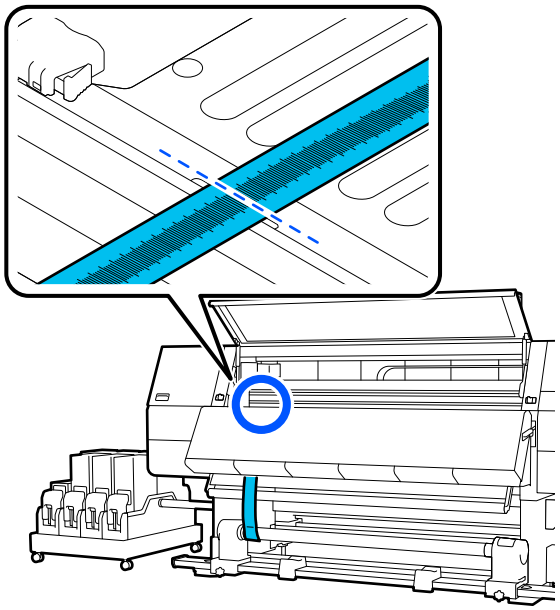
4 Move the film to align with the tips of the triangles on the left side.



5 After the film stops swinging, read the value on the scale at the position on the platen shown in the illustration, and record that value.

If the difference between the values on the left and the right is more than 0.5 mm (0.01 in.), proceed to Step 6 to adjust the screw with the higher value to reduce the difference.

If the difference is under 0.5 mm (0.01 in.), proceed to Step 7.



6 Adjust it so the difference between the left and right is less than 0.5 mm (0.01 in.).

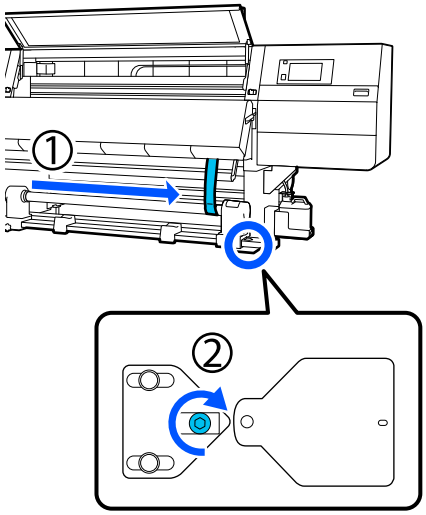
(1) Align the film with the tips of the triangles on the side you are adjusting.

(2) While checking the scale, turn the adjustment screw clockwise until the difference in the values for both sides is less than 0.5 mm (0.01 in.).

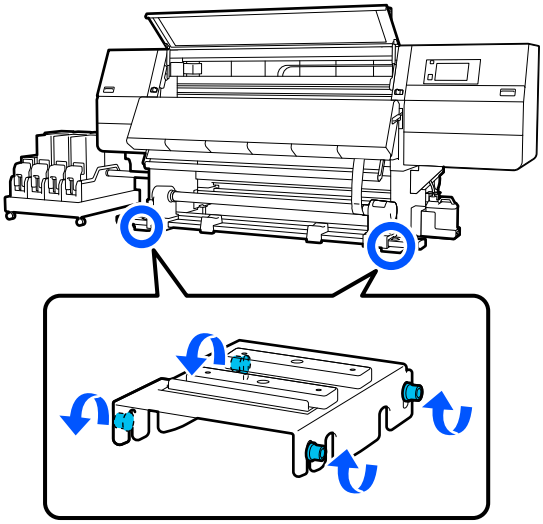
The scale moves from the place that has tension when the screw is turned.

Fully rotating the screw once makes the value about 0.6 mm (0.23 in.) smaller.

**Example When the Value of the Right Side is High**



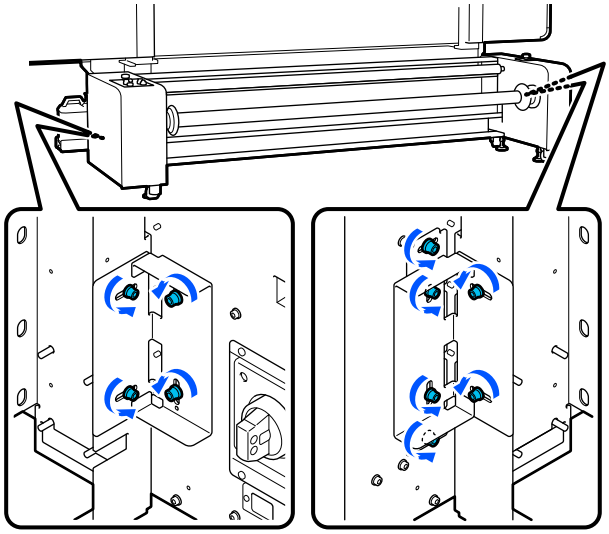

7 Securely tighten all the screws in the following illustration.



Next, continue to the next section, Completing Adjustments.

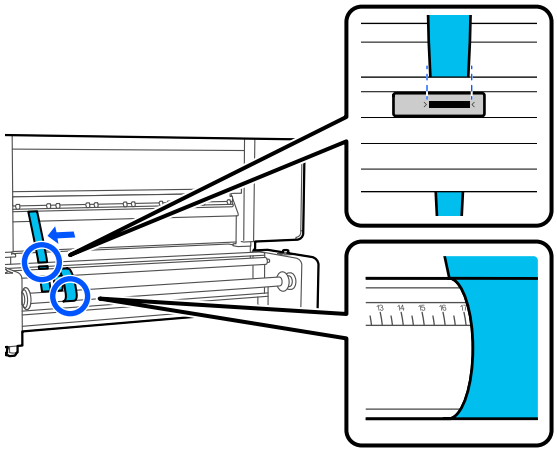
### *Media Feeding Unit*

1 Loosen all the screws on the left and right sides, shown in the illustration, on the rear of the Media Feeding Unit.



2 Move the film toward the larger value of the results of checking the parallelism and align it with the specified position.

The example in this section assumes a larger value on the side toward the control panel.

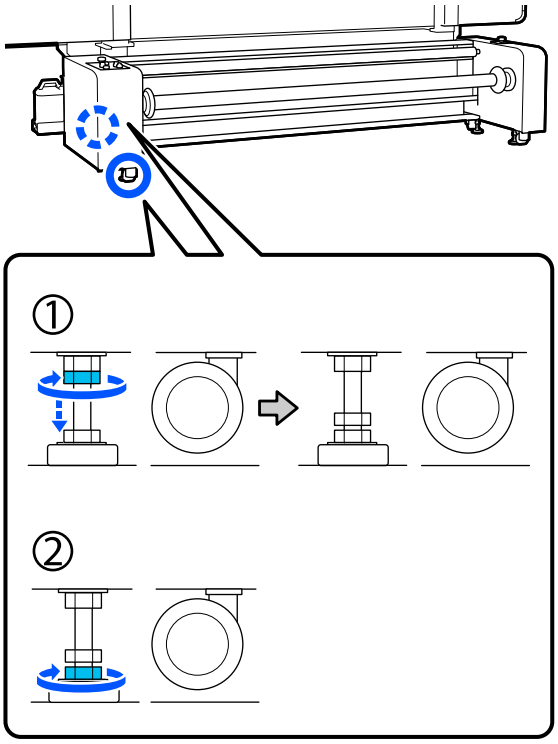


3 Adjust it so the difference between the left and right is less than 2 mm (0.07 in.).

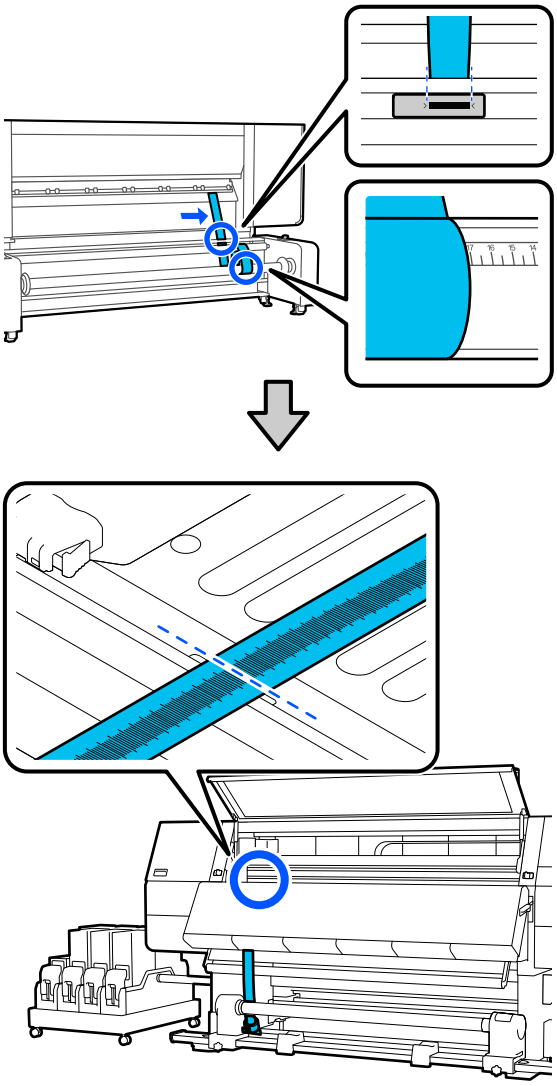
Follow the steps below to operate and adjust the adjusters.

(1) Turn the top nut clockwise to move it downward.

(2) While checking the scale, turn the bottom nut clockwise until the difference in the values for both sides is less than 2 mm (0.07 in.). When doing this, turn both nuts of the two adjusters by the same amount while making the adjustment.



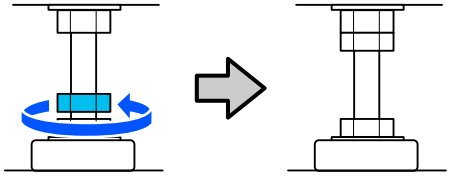
4 After adjustment, move the film to the opposite side and read the scale on the film again to confirm that the difference between the left and right values is less than 2 mm (0.07 in.).



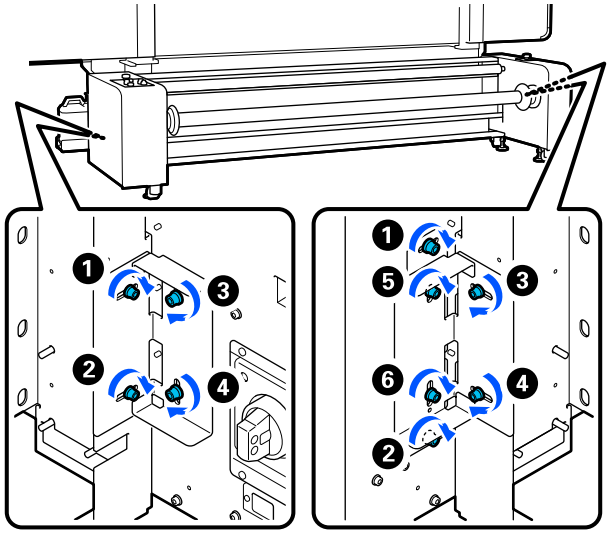
If the difference in the values is larger than 2 mm (0.07 in.), then repeat steps 2 to 4 until the value drops below 2 mm (0.07 in.).

If the difference is under 2 mm (0.07 in.), proceed to the next step.

5 On all the adjusters operated, turn the top nut counter-clockwise until it reaches the top part and stops.



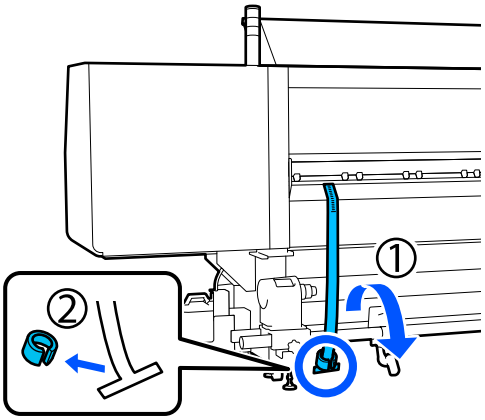
6 Securely tighten the screws on the left and right sides, in the order of the numbers in the illustration, on the rear of the Media Feeding Unit.



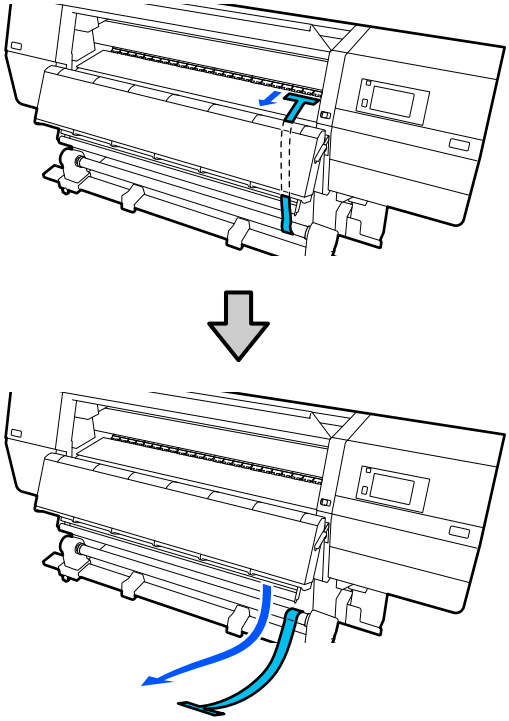

## Completing Adjustments

### *Auto Take-up Reel Unit*

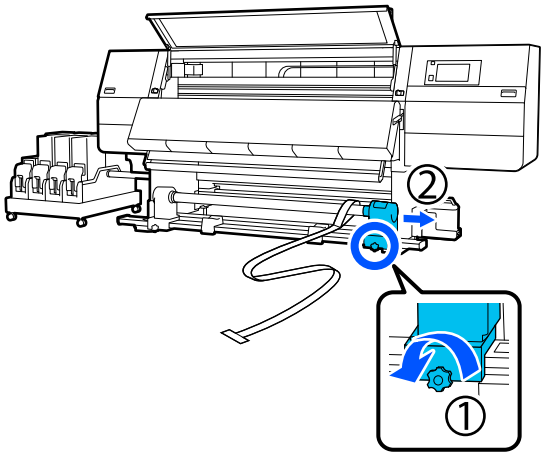
1 Remove the weight attached to the film at the back of the printer.



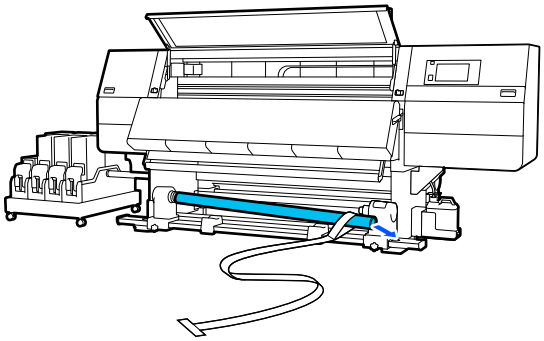
2 Pull film out from the front of the printer.



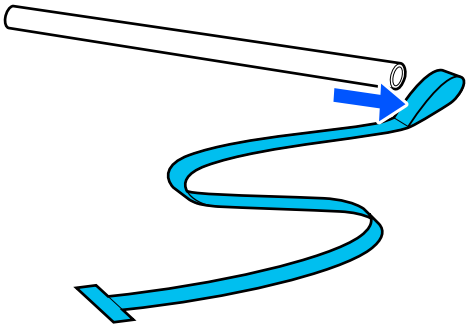
3 Loosen the right media holder fixing screw and remove the media holder.




4 Remove the roll core.

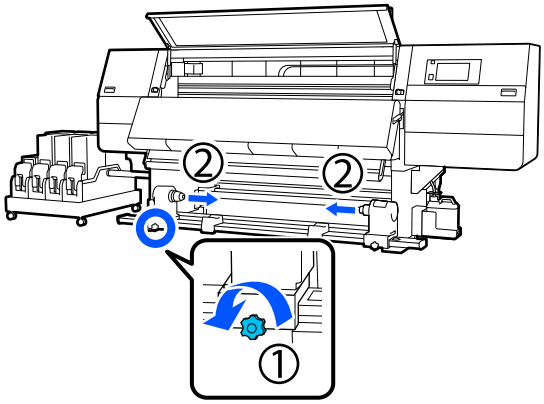


5 Remove film from the roll core.

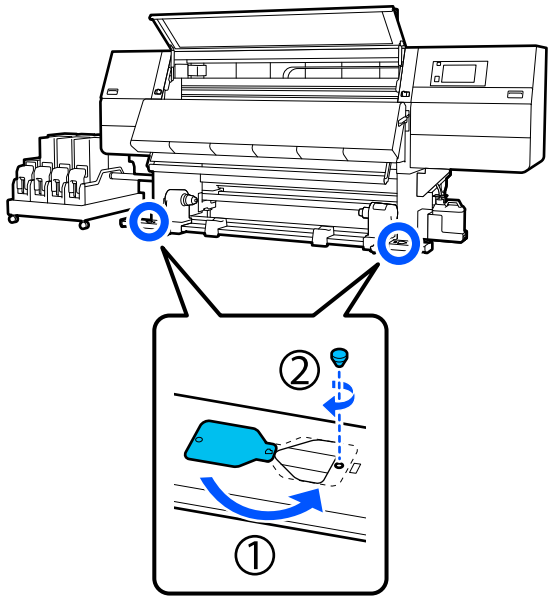


***Note:***
*After removing the film, be careful not to crease it, and store it together with the weight. If you plan on using the film again, remove dust, etc., and smooth it out straight before use.*

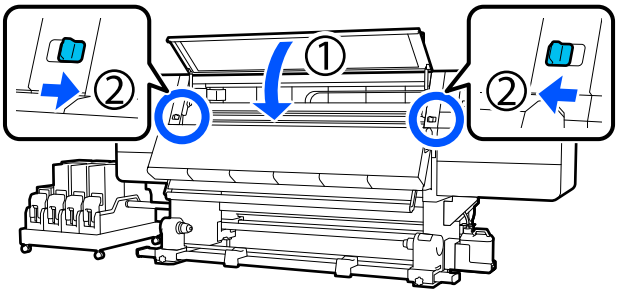
6 Loosen the locking screw on the left media holder locking screw and move the left and right media holders inward.



7 Turn the cover in the illustration below to close it, and then tighten the screw.

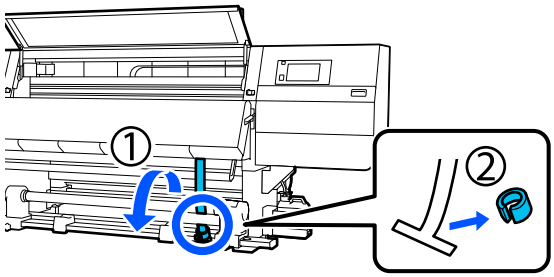



8 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.

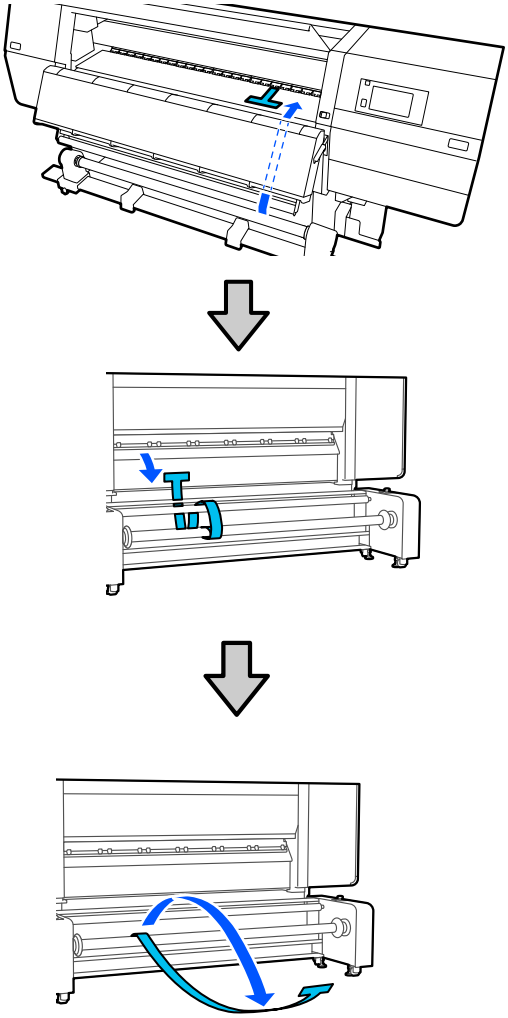



### *Media Feeding Unit*

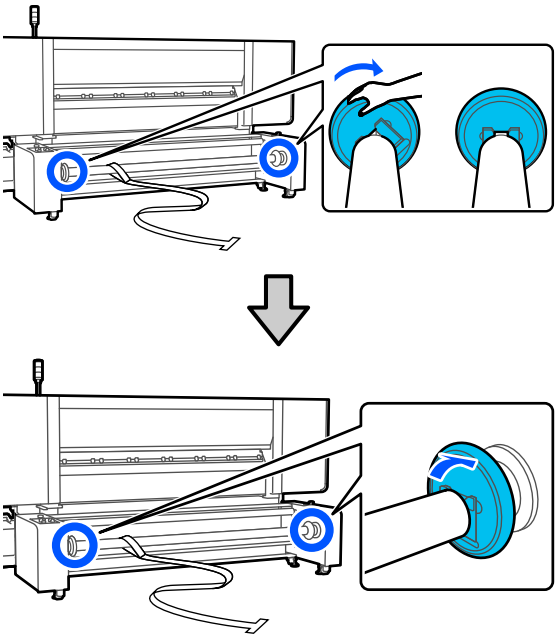
1 Remove the weight attached to the film at the front of the printer.



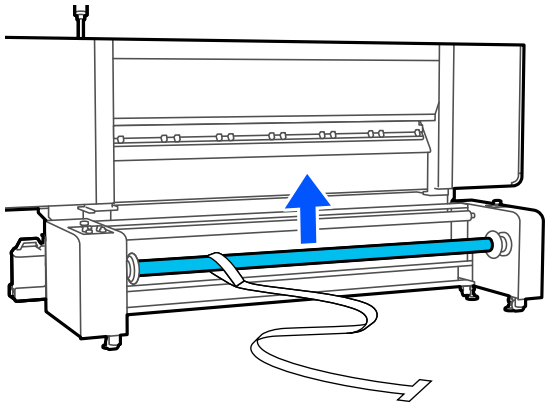

2 Pull the film out from the back of the printer.



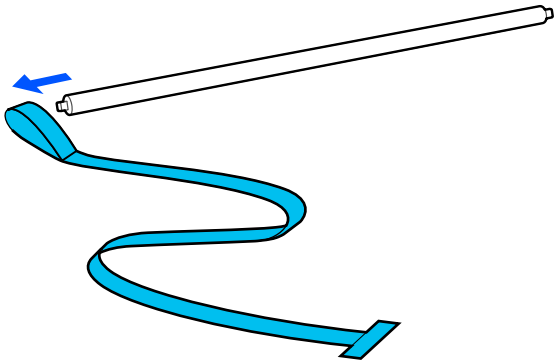
3 Hold the handle and rotate the spindle so that it looks as shown in the illustration, and then lower the handles on both sides outward.



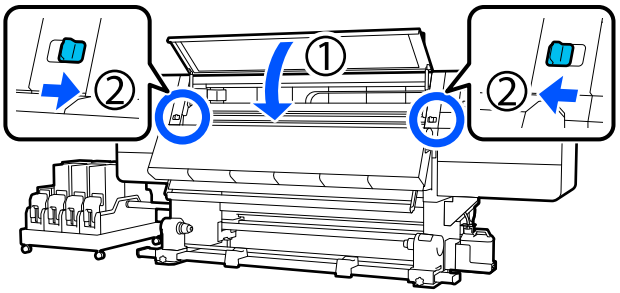
4 Remove the spindle.



5 Remove the film from the spindle.



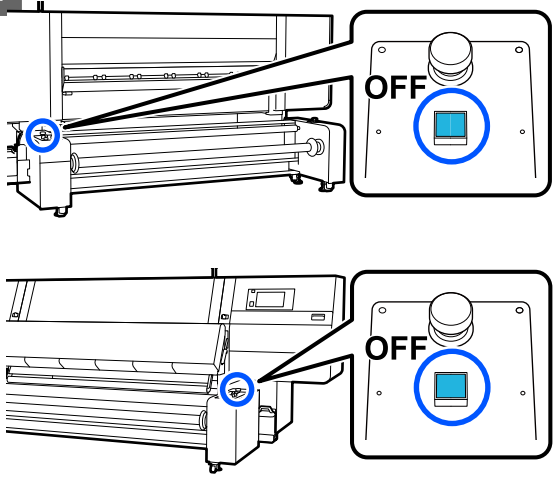
6 Close the front cover, and then move the left and right lock levers inward.



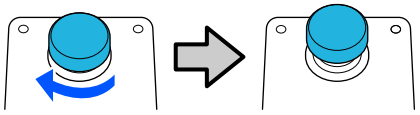

# Recovering from an Emergency Stop

If the printer has been stopped using the emergency stop button on a large capacity roll model or large capacity reel model, follow the steps below to restart printer operations.

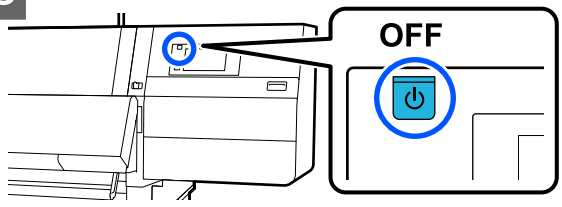
1 Turn off the unit that was stopped.



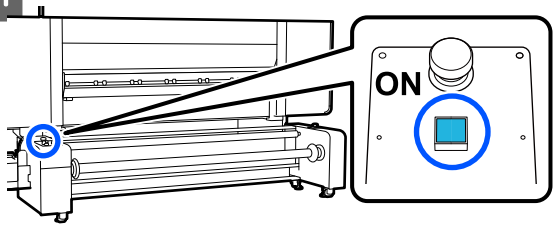

2 Rotate the emergency stop button to the right to reset the button.

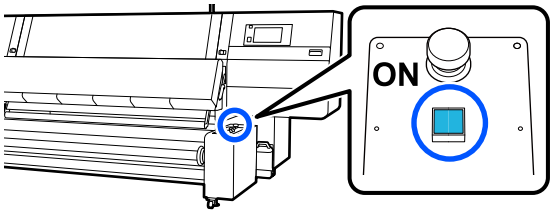


3 Turn off the power to the printer.

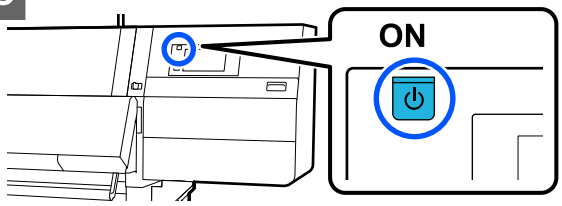


4 Turn on the power to the unit that was stopped.




5 Turn on the power to the printer.



# Media Settings List for Each Media Type

The following table shows the media settings registered when a Media Type is selected.

- The upper row of temperatures shows the settings when using a standard type Auto Take-up Reel Unit, and the lower row shows the settings when using a large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit. When using a large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit, check the temperature setting from the home screen after attaching the media to the take-up unit, and if it differs from the table, reset it to the value in the table.
- The switch setting values for the large capacity type Media Feeding Unit and the Auto Take-up Reel Unit are the recommended values. Set each unit's switches according to the media you are using.
- Setting items marked *1 are disabled when using a large capacity type Media Feeding Unit.
- Setting items marked *2 are disabled when using a large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit.

# SC-F11000H Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000H Series/ SC-F10000 Series

### Ultra-Thin

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x 1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 70 | 65 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 55 | 50 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 70 | 65 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 55 | 50 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 23 | 27 | 33 | 46 | 52 | 52 | 89 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv4 | Lv4 | Lv4 | Lv4 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | | | |

**Appendix**

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Lo | | | | | | | | | | |

## Appendix

### Thin

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 90 | 80 | 70 | 65 | 70 | 65 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 55 | 50 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 70 | 60 | 55 | 50 | 55 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 23 | 27 | 33 | 46 | 52 | 52 | 89 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv4 | Lv4 | Lv4 | Lv4 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | | | |

**Appendix**

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | | | |

### Med-Thick

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 105 | 105 | 100 | 85 | 100 | 90 | 85 | 75 | 70 | 70 | 55 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 95 | 90 | 85 | 70 | 85 | 75 | 70 | 65 | 55 | 55 | 50 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 23 | 27 | 33 | 46 | 52 | 52 | 89 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | | | |

**Appendix**

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Load switch | Hi | | | | | | | | | | |

## Thick

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 90 | 85 | 80 | 75 | 80 | 80 | 75 | 75 | 70 | 70 | 55 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 90 | 85 | 80 | 75 | 80 | 80 | 75 | 75 | 70 | 70 | 55 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 23 | 27 | 33 | 46 | 52 | 52 | 89 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv8 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 15 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | | | |

**Appendix**

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 300x600dpi | | | | 600x600dpi | | | | 600x1200dpi | | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.1 pass | 1.5 pass | 2.1 pass | 3.1 pass | 2.1 pass | 2.5 pass | 3.1 pass | 4.3 pass* | 5.0 pass | 5.0pass HD | 9.0pass HD |
| Load switch | Hi | | | | | | | | | | |

# SC-F20000 Series

### Ultra-Thin

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 600x600dpi | | | | | | | 600x1200dpi | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.0pass HS | 1.1pass HS | 1.5pass HS | 2.1pass HS | 1.1pass* | 1.5pass | 2.1pass | 3.1pass | 5.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 85 | 85 | 70 | 70 | 90 | 70 | 65 | 50 | 50 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 60 | 60 | 60 | 55 | 70 | 60 | 55 | 50 | 50 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 10 | 10 | 15 | 21 | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 52 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv1 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | On | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv4 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | |

**Appendix**

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 600x600dpi | | | | | | | 600x1200dpi | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.0pass HS | 1.1pass HS | 1.5pass HS | 2.1pass HS | 1.1pass* | 1.5pass | 2.1pass | 3.1pass | 5.0pass HD |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Lo | | | | | | | | |

### Thin

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 600x600dpi | | | | | | | 600x1200dpi | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.0pass HS | 1.1pass HS | 1.5pass HS | 2.1pass HS | 1.1pass* | 1.5pass | 2.1pass | 3.1pass | 5.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 85 | 85 | 70 | 70 | 90 | 65 | 60 | 55 | 55 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 60 | 60 | 60 | 55 | 80 | 60 | 55 | 50 | 50 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 10 | 10 | 15 | 21 | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 52 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv3 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv6 | Lv4 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | |

### Med-Thick

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 600x600dpi | | | | | | | 600x1200dpi | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.0pass HS | 1.1pass HS | 1.5pass HS | 2.1pass HS | 1.1pass* | 1.5pass | 2.1pass | 3.1pass | 5.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 100 | 100 | 100 | 95 | 105 | 105 | 100 | 85 | 70 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 100 | 100 | 100 | 95 | 95 | 90 | 85 | 65 | 55 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 10 | 10 | 15 | 21 | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 52 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv5 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Hi | | | | | | | | |

## Thick

| Item | Pass Mode (*: Default value) | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 600x600dpi | | | | | | | 600x1200dpi | 1200x1200dpi |
| | 1.0pass HS | 1.1pass HS | 1.5pass HS | 2.1pass HS | 1.1pass* | 1.5pass | 2.1pass | 3.1pass | 5.0pass HD |
| Heater | On | | | | | | | | |
| Temperature Standard type | 100 | 100 | 95 | 90 | 105 | 100 | 95 | 75 | 70 |
| Temperature Large capacity type | 100 | 100 | 95 | 90 | 100 | 95 | 95 | 75 | 70 |
| Fan | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Time | 10 | 10 | 15 | 21 | 14 | 19 | 23 | 33 | 52 |
| Proceed to Drying after Print | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Drying Action | Auto | | | | | | | | |
| Platen Gap | 2.0 | | | | | | | | |
| Feeding Tension*1 | Lv2 | | | | | | | | |
| Paper Suction | Lv8 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Speed Limitation | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Pressure Roller Load | Standard | | | | | | | | |
| Remove Skew | On | | | | | | | | |
| Stick Prevention | Off | | | | | | | | |
| Rewind Tension*2 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 | Lv8 |
| Print Quality Adjustment Limitation Temperature | 15 | | | | | | | | |
| Media Feed Adjustment value | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Media Feeding Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Mid | | | | | | | | |
| Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit | | | | | | | | | |
| Heater switch | On | | | | | | | | |
| Load switch | Hi | | | | | | | | |

# Reading the Signal Lamps

The signal lamps indicate the status of the printer as shown in the following table. The lamps are, in order from the top, red, yellow, and green.

The following table is for standard settings. These settings may have been changed to suit your operating environment.

| | Green | Yellow | Red | Status | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | Off | Off | Off | Power off | The power is off. |
|  | Off | Flashing | Off | Starting/stopping operations | Doing start up operations after the power is turned on, or doing shut down operations after the power is turned off. |
|  | On | Off | Off | Idling | Idling in a normal state. Ready to print. |
|  | Flashing | Off | Off | Printing | Printing in a normal state. |
|  | On | On | Off | Consumable near end (idling) | Printing is possible, but printing will not be possible when the consumables need to be replaced. |
|  | Flashing | On | Off | Consumable near end (printing) | Printing can continue, but printing will stop and not be possible when the consumables need to be replaced. |
|  | Off | On | Off | Printing cannot start | Printing not possible in current state for such reasons as a cover is open or a consumable is not loaded. |
|  | Off | Off | On | Error (recoverable) | An error has occurred so printing is not possible. Resolve the error and printing can be done. |
|  | Off | Off | Flashing | Fatal error (service call) | An error has occurred that cannot be resolved, so printing is not possible. |
|  | On | Flashing | Off | Doing maintenance (jobs can be received) | A maintenance function is being executed. Print jobs can be received. |
|  | Off | Flashing | Off | Doing maintenance (jobs cannot be received) | A maintenance function is being executed. Print jobs cannot be received. |
|  | On | On | Off | Pause mode (printing stopped) | Printing is stopped. |

## Appendix

| | Green | Yellow | Red | Status | Explanation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | Flashing | On | Off | Pause mode (waiting to stop printing) | Waiting to stop printing. Printing continues to the end of the page, and then stops. |
|  | Off | On | Off | Offline (jobs cannot be received) | The connection to the computer is offline. Print jobs cannot be received. |

# System Requirements

Each software can be used in the following environments. (As of January 2026)

The supported operating systems may change.

For the latest information, see the Epson website.

## Epson Edge Dashboard

The Epson Edge Dashboard can be used in the following environments.

> ***Important:***
> *Make sure the computer on which the Epson Edge Dashboard is installed meets the following requirements.*
> *If these requirements are not met, the software cannot monitor the printer correctly.*
> ❏ *Disable your computer's hibernate function.*
> ❏ *Disable the sleep function so that the computer does not enter sleep status.*

**Windows**

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating systems | Windows 10 x64<br>Windows 11 |
| CPU | Multi-core processor (3.0 GHz or more)<br>Intel® Core™ i5 3.4 GHz or faster recommended |
| Free memory | 4 GB or more |
| Hard disk<br>(free space during installation) | 2 GB or more |
| Display resolution | 1280 x 1024 or better |
| Communication interface | High Speed USB<br>Ethernet 1000Base-T |
| Browser | Microsoft Edge |

**Mac**

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating systems | Mac OS X 10.9.5 Mavericks or later |
| CPU | Multi-core processor (3.0 GHz or more)<br>Intel® Core™ i5 3.4 GHz or faster recommended |
| Free memory | 4 GB or more |
| Hard disk<br>(free space during installation) | 2 GB or more |

| | |
|---|---|
| Display resolution | 1280 x 1024 or better |
| Communication interface | High Speed USB<br>Ethernet 1000Base-T |
| Browser | Safari 6 or later |

**Linux**

| | |
|---|---|
| Distribution | Debian 8.6 64 bit (MATE desktop environment only) or later |
| CPU | Multi-core processor (3.0 GHz or more)<br>Intel® Core™ i5 3.4 GHz or faster recommended |
| Free memory | 4 GB or more |
| Hard disk<br>(free space during installation) | 2 GB or more |
| Display resolution | 1280 x 1024 or better |
| Communication interface | High Speed USB<br>Ethernet 1000Base-T |
| Browser | Mozilla Firefox 45 (ESR) or later |

# Epson Edge Print

**Operating environment**

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating system (OS) | Windows 10 x64<br>Windows 11 |
| CPU | Intel® Core™ i3 3.0 GHz or faster (released after April 2014) |
| Free memory | 8 GB or more |
| Hard disk drive<br>(free space during installation) | 50 GB or more |
| Display resolution | 1280 x 1024 or better |
| Communication interface | Hi-Speed USB<br>Ethernet 100Base-TX/1000Base-T |

We recommend installing this software on a computer with high specifications since the software will be used in combination with software applications such as Adobe Illustrator.
Also, this software normally handles data that is several GB in size, and in some cases may be tens of GB in size particularly when performing high quality banner printing jobs.
We therefore recommend using a computer with sufficient storage space.

The following shows the recommended environment when using this software.

### Recommended environment

| | |
|---|---|
| Operating system (OS) | Windows 10 x64<br>Windows 11 |
| CPU | Intel® Core™ i7-14700 processor or faster |
| Free memory | 32 GB or more |
| Storage<br>(free space during installation) | SSD 1 TB or more |
| Display resolution | 1280 x 1024 or better |
| Communication interface | Hi-Speed USB<br>Gigabit Ethernet |

## Web Config

The following browsers are supported. Use the latest version of the browser.

### Windows

| | |
|---|---|
| Browser | Internet Explorer 11, Microsoft Edge, Mozilla Firefox, Google Chrome |

### Mac

| | |
|---|---|
| Browser | Safari, Mozilla Firefox, Google Chrome |

# Specifications Table

| Printer Specifications | |
|---|---|
| Printing method | On-demand ink jet |
| Nozzle configuration | SC-F20000 Series:<br>1600 nozzles x 2 rows x 8 heads |
| | SC-F11000H Series/ SC-F10000H Series:<br>1600 nozzles x 2 rows x 6 heads |
| | SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series:<br>1600 nozzles x 2 rows x 4 heads |
| Resolution (maximum) | 1200 × 1200 dpi (With 300 × 300 dpi 16 Half Tone layers.) |
| Control code | ESC/P raster (undisclosed command) |
| Media Feed Method | Friction feed |
| Rated voltage (#1, #2, large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit) | AC 200 to 240 V |
| Rated frequency (#1, #2, large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit) | 50/60 Hz |
| Rated current (#1, #2) | 16 A |
| Rated current (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit) | 10 A |
| Rated current (Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit) | 15 A |
| Short-circuit current rating (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit, large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit) | 10 kA (UL rated) |

| Printer Specifications | |
|---|---|
| Power consumption (total for numbers #1 and #2) | SC-F20000 Series:<br>Printing: Approx. 5.0 kW<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 229 W<br>Power off: Approx. 13.1 W |
| | SC-F11000H Series/ SC-F10000H Series:<br>Printing: Approx. 4.4 kW<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 230 W<br>Power off: Approx. 9.6 W |
| | SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series:<br>Printing: Approx. 3.9 kW<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 221 W<br>Power off: Approx. 9.6 W |
| Power consumption (large capacity type Media Feeding Unit) | SC-F20000 Series:<br>Printing: Approx. 50 W<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 38 W<br>Power off: Approx. 0.8 W |
| | SC-F11000H Series / SC-F11000 Series / SC-F10000H Series / SC-F10000 Series:<br>Printing: Approx. 42 W<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 38 W<br>Power off: Approx. 0.8 W |
| Power consumption (Large capacity type Auto Take-up Reel Unit) | Printing: Approx. 190 W<br>Sleep mode: Approx. 50 W<br>Power off: Approx. 0.8 W |
| Sound pressure level dB (A) while operating | Approx. 59 dB |
| Temperature and humidity (without condensation) | |

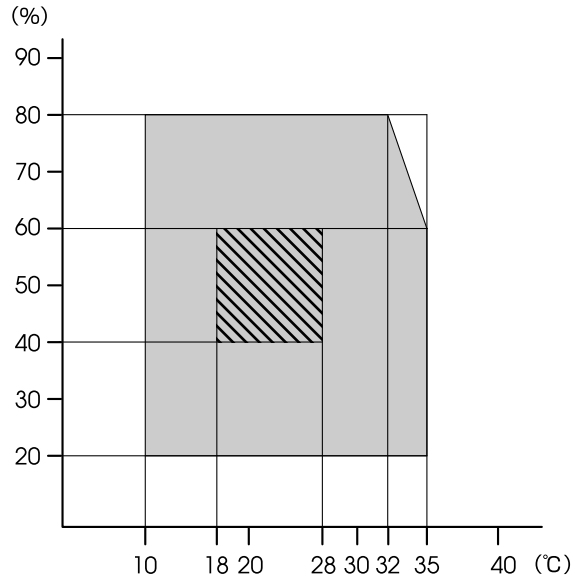
**Appendix**

| Printer Specifications | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Printing | 10 to 35˚C (50 to 95˚F), 20 to 80%<br>Recommended: 18 to 28˚C (64.4 to 82.4˚F), 40 to 60% |
| | In storage (Before unpacking) | -20 to 60˚C (-4 to 140˚F), 5 to 85%<br>(Within 120 hours at 60 ˚C (140 ˚F), within a month at 40 ˚C (104 ˚F)) |
| | In storage (after opening) | -20 to 40˚C (-4 to 104˚F), 5 to 85%<br>(Within a month at 40 ˚C (104 ˚F)) |

Temperature and humidity range

Gray area: While operating

Cross-hatch line area: Recommended




- ❏ Be sure your AC power cord meets relevant safety standards of the area where you plan to use it.
- ❏ To prevent ground leak accidents, connect to a grounded (earthed) outlet. Connecting to anything other than a grounded outlet could result in electric shock or fire.

| Printer specifications (standard roll/reel models) | |
|---|---|
| Dimension | Printer<br>When stored: 3710 (W) x 1303 (D) x 1886 (H) mm (146 [W] × 51.29 [D] × 74.25 [H] in.)<br>When at maximum size: 3710 (W) × 1350 (D) × 1931 (H) mm (146 [W] × 53.14 [D] × 76.02 [H] in.)<br>Take Up Media Holder: 280 (W) × 236 (D) × 352 (H) mm (11.02 [W] × 9.29 [D] × 13.85 [H] in.)<br>Take In Media Holder: 280 (W) × 285 (D) × 352 (H) mm (11.02 [W] × 11.22 [D] × 13.85 [H] in.) |
| | Ink supply unit<br>SC-F11000H Series/ SC-F10000H Series:<br>1278 (W) × 556 (D) × 541 (H) mm (50.31 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 21.29 [H] in.) (ink supply unit only)<br>1278 (W) × 556 (D) × 580 (H) mm (50.31 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 22.83 [H] in.) (when 3 L ink cartridge is installed)<br>1278 (W) × 556 (D) × 790 (H) mm (50.31 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 31.10 [H] in.) (when 10 L ink cartridge is installed)<br>SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series:<br>877 (W) × 556 (D) × 541 (H) mm (34.52 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 21.29 [H] in.) (ink supply unit only)<br>877 (W) × 556 (D) × 580 (H) mm (34.52 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 22.83 [H] in.) (when 3 L ink cartridge is installed)<br>877 (W) × 556 (D) × 790 (H) mm (34.52 [W] × 21.88 [D] × 31.10 [H] in.) (when 10 L ink cartridge is installed) |

| Printer specifications (standard roll/reel models) | |
|---|---|
| Weight* | Printer<br>Total weight (SC-F20000 Series): 744 kg (1640 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000H Series/SC-F10000H Series): 687 kg (1515 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series): 683 kg (1506 lb.)<br>Take Up Media Holder: Approx. 7 kg (15.43 lb.)<br>Take In Media Holder: Approx. 7 kg (15.43 lb.) |
| | Ink supply unit<br>SC-F11000H Series/ SC-F10000H Series: 80 kg (176.37 lb.)<br>SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series: 53 kg (116.84 lb.) |

* Ink not included.

| Printer specifications (large capacity roll models) | |
|---|---|
| Dimension | Printer<br>When stored: 3710 (W) x 1740 (D) x 1886 (H) mm (146 [W] × 68.50 [D] × 74.25 [H] in.)<br>When at maximum size: 3710 (W) × 1839 (D) × 1931 (H) mm (146 [W] × 72.40 [D] × 76.02 [H] in.)<br>Take Up Media Holder: 280 (W) × 236 (D) × 352 (H) mm (11.02 [W] × 9.29 [D] × 13.85 [H] in.) |
| | Ink supply unit<br>The same as the ink supply unit for standard roll/reel models |
| Weight* | Printer<br>Total weight (SC-F20000 Series): 872 kg (1922 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000H Series): 815 kg (1797 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000 Series): 811 kg (1788 lb.)<br>Take Up Media Holder: Approx. 7 kg (15.43 lb.) |

* Ink not included.

| Printer specifications (large capacity reel models) | |
|---|---|
| Dimension | Printer<br>When stored: 3710 (W) x 2494 (D) x 1886 (H) mm (146 [W] × 98.18 [D] × 74.25 [H] in.)<br>When at maximum size: 3710 (W) × 2494 (D) × 1931 (H) mm (146 [W] × 98.18 [D] × 74.25 [H] in.) |
| | Ink supply unit<br>The same as the ink supply unit for standard roll/reel models |
| Weight* | Printer<br>Total weight (SC-F20000 Series): 1045 kg (2304 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000H Series): 988 kg (2178 lb.)<br>Total weight (SC-F11000 Series): 984 kg (2169 lb.) |

* Ink not included.

***Important:***

❏ *Use this printer at altitudes below 2000 m (6561 ft.).*

❏ *This printer is for indoor use only.*

***Warning:***

*This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.*

**For California customers only**

The lithium batteries in this product contain Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.

See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

**Appendix**

| Interface Specifications | |
|---|---|
| USB port for a computer | USB 3.0 (SuperSpeed USB) |
| Wired LAN compliance standard | 1000Base-T*1 |
| Network printing protocols/ functions | EpsonNet Print (Windows)*2<br>Standard TCP/IP (Windows)*3<br>WSD (Windows)*3<br>Bonjour (Mac)*3<br>IPP (Windows)*3<br>IPP (Mac)*3<br>FTP*3 |

| Interface Specifications | |
|---|---|
| Security standards/ protocols | IEEE802.1X (Ethernet) |
| | IPsec (v4/v6), IP filtering |
| | SSL/TLS:<br><br>HTTPS Server (Web Config)<br>IPPS Server<br>SMTPS Client (Email send)<br>STARTTLS (SMTPS)<br>Root certificate (client)<br>Root certificate version 2.01<br>Root certificate update (client)<br>CA-signed certificate (server)<br>CA certificate<br>CSR generation (server)<br>Self-signed certificate (server)<br>EC key CSR/self-signed certificate generation (server)<br>Certificate, secret key import |
| | OpenSSL version: 1.0.2j<br>Supported TLS versions: 1.0/1.1/1.2 |
| | Authentication for email sending:<br><br>POP before SMTP<br>APOP<br>SMTP authentication (Kerberos/ NTLMv1/CRAM-MD5/PLAIN/ LOGIN) |
| | Authentication for IPP printing: HTTP Basic authentication |
| | MIB access authentication, encyription: SNMPv3 |

*1 Use a shielded twisted pair cable (category 5e or better).

*2 IPv4 compliant.

*3 IPv4 and IPv6 compliant.

| Ink Specifications | |
|---|---|
| Type | Special ink cartridges |
| Sublimation dye ink | SC-F11000H Series:<br>High Density Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Light Cyan, Light Magenta, Fluorescent Yellow, Fluorescent Pink, Orange, Violet<br>SC-F10000H Series:<br>High Density Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Light Cyan, Light Magenta, Fluorescent Yellow, Fluorescent Pink |
| | SC-F20000 Series/SC-F11000 Series/SC-F10000 Series:<br>High Density Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow |
| Use by date | See the date printed on the ink cartridge (stored at normal temperature) |
| Print quality guarantee expiry | Six months (from date ink cartridge is opened) |
| Storage temperature | 5 to 35 ˚C (41 to 95 ˚F) |
| Ink cartridge capacity | 10000 ml, 3000 ml |
| Ink cartridge dimensions | 10000 ml: 150 (W) × 235 (D) × 412 (H) mm (5.90 [W] × 9.25 [D] × 16.22 [H] in.)<br>3000 ml: 158 (W) × 260 (D) × 168 (H) mm (6.22 [W] × 10.23 [D] × 6.61 [H] in.) |

***Note:***
*To ensure the colors you want to print, maintain a constant room temperature of 18 to 28˚C (64.4 to 82.4˚F).*

### Information of EU declaration of conformity

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity of this equipment is available at the following internet address.

https://www.epson.eu/conformity

### CE Marking

https://www.epson.eu/conformity

### ZICTA Type Approval for Users in Zambia

See the following website to check the information for ZICTA Type Approval.

https://support.epson.net/zicta/